



# **1 Samuel**

**translationNotes**

v8

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 8

**Published:** 2017-07-05

## Table of Contents

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>23</b>
Introduction to 1 Samuel . . . . .	23
1 Samuel 01 General Notes . . . . .	26
1 Samuel 1:1-2 . . . . .	27
1 Samuel 1:3-4 . . . . .	29
1 Samuel 1:5-6 . . . . .	31
1 Samuel 1:7-8 . . . . .	32
1 Samuel 1:9-10 . . . . .	34
1 Samuel 1:11 . . . . .	36
1 Samuel 1:12-14 . . . . .	38
1 Samuel 1:15-16 . . . . .	39
1 Samuel 1:17-18 . . . . .	41
1 Samuel 1:19-20 . . . . .	43
1 Samuel 1:21-23 . . . . .	44
1 Samuel 1:24-25 . . . . .	46
1 Samuel 1:26-28 . . . . .	47
1 Samuel 02 General Notes . . . . .	49
1 Samuel 2:1 . . . . .	51
1 Samuel 2:2 . . . . .	53
1 Samuel 2:3-4 . . . . .	54
1 Samuel 2:5 . . . . .	56
1 Samuel 2:6-7 . . . . .	57
1 Samuel 2:8 . . . . .	59
1 Samuel 2:9 . . . . .	61
1 Samuel 2:10 . . . . .	63
1 Samuel 2:12-14 . . . . .	65
1 Samuel 2:15-17 . . . . .	67
1 Samuel 2:20-21 . . . . .	69
1 Samuel 2:22-24 . . . . .	70
1 Samuel 2:25-26 . . . . .	71
1 Samuel 2:27-28 . . . . .	73
1 Samuel 2:29-30 . . . . .	75
1 Samuel 2:31-33 . . . . .	77
1 Samuel 2:34-35 . . . . .	79
1 Samuel 2:36 . . . . .	81
1 Samuel 03 General Notes . . . . .	82
1 Samuel 3:1-4 . . . . .	83
1 Samuel 3:5-6 . . . . .	85
1 Samuel 3:7-8 . . . . .	86
1 Samuel 3:9 . . . . .	87

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Samuel 3:10-11 . . . . .	88
1 Samuel 3:12-14 . . . . .	90
1 Samuel 3:15-16 . . . . .	92
1 Samuel 3:17-18 . . . . .	93
1 Samuel 3:19-21 . . . . .	94
1 Samuel 04 General Notes . . . . .	96
1 Samuel 4:1-2 . . . . .	97
1 Samuel 4:3-4 . . . . .	99
1 Samuel 4:5-6 . . . . .	101
1 Samuel 4:7-9 . . . . .	102
1 Samuel 4:10-11 . . . . .	104
1 Samuel 4:12-13 . . . . .	105
1 Samuel 4:14-15 . . . . .	107
1 Samuel 4:16-17 . . . . .	108
1 Samuel 4:18 . . . . .	110
1 Samuel 4:19-20 . . . . .	111
1 Samuel 4:21-22 . . . . .	112
1 Samuel 05 General Notes . . . . .	113
1 Samuel 5:1-3 . . . . .	114
1 Samuel 5:4-5 . . . . .	116
1 Samuel 5:6-7 . . . . .	118
1 Samuel 5:8-9 . . . . .	120
1 Samuel 5:10 . . . . .	122
1 Samuel 5:11-12 . . . . .	123
1 Samuel 06 General Notes . . . . .	125
1 Samuel 6:1-2 . . . . .	126
1 Samuel 6:3-4 . . . . .	127
1 Samuel 6:5-6 . . . . .	129
1 Samuel 6:7-9 . . . . .	131
1 Samuel 6:10-12 . . . . .	133
1 Samuel 6:13 . . . . .	135
1 Samuel 6:14 . . . . .	136
1 Samuel 6:16 . . . . .	138
1 Samuel 6:17-18 . . . . .	139
1 Samuel 6:19-20 . . . . .	141
1 Samuel 6:21 . . . . .	143
1 Samuel 07 General Notes . . . . .	144
1 Samuel 7:1-2 . . . . .	145
1 Samuel 7:3-4 . . . . .	147
1 Samuel 7:5-6 . . . . .	149
1 Samuel 7:7-8 . . . . .	150
1 Samuel 7:9 . . . . .	151
1 Samuel 7:10-11 . . . . .	152

1 Samuel 7:12 . . . . .	154
1 Samuel 7:13-14 . . . . .	155
1 Samuel 7:15-17 . . . . .	157
1 Samuel 08 General Notes . . . . .	158
1 Samuel 8:1-3 . . . . .	159
1 Samuel 8:4-5 . . . . .	161
1 Samuel 8:6-7 . . . . .	162
1 Samuel 8:8-9 . . . . .	163
1 Samuel 8:10-12 . . . . .	164
1 Samuel 8:13-15 . . . . .	166
1 Samuel 8:16-18 . . . . .	168
1 Samuel 8:21-22 . . . . .	170
1 Samuel 09 General Notes . . . . .	172
1 Samuel 9:1-2 . . . . .	173
1 Samuel 9:3-4 . . . . .	175
1 Samuel 9:5-6 . . . . .	177
1 Samuel 9:7-8 . . . . .	179
1 Samuel 9:9 . . . . .	180
1 Samuel 9:12-13 . . . . .	182
1 Samuel 9:14 . . . . .	183
1 Samuel 9:15-16 . . . . .	184
1 Samuel 9:17-19 . . . . .	186
1 Samuel 9:20-21 . . . . .	188
1 Samuel 9:22 . . . . .	190
1 Samuel 9:23-24 . . . . .	191
1 Samuel 9:25-26 . . . . .	192
1 Samuel 9:27 . . . . .	193
1 Samuel 10 General Notes . . . . .	194
1 Samuel 10:1-2 . . . . .	195
1 Samuel 10:3-4 . . . . .	197
1 Samuel 10:5-6 . . . . .	198
1 Samuel 10:7-8 . . . . .	200
1 Samuel 10:9-10 . . . . .	201
1 Samuel 10:11-13 . . . . .	203
1 Samuel 10:14-16 . . . . .	205
1 Samuel 10:17-19 . . . . .	206
1 Samuel 10:20-21 . . . . .	208
1 Samuel 10:22-23 . . . . .	209
1 Samuel 10:25 . . . . .	210
1 Samuel 10:26-27 . . . . .	211
1 Samuel 11 General Notes . . . . .	213
1 Samuel 11:1-2 . . . . .	214
1 Samuel 11:3 . . . . .	216

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Samuel 11:4-5 . . . . .	217
1 Samuel 11:6-8 . . . . .	218
1 Samuel 11:9-10 . . . . .	220
1 Samuel 11:11 . . . . .	221
1 Samuel 11:14-15 . . . . .	222
1 Samuel 12 General Notes . . . . .	223
1 Samuel 12:1-2 . . . . .	224
1 Samuel 12:3 . . . . .	225
1 Samuel 12:4-5 . . . . .	227
1 Samuel 12:6-7 . . . . .	228
1 Samuel 12:8-9 . . . . .	229
1 Samuel 12:10-11 . . . . .	231
1 Samuel 12:12-13 . . . . .	233
1 Samuel 12:14-15 . . . . .	234
1 Samuel 12:16-18 . . . . .	236
1 Samuel 12:19-21 . . . . .	238
1 Samuel 12:22-23 . . . . .	240
1 Samuel 13 General Notes . . . . .	241
1 Samuel 13:1-2 . . . . .	242
1 Samuel 13:3-4 . . . . .	244
1 Samuel 13:5 . . . . .	246
1 Samuel 13:6-7 . . . . .	247
1 Samuel 13:8-10 . . . . .	249
1 Samuel 13:11-12 . . . . .	250
1 Samuel 13:13-14 . . . . .	252
1 Samuel 13:15-16 . . . . .	254
1 Samuel 13:17-18 . . . . .	256
1 Samuel 13:19-21 . . . . .	257
1 Samuel 13:22-23 . . . . .	259
1 Samuel 14 General Notes . . . . .	260
1 Samuel 14:1 . . . . .	261
1 Samuel 14:2-3 . . . . .	262
1 Samuel 14:4-5 . . . . .	264
1 Samuel 14:6-7 . . . . .	265
1 Samuel 14:8-10 . . . . .	267
1 Samuel 14:11-12 . . . . .	268
1 Samuel 14:13-14 . . . . .	270
1 Samuel 14:15 . . . . .	271
1 Samuel 14:16-17 . . . . .	272
1 Samuel 14:18-19 . . . . .	273
1 Samuel 14:20-21 . . . . .	275
1 Samuel 14:22-23 . . . . .	276
1 Samuel 14:24-26 . . . . .	277

1 Samuel 14:27-28 . . . . .	279
1 Samuel 14:29-30 . . . . .	281
1 Samuel 14:31-32 . . . . .	283
1 Samuel 14:33-34 . . . . .	285
1 Samuel 14:35 . . . . .	287
1 Samuel 14:36-37 . . . . .	288
1 Samuel 14:38-39 . . . . .	290
1 Samuel 14:40-42 . . . . .	292
1 Samuel 14:43-44 . . . . .	294
1 Samuel 14:45-46 . . . . .	296
1 Samuel 14:47-48 . . . . .	298
1 Samuel 14:49-51 . . . . .	300
1 Samuel 14:52 . . . . .	302
1 Samuel 15 General Notes . . . . .	303
1 Samuel 15:1-3 . . . . .	304
1 Samuel 15:4-5 . . . . .	306
1 Samuel 15:6-7 . . . . .	307
1 Samuel 15:8-9 . . . . .	308
1 Samuel 15:10-11 . . . . .	310
1 Samuel 15:12-13 . . . . .	312
1 Samuel 15:14-16 . . . . .	314
1 Samuel 15:17-19 . . . . .	316
1 Samuel 15:20-21 . . . . .	318
1 Samuel 15:22-23 . . . . .	320
1 Samuel 15:24-25 . . . . .	322
1 Samuel 15:26-27 . . . . .	324
1 Samuel 15:28-29 . . . . .	326
1 Samuel 15:30-31 . . . . .	328
1 Samuel 15:32-33 . . . . .	330
1 Samuel 15:34-35 . . . . .	332
1 Samuel 16 General Notes . . . . .	333
1 Samuel 16:1 . . . . .	334
1 Samuel 16:2-3 . . . . .	336
1 Samuel 16:4-5 . . . . .	338
1 Samuel 16:6-7 . . . . .	340
1 Samuel 16:8-10 . . . . .	342
1 Samuel 16:11-12 . . . . .	343
1 Samuel 16:13 . . . . .	345
1 Samuel 16:14-16 . . . . .	347
1 Samuel 16:17-19 . . . . .	349
1 Samuel 16:20-21 . . . . .	351
1 Samuel 16:22-23 . . . . .	353
1 Samuel 17 General Notes . . . . .	355

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Samuel 17:2-3 . . . . .	356
1 Samuel 17:4-5 . . . . .	357
1 Samuel 17:6-7 . . . . .	358
1 Samuel 17:8-9 . . . . .	360
1 Samuel 17:10-11 . . . . .	361
1 Samuel 17:12-13 . . . . .	362
1 Samuel 17:14-16 . . . . .	363
1 Samuel 17:17-18 . . . . .	365
1 Samuel 17:19-21 . . . . .	367
1 Samuel 17:22-24 . . . . .	369
1 Samuel 17:25 . . . . .	370
1 Samuel 17:26-27 . . . . .	372
1 Samuel 17:28-30 . . . . .	374
1 Samuel 17:31-33 . . . . .	376
1 Samuel 17:34-35 . . . . .	378
1 Samuel 17:36 . . . . .	380
1 Samuel 17:37-38 . . . . .	381
1 Samuel 17:39-40 . . . . .	383
1 Samuel 17:41-43 . . . . .	385
1 Samuel 17:44-45 . . . . .	387
1 Samuel 17:46-47 . . . . .	389
1 Samuel 17:50 . . . . .	391
1 Samuel 17:52-54 . . . . .	392
1 Samuel 17:55-56 . . . . .	394
1 Samuel 17:57-58 . . . . .	396
1 Samuel 18 General Notes . . . . .	398
1 Samuel 18:1-2 . . . . .	399
1 Samuel 18:3-4 . . . . .	400
1 Samuel 18:5 . . . . .	401
1 Samuel 18:6-7 . . . . .	402
1 Samuel 18:8-9 . . . . .	404
1 Samuel 18:10-12 . . . . .	405
1 Samuel 18:13-14 . . . . .	407
1 Samuel 18:15-16 . . . . .	409
1 Samuel 18:17-18 . . . . .	410
1 Samuel 18:19 . . . . .	412
1 Samuel 18:20-21 . . . . .	413
1 Samuel 18:22 . . . . .	414
1 Samuel 18:23-24 . . . . .	415
1 Samuel 18:25-26 . . . . .	416
1 Samuel 18:27-29 . . . . .	418
1 Samuel 18:30 . . . . .	420
1 Samuel 19 General Notes . . . . .	421



1 Samuel 19:1-3 . . . . .	422
1 Samuel 19:4-5 . . . . .	423
1 Samuel 19:6-7 . . . . .	425
1 Samuel 19:8-9 . . . . .	426
1 Samuel 19:10-11 . . . . .	427
1 Samuel 19:12-13 . . . . .	429
1 Samuel 19:14-15 . . . . .	430
1 Samuel 19:16-17 . . . . .	431
1 Samuel 19:18-20 . . . . .	433
1 Samuel 19:21-22 . . . . .	435
1 Samuel 19:23-24 . . . . .	436
1 Samuel 20 General Notes . . . . .	437
1 Samuel 20:1-2 . . . . .	438
1 Samuel 20:3 . . . . .	440
1 Samuel 20:4-5 . . . . .	441
1 Samuel 20:6-7 . . . . .	442
1 Samuel 20:8-9 . . . . .	444
1 Samuel 20:12-13 . . . . .	446
1 Samuel 20:14-16 . . . . .	448
1 Samuel 20:17-19 . . . . .	450
1 Samuel 20:20-21 . . . . .	452
1 Samuel 20:22-23 . . . . .	454
1 Samuel 20:24-25 . . . . .	455
1 Samuel 20:26-27 . . . . .	456
1 Samuel 20:28-29 . . . . .	457
1 Samuel 20:30-31 . . . . .	459
1 Samuel 20:32-34 . . . . .	461
1 Samuel 20:35-37 . . . . .	463
1 Samuel 20:38-40 . . . . .	465
1 Samuel 20:41-42 . . . . .	466
1 Samuel 21 General Notes . . . . .	468
1 Samuel 21:1-2 . . . . .	469
1 Samuel 21:3-4 . . . . .	471
1 Samuel 21:5-6 . . . . .	473
1 Samuel 21:7 . . . . .	475
1 Samuel 21:8-9 . . . . .	477
1 Samuel 21:10-11 . . . . .	479
1 Samuel 21:12-13 . . . . .	481
1 Samuel 21:14-15 . . . . .	482
1 Samuel 22 General Notes . . . . .	483
1 Samuel 22:1-2 . . . . .	484
1 Samuel 22:3-5 . . . . .	486
1 Samuel 22:6 . . . . .	488

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Samuel 22:7-8 . . . . .	489
1 Samuel 22:9-10 . . . . .	491
1 Samuel 22:11-13 . . . . .	493
1 Samuel 22:14-15 . . . . .	495
1 Samuel 22:16-17 . . . . .	497
1 Samuel 22:18-19 . . . . .	499
1 Samuel 22:20-21 . . . . .	501
1 Samuel 23 General Notes . . . . .	502
1 Samuel 23:1-2 . . . . .	503
1 Samuel 23:3-4 . . . . .	504
1 Samuel 23:5-6 . . . . .	505
1 Samuel 23:7-9 . . . . .	506
1 Samuel 23:10-11 . . . . .	508
1 Samuel 23:12 . . . . .	510
1 Samuel 23:13-14 . . . . .	511
1 Samuel 23:15-16 . . . . .	513
1 Samuel 23:17-18 . . . . .	514
1 Samuel 23:19-20 . . . . .	515
1 Samuel 23:21-23 . . . . .	517
1 Samuel 23:24-25 . . . . .	519
1 Samuel 23:26-27 . . . . .	521
1 Samuel 23:28-29 . . . . .	522
1 Samuel 24 General Notes . . . . .	523
1 Samuel 24:1-2 . . . . .	524
1 Samuel 24:3-4 . . . . .	526
1 Samuel 24:5-7 . . . . .	528
1 Samuel 24:8-9 . . . . .	530
1 Samuel 24:10-11 . . . . .	531
1 Samuel 24:12-13 . . . . .	533
1 Samuel 24:14-15 . . . . .	534
1 Samuel 24:16 . . . . .	536
1 Samuel 24:17-18 . . . . .	537
1 Samuel 24:19-20 . . . . .	538
1 Samuel 24:21-22 . . . . .	540
1 Samuel 25 General Notes . . . . .	542
1 Samuel 25:1 . . . . .	543
1 Samuel 25:2-3 . . . . .	545
1 Samuel 25:4-6 . . . . .	547
1 Samuel 25:7-8 . . . . .	549
1 Samuel 25:9-11 . . . . .	551
1 Samuel 25:12-13 . . . . .	553
1 Samuel 25:14-15 . . . . .	555
1 Samuel 25:16-17 . . . . .	557

1 Samuel 25:18-19 . . . . .	558
1 Samuel 25:20 . . . . .	560
1 Samuel 25:21-22 . . . . .	561
1 Samuel 25:23-24 . . . . .	563
1 Samuel 25:25-26 . . . . .	565
1 Samuel 25:27-28 . . . . .	567
1 Samuel 25:29 . . . . .	569
1 Samuel 25:30-31 . . . . .	571
1 Samuel 25:32-33 . . . . .	573
1 Samuel 25:34-35 . . . . .	575
1 Samuel 25:36 . . . . .	577
1 Samuel 25:37-38 . . . . .	578
1 Samuel 25:39-40 . . . . .	579
1 Samuel 25:41-42 . . . . .	581
1 Samuel 25:43-44 . . . . .	583
1 Samuel 26 General Notes . . . . .	584
1 Samuel 26:1-2 . . . . .	585
1 Samuel 26:3-4 . . . . .	587
1 Samuel 26:5 . . . . .	588
1 Samuel 26:6-8 . . . . .	589
1 Samuel 26:9-10 . . . . .	591
1 Samuel 26:11-12 . . . . .	593
1 Samuel 26:13-14 . . . . .	595
1 Samuel 26:15-16 . . . . .	596
1 Samuel 26:17-18 . . . . .	598
1 Samuel 26:19-20 . . . . .	600
1 Samuel 26:21 . . . . .	602
1 Samuel 26:22-23 . . . . .	604
1 Samuel 26:24-25 . . . . .	606
1 Samuel 27 General Notes . . . . .	608
1 Samuel 27:1 . . . . .	609
1 Samuel 27:2-4 . . . . .	610
1 Samuel 27:5-7 . . . . .	612
1 Samuel 27:8-9 . . . . .	614
1 Samuel 27:10 . . . . .	616
1 Samuel 27:11-12 . . . . .	617
1 Samuel 28 General Notes . . . . .	618
1 Samuel 28:1-2 . . . . .	619
1 Samuel 28:3-4 . . . . .	621
1 Samuel 28:5-7 . . . . .	623
1 Samuel 28:8-10 . . . . .	625
1 Samuel 28:13-14 . . . . .	627
1 Samuel 28:16-17 . . . . .	628

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Samuel 28:18-19 . . . . .	629
1 Samuel 28:20-21 . . . . .	631
1 Samuel 28:22-23 . . . . .	633
1 Samuel 28:24-25 . . . . .	635
1 Samuel 29 General Notes . . . . .	636
1 Samuel 29:1-2 . . . . .	637
1 Samuel 29:3 . . . . .	639
1 Samuel 29:4 . . . . .	641
1 Samuel 29:5 . . . . .	642
1 Samuel 29:6-7 . . . . .	643
1 Samuel 29:8-9 . . . . .	645
1 Samuel 29:10-11 . . . . .	647
1 Samuel 30 General Notes . . . . .	648
1 Samuel 30:1-2 . . . . .	649
1 Samuel 30:3-4 . . . . .	650
1 Samuel 30:5-6 . . . . .	651
1 Samuel 30:7-8 . . . . .	653
1 Samuel 30:9-10 . . . . .	655
1 Samuel 30:11-12 . . . . .	657
1 Samuel 30:13-14 . . . . .	658
1 Samuel 30:15 . . . . .	660
1 Samuel 30:16-17 . . . . .	661
1 Samuel 30:18-20 . . . . .	663
1 Samuel 30:21-22 . . . . .	665
1 Samuel 30:23-25 . . . . .	667
1 Samuel 30:26-28 . . . . .	669
1 Samuel 30:29-31 . . . . .	671
1 Samuel 31 General Notes . . . . .	672
1 Samuel 31:1-3 . . . . .	673
1 Samuel 31:4-6 . . . . .	675
1 Samuel 31:7-8 . . . . .	677
1 Samuel 31:9-10 . . . . .	679
1 Samuel 31:11-13 . . . . .	681
<b>translationQuestions . . . . .</b>	<b>683</b>
1 Samuel 1 . . . . .	683
1 Samuel 2 . . . . .	686
1 Samuel 3 . . . . .	690
1 Samuel 4 . . . . .	692
1 Samuel 5 . . . . .	695
1 Samuel 6 . . . . .	697
1 Samuel 7 . . . . .	700
1 Samuel 8 . . . . .	702
1 Samuel 9 . . . . .	705

1 Samuel 10 . . . . .	708
1 Samuel 11 . . . . .	711
1 Samuel 12 . . . . .	713
1 Samuel 13 . . . . .	716
1 Samuel 14 . . . . .	718
1 Samuel 15 . . . . .	722
1 Samuel 16 . . . . .	725
1 Samuel 17 . . . . .	727
1 Samuel 18 . . . . .	730
1 Samuel 19 . . . . .	732
1 Samuel 20 . . . . .	734
1 Samuel 21 . . . . .	736
1 Samuel 22 . . . . .	737
1 Samuel 23 . . . . .	739
1 Samuel 24 . . . . .	741
1 Samuel 25 . . . . .	743
1 Samuel 26 . . . . .	747
1 Samuel 27 . . . . .	749
1 Samuel 28 . . . . .	750
1 Samuel 29 . . . . .	753
1 Samuel 30 . . . . .	754
1 Samuel 31 . . . . .	757
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>759</b>
Aaron . . . . .	759
Abiathar . . . . .	760
Abijah . . . . .	761
Abner . . . . .	762
Absalom . . . . .	763
adversary, enemy . . . . .	764
afflict, affliction . . . . .	765
Ahab . . . . .	767
Ahaziah . . . . .	768
Ahijah . . . . .	769
altar, altars . . . . .	770
Amalek, Amalekite . . . . .	771
Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess . . . . .	773
Amorite . . . . .	774
ancestor, father, forefather . . . . .	775
angel, angels, archangel . . . . .	777
angry, anger . . . . .	779
anoint, anointed, anointing . . . . .	780
appoint, appoints, appointed . . . . .	782
Arabah . . . . .	784

## Table of Contents

---

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic . . . . .	785
archer . . . . .	786
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh . . . . .	787
armor . . . . .	789
arrogant . . . . .	790
Asa . . . . .	791
Ashdod, Azotus . . . . .	792
Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth . . . . .	793
Ashkelon . . . . .	794
atonement, atone, atones, atoned . . . . .	795
authority, authorities . . . . .	796
avenge, revenge, vengeance . . . . .	798
awe, awesome . . . . .	800
ax . . . . .	801
Baal . . . . .	802
Baasha . . . . .	804
barren . . . . .	805
beast . . . . .	806
Beersheba . . . . .	807
believe, believes, believed, belief . . . . .	808
Benjamin . . . . .	810
Beth Shemesh . . . . .	811
Bethel . . . . .	812
Bethlehem, Ephrathah . . . . .	813
bless, blessed, blessing . . . . .	815
blood . . . . .	817
boast, boasts, boastful . . . . .	819
body, bodies . . . . .	821
bow and arrow . . . . .	823
bow, bow down . . . . .	824
bread . . . . .	826
bribe . . . . .	828
bronze . . . . .	829
brother, brothers . . . . .	830
burnt offering, offering by fire . . . . .	832
bury, buried, burial . . . . .	833
Caleb . . . . .	834
call, calls, calling, called . . . . .	835
camel . . . . .	837
captive, captivity . . . . .	838
Carmel, Mount Carmel . . . . .	840
chariot . . . . .	841
cherubim, cherub . . . . .	842

chief . . . . .	843
children, child . . . . .	844
chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect . . . . .	846
Christ, Messiah . . . . .	848
clan . . . . .	850
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes . . . . .	851
clothe, clothed . . . . .	853
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments . . . . .	854
commander . . . . .	856
compassion, compassionate . . . . .	857
confirm, confirmation . . . . .	858
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unending love . . . . .	859
covenant, covenants . . . . .	860
cow, calf, bull, cattle . . . . .	862
cry, cry out . . . . .	863
curse, cursed, curses, cursing . . . . .	864
cut off . . . . .	866
Dan . . . . .	867
darkness . . . . .	868
David . . . . .	870
day . . . . .	874
death, die, dead . . . . .	875
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive . . . . .	878
declare, declaration . . . . .	880
decree . . . . .	881
descendant, descended from . . . . .	882
desert, wilderness . . . . .	883
dishonor, dishonorable . . . . .	885
disobey, disobedient, disobedience . . . . .	886
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer . . . . .	888
donkey, mule . . . . .	889
dream . . . . .	890
drunk, drunkard . . . . .	892
earth, earthly . . . . .	893
Edom, Edomite, Idumea . . . . .	895
Egypt, Egyptian . . . . .	896
Ekron . . . . .	898
elder . . . . .	899
enslave, in bondage . . . . .	900
ephod . . . . .	901
Ephraim . . . . .	902
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	903
exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation . . . . .	905

*Table of Contents*

---

exult, exultant . . . . .	906
face . . . . .	907
faith . . . . .	909
faithful, faithfulness . . . . .	911
family . . . . .	913
fast . . . . .	914
favor, favors, favorable, favoritism . . . . .	916
fear, fears, afraid . . . . .	918
feast . . . . .	920
festival . . . . .	921
fig . . . . .	922
fire . . . . .	923
firstborn . . . . .	924
flesh . . . . .	926
flock, herd . . . . .	928
flute, pipe . . . . .	929
fool, fools, foolish, folly . . . . .	930
forever . . . . .	932
forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness . . . . .	934
forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook . . . . .	936
fulfill, fulfilled . . . . .	937
Gad . . . . .	939
gate, gate bar . . . . .	940
Gath . . . . .	941
Gaza . . . . .	942
Geshur . . . . .	943
Gibeah . . . . .	944
gift, gifts . . . . .	945
Gilead . . . . .	947
Gilgal . . . . .	948
glory, glorious . . . . .	949
goat, kid . . . . .	951
God . . . . .	952
god, gods, goddess . . . . .	955
godly, godliness . . . . .	957
gold . . . . .	958
Goliath . . . . .	959
good, goodness . . . . .	960
grain . . . . .	962
guilt offering . . . . .	963
guilt, guilty . . . . .	964
Hades, Sheol . . . . .	966
hand, right hand, to hand over . . . . .	968



Hannah . . . . .	971
harp . . . . .	972
harvest . . . . .	973
head . . . . .	975
heal, cure . . . . .	977
heart, hearts . . . . .	979
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	981
Hebrew, Hebrews . . . . .	983
Hebron . . . . .	984
heifer . . . . .	985
high places . . . . .	986
high priest . . . . .	987
Hittite . . . . .	989
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit . . . . .	990
holy, holiness . . . . .	992
honor, honors, to honor . . . . .	994
honor, honors, to honor . . . . .	995
horn, horns . . . . .	996
horsemen . . . . .	997
house . . . . .	998
house of God, Yahweh's house . . . . .	1000
household . . . . .	1001
humble, humbles, humbled, humility . . . . .	1002
idol, idolatrous . . . . .	1003
incense . . . . .	1005
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir . . . . .	1006
iniquity, iniquities . . . . .	1008
innocent . . . . .	1009
Israel, Israelites . . . . .	1011
Jacob, Israel . . . . .	1014
jealous, jealousy . . . . .	1016
Jehoshaphat . . . . .	1018
Jehu . . . . .	1019
Jerusalem . . . . .	1020
Jesse . . . . .	1022
Jezreel . . . . .	1024
Joab . . . . .	1025
Joash . . . . .	1026
Joel . . . . .	1027
Jonathan . . . . .	1028
Joram . . . . .	1030
Jordan River, Jordan . . . . .	1031
joy, joyful . . . . .	1032

*Table of Contents*

---

joy, joyful . . . . .	1034
Judah . . . . .	1036
Judah, kingdom of Judah . . . . .	1038
judge . . . . .	1040
judge, judges, judgment, judgments . . . . .	1041
just, justice, justly . . . . .	1043
king . . . . .	1045
kingdom . . . . .	1048
kingdom of Israel . . . . .	1050
kiss . . . . .	1052
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	1053
labor pains, in labor . . . . .	1055
lamb, Lamb of God . . . . .	1056
lament, laments, lamentation . . . . .	1058
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	1059
Levite, Levi . . . . .	1061
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive . . . . .	1062
light . . . . .	1065
lion . . . . .	1067
Lord . . . . .	1068
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God . . . . .	1070
lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs . . . . .	1071
lots, casting lots . . . . .	1073
love, loves, loving, loved . . . . .	1074
lute, lyre . . . . .	1077
man of God . . . . .	1078
mercy, merciful . . . . .	1079
messenger . . . . .	1081
mighty, might . . . . .	1082
mind . . . . .	1084
miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs . . . . .	1085
Mizpah . . . . .	1087
Moab, Moabite, Moabites . . . . .	1088
month . . . . .	1089
Moses . . . . .	1090
mourn, mourning . . . . .	1092
name, names, named . . . . .	1093
nation . . . . .	1095
Negev . . . . .	1097
neighbor . . . . .	1098
new moon . . . . .	1099
oak . . . . .	1100
oath, swear, swear by . . . . .	1101

obey, obedient, obedience . . . . .	1103
oil . . . . .	1105
olive . . . . .	1106
oppress, oppression, oppressor . . . . .	1107
ox, oxen . . . . .	1109
Paran . . . . .	1110
pardon . . . . .	1111
peace offering . . . . .	1112
peace, peaceful . . . . .	1113
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks . . . . .	1115
people group, peoples, the people, a people . . . . .	1116
people of God, my people . . . . .	1119
perish, perished, perishing, perishable . . . . .	1121
perverse, perversely, pervert . . . . .	1122
Pharaoh, king of Egypt . . . . .	1123
Philistines . . . . .	1125
Phinehas . . . . .	1128
pillar, column . . . . .	1129
pit . . . . .	1130
plague . . . . .	1131
plead, pleading, plea . . . . .	1132
plow . . . . .	1133
possess, possession . . . . .	1134
power, powers . . . . .	1136
praise . . . . .	1138
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed . . . . .	1140
precious . . . . .	1142
priest, priests, priesthood . . . . .	1143
prince, princess . . . . .	1146
profit, profitable . . . . .	1148
promise, promises, promised . . . . .	1149
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . .	1151
proud, pride, prideful . . . . .	1154
proverb . . . . .	1156
punish, punishment . . . . .	1157
Rachel . . . . .	1159
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . .	1160
Ramah . . . . .	1163
Ramoth . . . . .	1164
reap, reaper . . . . .	1165
rebel, rebellious, rebellion . . . . .	1166
rebuke . . . . .	1168
receive . . . . .	1169

*Table of Contents*

---

refuge, shelter . . . . .	1171
reign . . . . .	1172
reject . . . . .	1173
rejoice . . . . .	1175
repent, repents, repented, repentance . . . . .	1176
report . . . . .	1178
restore, restores, restored, restoration . . . . .	1179
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation . . . . .	1181
reward . . . . .	1183
righteous, righteousness . . . . .	1184
robe . . . . .	1186
rod . . . . .	1187
royal . . . . .	1188
ruler, rule . . . . .	1189
sacrifice, offering . . . . .	1191
salvation . . . . .	1193
Samuel . . . . .	1194
Saul (OT) . . . . .	1196
save, saves, saved, safe . . . . .	1200
seek, sought . . . . .	1202
send, send out, sent . . . . .	1203
servant, slave, slavery . . . . .	1205
serve, service . . . . .	1208
set apart . . . . .	1210
shame, shameful, ashamed . . . . .	1211
sheep, ram, ewe . . . . .	1212
shepherd, to shepherd . . . . .	1214
shield . . . . .	1216
Shiloh . . . . .	1217
siege, besiege, besieged, besieger . . . . .	1218
sign, signs, proof, reminder . . . . .	1219
silver . . . . .	1221
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	1222
slaughter . . . . .	1225
sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking . . . . .	1226
sleep, asleep, fall asleep . . . . .	1228
son, sons . . . . .	1229
soul, souls . . . . .	1232
spear . . . . .	1234
spirit, spirits, spiritual . . . . .	1235
staff . . . . .	1237
statute, statutes . . . . .	1238
stone, stones, stoning . . . . .	1239

strength, strengthen . . . . .	1240
strong drink . . . . .	1242
stronghold, fortress, fortified . . . . .	1243
sword . . . . .	1245
tax, taxes . . . . .	1247
temple . . . . .	1248
tent . . . . .	1250
tent of meeting . . . . .	1251
tenth, tithe . . . . .	1252
testimony, testify . . . . .	1253
thresh, threshing . . . . .	1255
tomb, grave, burial place . . . . .	1256
trespass, trespasses, trespassed . . . . .	1258
tribe . . . . .	1259
trouble, troubles, troubled . . . . .	1260
true, truth, truths . . . . .	1262
trumpet . . . . .	1264
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . .	1265
turn, turn away, turn back . . . . .	1267
uncircumcised, uncircumcision . . . . .	1269
unfaithful, unfaithfulness . . . . .	1271
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness . . . . .	1272
unleavened bread . . . . .	1273
vain, vanity . . . . .	1274
vineyard . . . . .	1275
vision . . . . .	1276
voice . . . . .	1277
vow, vows, vowed . . . . .	1279
walk, walks, walked, walking . . . . .	1280
warrior, soldier . . . . .	1282
watch, watchman . . . . .	1283
well, cistern . . . . .	1284
wheat . . . . .	1286
will of God . . . . .	1287
wine, wineskin, new wine . . . . .	1288
wise, wisdom . . . . .	1290
witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses . . . . .	1292
woe . . . . .	1294
womb . . . . .	1295
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures . . . . .	1296
word, words . . . . .	1298
works, deeds, work, acts . . . . .	1300
world, worldly . . . . .	1302

*Table of Contents*

---

worship . . . . .	1304
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless . . . . .	1306
wrath, fury . . . . .	1308
Yahweh . . . . .	1309
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts . . . . .	1314
year . . . . .	1315
yoke . . . . .	1316
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>1317</b>
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	1317
Active or Passive . . . . .	1320
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	1325
Background Information . . . . .	1330
Biblical Distance . . . . .	1333
Biblical Money . . . . .	1336
Biblical Volume . . . . .	1338
Biblical Weight . . . . .	1342
Connecting Words . . . . .	1344
Copy or Borrow Words . . . . .	1347
Direct and Indirect Quotations . . . . .	1349
Double Negatives . . . . .	1351
Doublet . . . . .	1353
Ellipsis . . . . .	1355
Euphemism . . . . .	1357
First, Second, or Third Person . . . . .	1359
Forms of You . . . . .	1361
Fractions . . . . .	1362
Go and Come . . . . .	1365
Hendiadys . . . . .	1368
How to Translate Names . . . . .	1370
Hyperbole and Generalization . . . . .	1377
Hypothetical Situations . . . . .	1381
Idiom . . . . .	1384
Inclusive “We” . . . . .	1388
Irony . . . . .	1389
Litotes . . . . .	1392
Merism . . . . .	1394
Metaphor . . . . .	1396
Metonymy . . . . .	1404
Nominal Adjectives . . . . .	1408
Numbers . . . . .	1410
Order of Events . . . . .	1414
Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	1416
Original Manuscripts . . . . .	1418

Parallelism . . . . .	1419
Personification . . . . .	1423
Predictive Past . . . . .	1425
Pronouns . . . . .	1427
Proverbs . . . . .	1430
Quotes Within Quotes . . . . .	1433
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	1436
Simile . . . . .	1442
Synecdoche . . . . .	1445
Textual Variants . . . . .	1447
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	1449
Verse Bridges . . . . .	1452

## translationNotes

### Introduction to 1 Samuel

#### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of 1 Samuel

1. Samuel as judge over Israel (1–7)
  - Samuel as a child (1:1–3:21)
  - Shiloh priesthood; the fall and death of Eli the priest (4:1–22)
  - The Ark of God and the war with the Philistines (5:1–6:21)
  - Mizpah; Samuel’s rule over Israel (7:1–17)
2. Saul and Samuel (8–15)
  - Samuel permits the people to seek a king (8:1–22)
  - Saul anointed king (9:1–10:27)
  - Battle and victory over the Ammonites (11:1–15)
  - Samuel’s farewell (12:1–25)
  - Saul’s weakness and failures (13:1–15:35)
3. Saul and David’s conflict (Chapters 16–31)
  - God’s choice of David to be king (16:1–23)
  - David fights Goliath (17:1–58)
  - Saul’s jealousy of David; David and Jonathan (18:1–20:42)
  - David runs away; David in Philistia (21:1–30:31)
  - Death of Saul (31:1–13)

#### What is the Book of 1 Samuel about?

This book focuses on three individuals: Samuel, Saul, and David. Samuel was the last of the judges over Israel. Saul was the first king of Israel. Saul’s rise and fall take up much of the narrative in 1 Samuel. After Saul, David became the king of Israel. One of the book’s most important themes is that David was chosen by God himself to become king and to establish a line of royal succession in Israel.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

The traditional title “1 Samuel,” that is, “First Samuel,” has a very vague meaning at best. Translators should consider a title such as “The First Book About Samuel, Saul, and David.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))



### **What is the purpose of the Book of 1 Samuel?**

The Book of 1 Samuel contains a great amount of information about how Israel developed into a more unified nation under the first kings in Israel. The author may have wished to defend David's right to rule in place of Saul. He may have also wished to condemn the actions of the northern tribes who would break away to form the northern kingdom. It is likely that the author wrote at a time when the nation of Israel was in a civil war, and that he supported the southern kingdom of Judah, which continued to have a descendant of King David as their king.

### **Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**

#### **Who is "Yahweh's anointed"?**

There are many references in 1 Samuel to "Yahweh's anointed." This is a reference to the one whom Yahweh has chosen to be the king of his people. Ultimately, this book looks forward to a time when a descendant of David who is Yahweh's anointed, the Messiah, will become the king chosen by God. (See: [anoint](#), [anointed](#), [anointing](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#) and [Christ, Messiah](#))

### **Part 3: Important Translation Issues**

#### **What are curses, as found in 1 Samuel and elsewhere?**

A person speaks a curse when he calls down divine or demonic punishment upon someone or something. A curse usually has this pattern: "May God do so to you, and even more, if you hide anything from me of all the words that he spoke to you" (1 Sam. 3:17). Other instances of curses in 1 and 2 Samuel are found in 1 Sam 14:44; 20:13; 25:22; 2 Sam 3:9, 35; and 19:13. The translator should represent a curse in the project language in as strong a way as possible.

#### **How is the name "Israel" used in the Bible?**

The name "Israel" is used in many different ways in the Bible. The descendants of Jacob, who was also named Israel, were a people group who became known as Israel. This people group developed into the unified nation of Israel. After the civil war in the nation of Israel, the tribes in the north took the name Israel, while the southern kingdom became known as the kingdom of Judah. (See: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#))

The Book of 1 Samuel has two references to Israel and Judah ([1 Samuel 17:52](#), [1 Samuel 18:15](#)), but these references appear in the narrative long before the split between the two kingdoms occurred. It seems clear that the references to Israel and Judah were put into the text because the writer was working at a far later time, during the period of the split between the two kingdoms. He wanted to emphasize that all the twelve tribes had enthusiastically supported David.

#### **What is the meaning of the phrase "to this day"?**

This phrase was used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that "to this day" refers to a time which has already passed. He must avoid giving

the impression that the present day of the translation's readers is meant. The translator might decide to say, "to this day, at the time when this is being written" or "to this day, at the time of writing." This Hebrew phrase occurs in 1 Samuel 5:5; 6:18; 27:6; 30:25.

## 1 Samuel 01 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter introduces Samuel. It is the beginning of the section 1 Samuel 1-7 which tells about Samuel, the religious leader of Israel.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Two wives

This was a common practice in the ancient Near East. It was against the law of Moses. The men of Israel would have sinned if they married more than one woman. This type of marriage always creates problems because of jealousy. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

#### “Pay his vow”

It was customary for Israelites to promise God to make a sacrifice to him if God answered special prayers. Making such a sacrifice was called paying one's vow. (See: [vow](#), [vows](#), [vowed](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idioms

When Hannah wanted to assure Eli she was telling the truth, she used the idiom “as you live.” This is a type of oath formula meaning “I promise you I am telling the truth.” (See: [Idiom](#))

The author also uses the phrase “call to mind.” This is a common idiom meaning “remember.”

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 1:1](#)
- [1 Samuel intro](#)

## 1 Samuel 1:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> There was a man named Elkanah, a descendant of Zuph, who lived in the city of Ramah in the hill country, where the people of the tribe of Ephraim lived. His father was Jeroham, his grandfather was Elihu, and his great-grandfather was Tohu. He belonged to the clan of Zuph. <sup>2</sup> He had two wives: Hannah and Peninnah. Now Peninnah had several children, but Hannah had no children.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> There was a certain man of Ramathaim of the Zuphites, of the hill country of Ephraim; his name was Elkanah son of Jeroham son of Elihu son of Tohu son of Zuph, an Ephraimite. <sup>[1]</sup> but it is understood that really refers to the region in which the clan descended from Zuph resided. <sup>2</sup> He had two wives; the name of the first was Hannah, and the name of the second was Peninnah. Peninnah had children, but Hannah had none.

---

1:1 <sup>[1]</sup>Some modern versions have *Ramathaim Zophim, Zophim*

### translationNotes

#### Ramathaim

This is the name of a small village possibly located eight kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### the Zuphites

This is the name of a people group that descended from Zuph. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Elkanah ... Jeroham ... Elihu ... Tohu ... Zuph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Peninnah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- Ephraim
- Hannah

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 1:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Once every year Elkanah went up with his family from Ramah to the city of Shiloh. He would go there to worship Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, and offer sacrifices to him. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, helped their father to do the work as priests of Yahweh there. <sup>4</sup> Each time Elkanah offered sacrifices there, he would give some of the meat to Peninnah and some to each of her sons and daughters.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> This man went from his city year after year to worship and to sacrifice to Yahweh of hosts in Shiloh. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, priests to Yahweh, were there. <sup>4</sup> When the day came for Elkanah to sacrifice each year, he always gave portions of the meat to Peninnah his wife, and to all her sons and her daughters.

### translationNotes

#### This man

“This man” refers to Elkanah.

#### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

#### Eli, Hophni and Phinehas

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [worship](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts](#)
- [Shiloh](#)
- [Phinehas](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 1:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> But he gave a larger amount of meat to Hannah because he loved her very much, even though Yahweh had not permitted her to give birth to any children. <sup>6</sup> But his other wife, Peninnah, would mock Hannah to make her feel miserable, reminding her Yahweh had not allowed her to bear children.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> But to Hannah he always gave a double portion, for he loved Hannah, although Yahweh had closed her womb. <sup>6</sup> Her rival provoked her severely in order to irritate her, because Yahweh had closed her womb.

### translationNotes

#### Hannah

This is a woman's name. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### closed her womb

“made her barren” or “prevented her from becoming pregnant”

#### Her rival provoked her severely

The other wife would often grieve and shame Hannah.

### translationWords

- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [womb](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 1:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> This happened every year. When they went up to the temple of Yahweh at Shiloh, Peninnah always ridiculed Hannah so much that Hannah cried and would not eat. <sup>8</sup> Then Elkanah would say to her, “Hannah, why are you crying? Why are you eating nothing? You are so sad! Surely it is better for you to have me as your husband than to have even ten sons!”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> So year after year, when she went up to the house of Yahweh with her family, her rival always provoked her. Therefore she used to weep and eat nothing. <sup>8</sup> Elkanah her husband always said to her, “Hannah, why do you weep? Why do you not eat? Why is your heart sad? Am I not better to you than ten sons?”

**translationNotes****her rival**

This is Peninnah, the other wife of Elkanah. A rival is someone who competes against another person. In this case Peninnah was competing against Hannah to try to get Elkanah to love her best.

**Hannah, why do you weep? Why do you not eat? Why is your heart sad? Am I not better to you than ten sons?**

These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements, if necessary. AT: “Hannah, you should not weep. You should eat, and your heart should be glad because I am better to you than ten sons!” or “You have little reason for sadness. I favor you and that should be enough.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**than ten sons**

Elkanah is exaggerating to emphasize how important Hannah is to him. AT: “than any son could be” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**translationWords**

- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 1:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> One year, after they had finished eating and drinking at Shiloh, Hannah stood up to pray. Eli the priest was nearby, sitting on a chair by the doorway of the sacred tent of Yahweh. <sup>10</sup> Hannah was very distressed, and she cried very sorrowfully as she prayed to Yahweh.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> On one of these occasions, Hannah rose up after they had finished eating and drinking in Shiloh. Now Eli the priest was sitting upon his seat by the doorway to the temple of Yahweh. <sup>10</sup> She was deeply distressed; she prayed to Yahweh and wept bitterly.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Hannah begins to pray to Yahweh, and Eli watches.

#### Hannah rose up after

Implicit information here can be made explicit. Either Hannah's tent was next to the tabernacle tent or she walked from her tent to the tabernacle to pray. AT: "Hannah rose up and went to the house of Yahweh to pray after" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Now Eli the priest

"Now" is used here to mark a break in the main storyline. Here the author tells about a new person in the story. This person is the priest Eli. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### the temple of Yahweh

The "temple" was actually a tent, but it was where the people worshiped, so it is best to translate as "temple" here.

#### She was deeply distressed

Hannah was deeply troubled or grieved because of not having any children and being ridiculed regularly by Peninnah, her husband's other wife. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Shiloh
- priest, priests, priesthood
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 1:11****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> She made a solemn promise, saying, “O Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, if you will look at me and see how I miserable I am, and think kindly about me and allow me to give birth to a son, then I will dedicate him to you for the rest of his life. And to show that he is dedicated to you, no one will ever be allowed to cut his hair.”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> She made a vow and said, “Yahweh of hosts, if you will look on the affliction of your servant and call me to mind, and do not forget your servant, but give your servant a son, then I will give him to Yahweh all the days of his life, and no razor will ever touch his head.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Hannah’s prayer to Yahweh continues.

**the affliction of your servant**

The abstract noun “affliction” can be translated as a verb phrase. This refers either to 1) Hannah being unable to become pregnant. AT: “how I am suffering because I cannot become pregnant” or 2) the way Peninnah always insulted her. AT: “how that woman is afflicting me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**call me to mind**

This is a special plea to God to take action on Hannah’s behalf. God does know what is happening to Hannah; he has not forgotten.

**do not forget your servant**

This phrase says almost the same thing as “call me to mind.” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**translationWords**

- [vow, vows, vowed](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [mind](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 1:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> As she was praying like that to Yahweh, Eli the priest saw Hannah's lips moving as she was praying. <sup>13</sup> But Hannah was only praying silently; she was not making any sound. So Eli thought that she was drunk. <sup>14</sup> He said to her, "How long will you continue to get drunk? Get rid of your wine!"

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> As she continued praying before Yahweh, Eli watched her mouth. <sup>13</sup> Hannah spoke in her heart. Her lips moved, but her voice was not heard. Therefore Eli thought she was drunk. <sup>14</sup> Eli said to her, "How long will you be drunk? Get rid of your wine."

### translationNotes

#### Eli watched her

Eli was the chief priest, so he was in the tabernacle of God and in charge of it. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- Yahweh
- heart, hearts
- voice
- drunk, drunkard
- wine, wineskin, new wine

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 1:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Hannah replied, "Sir, I am not drunk! I have not been drinking wine or any other alcoholic drink. I feel very miserable and I have been telling Yahweh about how I feel. <sup>16</sup> Do not think that I am a worthless woman. I have been praying like this because I am so ashamed and upset."

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Hannah answered, "No, my master, I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit. I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but I have been pouring out my soul before Yahweh. <sup>16</sup> Do not consider your servant to be a shameless woman; I have been speaking out of the abundance of my great concern and provocation."

**translationNotes****I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit**

"I am a woman who is deeply sad"

**pouring out my soul before Yahweh**

This is an idiom that means "telling Yahweh my deepest emotions." (See: [Idiom](#))

**Do not consider your servant to be**

Hannah speaks of herself in the second person to show her humility. It can be stated in first person. AT: "Do not consider me, your servant, to be" or "Do not consider me" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**I have been speaking out of the abundance of my great concern and provocation**

This is another way of saying that she has a "sorrowful spirit," as in 1:15. The abstract nouns "abundance," "concern," and "provocation" can be translated as adjectives and verbs. AT: "I have been speaking because I am very sad, and my rival has greatly provoked me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**concern and provocation**

These words both mean that Hannah is sad and annoyed because her rival has been provoking her. (See: [Doublet](#))

**concern**

Peninnah irritates and annoys her.



**provocation**

Hannah is referring to the grief and shame she feels because Peninnah is being cruel to her.

**translationWords**

- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [strong drink](#)
- [soul, souls](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 1:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> Eli replied, “I wish that things may go well for you. I desire that God, the one we Israelite people worship, may give you what you asked of him.”

<sup>18</sup> She replied, “I want you to think highly about me.” Then she returned to her family and after she ate something, she was sad no more.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> Then Eli answered and said, “Go in peace; may the God of Israel grant the request that you have asked him for.” <sup>18</sup> She said, “Let your servant find favor in your eyes.” Then the woman went her way and ate; her face was no longer sad.

### translationNotes

#### Then Eli answered

Eli was the head priest residing over the tabernacle.

#### Let your servant find

Hannah speaks of herself in the second person to show respect for Eli, the head priest. This can be stated in the first person. AT: “Let me, your servant, find” or “Let me find” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

#### find favor in your eyes

Here “find favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that he is pleased with her. Here the eyes are a metonym for sight, and seeing represents judging or deciding the value of something. AT: “evaluated me and approve” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### ate; her face was

Here “her face” represents Hannah herself. You can make this a separate sentence, if needed. AT: “ate. She was” or “ate. People could see that she was” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### translationWords

- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [face](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 1:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> Early the next morning, Elkanah and his family got up and worshiped Yahweh again, and then they returned to their home at Ramah. Then Elkanah slept with Hannah, and Yahweh answered her prayer. <sup>20</sup> She became pregnant and gave birth to a son. She named him Samuel, which sounds like the words in the Hebrew language that mean “heard by God,” because she said, “Yahweh heard me when I requested a son from him.”

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> They rose early in the morning and worshiped before Yahweh, and then they returned again to their house in Ramah. Elkanah slept with Hannah his wife, and Yahweh called her to mind. <sup>20</sup> When the time came, Hannah conceived and gave birth to a son. She called his name Samuel, saying, “Because I have asked for him from Yahweh.”

### translationNotes

#### called her to mind

God knew what was happening to Hannah; he had not forgotten. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 1:11](#).

#### Hannah conceived

“Hannah became pregnant”

### translationWords

- [worship](#)
- [house](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [Samuel](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 1:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> The following year, Elkanah went up to Shiloh with his family to make the kind of sacrifice he made each year, and also to give a special offering to God that he had promised to give him previously. <sup>22</sup> But Hannah did not go with them. She said to her husband, “After I have weaned the baby, I will take him to Shiloh and present him to Yahweh, and he will stay there for the rest of his life.”

<sup>23</sup> Elkanah said, “Do what you think is best. Stay here until you have weaned him. What I desire is that Yahweh may enable you to do what you have promised.” So Hannah stayed at home and nursed her son until she weaned him.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Once again, Elkanah and all his house went up to offer to Yahweh the yearly sacrifice and pay his vow. <sup>22</sup> But Hannah did not go; she had said to her husband, “I will not go until the child is weaned; then I will bring him, so that he may appear before Yahweh and live there forever.” <sup>23</sup> Elkanah her husband said to her, “Do what seems good to you. Wait until you have weaned him; only, may Yahweh confirm his word.” So the woman stayed and nursed her son until she weaned him.

**translationNotes****his house**

The word “house” is a metonym for the people who lived in the house. AT: “his family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**is weaned**

stops drinking milk and starts eating only solid food

**he may appear before Yahweh and live there forever**

Hannah had promised God that she would allow Samuel to live and work with Eli the priest in the temple ([1 Samuel 1:11](#)).

**nursed her son**

“gave her son milk”

**translationWords**

- sacrifice, offering
- vow, vows, vowed
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- forever
- confirm, confirmation
- word, words

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 1:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> After she weaned him, even though Samuel was very young, she took him to the house of Yahweh that was at Shiloh. She took along with her and her son a three year old bull, about twenty liters of flour, and a container of wine. <sup>25</sup> After Hannah and Elkanah had slaughtered the bull and offered it to Yahweh on the altar, they brought the boy to Eli.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> When she had weaned him, she took him with her, along with a three-year-old bull, <sup>[1]</sup> instead of one ephah of meal, and a bottle of wine, and brought him to the house of Yahweh in Shiloh. Now the child was still young. <sup>25</sup> They killed the bull, and they brought the child to Eli.

---

1:24 <sup>[1]</sup>Some translations have *three bulls a three-year-old bull*.

### translationNotes

#### ephah

An ephah is about 22 liters of dry material. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

#### bottle

Wine was kept in animal skins, not glass bottles.

### translationWords

- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [Shiloh](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 1:26-28****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> Then Hannah said to him, "Sir, do you remember me? I am the woman who prayed as I stood here beside you several years ago. <sup>27</sup> I prayed that Yahweh would enable me to give birth to a child, and this is that child! <sup>28</sup> So now I am presenting him to Yahweh. He will belong to Yahweh as long as he lives." Then Elkanah and his family worshiped Yahweh there.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> She said, "Oh, my master! As you live, my master, I am the woman who stood here next to you praying to Yahweh. <sup>27</sup> For this child I prayed and Yahweh has given me my petition which I asked of him. <sup>28</sup> I have given him to Yahweh, as long as he lives he is lent to Yahweh." Then he worshiped Yahweh there. <sup>[1]</sup>

---

1:28 <sup>[1]</sup>Some modern versions have, *Then they worshiped Yahweh there.*

**translationNotes****Oh, my master! As you live, my master**

Here the idiom "As you live" shows that Hannah is being sincere and truthful. AT: "Sir, what I am going to tell you is certainly true" (See: [Idiom](#))

**has given me my petition which I asked of him**

The noun "petition" refers to a formal request for another person to do something. It can be translated with a verb. The idiom "to give a petition" means to do what the person requests. AT: "has agreed to do what I solemnly requested that he do" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Idiom](#))

**he is lent to Yahweh**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "I am loaning him to Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**he worshiped Yahweh**

Possible meanings: 1) "He" refers to Elkanah or 2) "he" is a synecdoche referring to both Elkanah and his family. AT: "Elkanah and his family" (See: [Synecdoche](#))



**translationWords**

- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 02 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Many translations set apart quotations, prayers, or songs. 1 Samuel 2:1-10 is a song of praise to God for the birth of Samuel. It has been set apart in the ULB through the use of indentation.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Hannah's song of praise to God

This song is about how God protects the weak and strengthens them. He humbles the rich, provides for the poor, and defeats his enemies.

#### Eli's Sons

Eli, the chief priest, had two sons. They were ungodly priests who continually sinned and did not honor God. Eli corrected them but they did not listen. A prophet warned Eli that God would stop his family from being priests and his sons would both die on the same day. At the same time, Samuel was growing up and serving God. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#) and [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

This chapter has many figures of speech because the first part of the chapter is a song and the last part of the chapter is a prophecy. Songs and prophecy tend to have many figures of speech.

#### Synecdoches

“My heart” and “my mouth” are synecdoches referencing the speaker. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Metonymies

Body parts are often used to stand for activities involving that part of the body. “The feet of his faithful people” is a metonym meaning what they are doing or where they are going. Place names are often used for people in that place such as “the ends of the earth” meaning the people living in the ends of the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Metaphors

Hannah used many military metaphors: “rock,” representing protection; “the bows of the mighty men are broken,” representing military defeat; “the horn of his anointed,” representing the power of the one that God has chosen to be king. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **Rhetorical questions**

God used three rhetorical questions to correct and condemn Eli. “Did I not reveal myself to the house of your ancestor, when they were in Egypt in bondage to Pharaoh’s house?” “Why then do you scorn my offerings that I required in the place where I live?” “Why do you honor your sons above me by making yourselves fat with the best of every offering of my people Israel?” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### **Links:**

- [1 Samuel 02:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 2:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then Hannah prayed, saying,

”In my inner being I rejoice in what you, Yahweh, have done.

I am strong because I belong to you.

I laugh at my enemies

because you, Yahweh has rescued me from being mocked by them.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Hannah prayed and said,

”My heart exults in Yahweh.

My horn is exalted in Yahweh.

My mouth boasts over my enemies,

because I rejoice in your salvation.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Hannah recites a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**My heart exults**

“I have great joy”

**in Yahweh**

“because of who Yahweh is” or “because Yahweh is so great”

**My horn is exalted**

A horn is a symbol of strength. AT: “I am now strong” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- Hannah
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- heart, hearts
- exult, exultant
- horn, horns
- Yahweh
- exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation
- adversary, enemy
- rejoice
- salvation

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 2:2

### UDB:

<sup>2</sup> There is no one who is holy like you, Yahweh.

There is no other god like you.

There is no one like you, our God, who can protect us as though you were putting us on top of a huge rock where we can be safe from danger.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> There is no one holy like Yahweh,

for there is none besides you;

there is no rock like our God.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### there is no rock like our God

This is another way of saying that God is strong and faithful. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### rock

This is a rock large enough to hide behind or to stand on and so be high above one's enemies.

### translationWords

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [God](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> You people who oppose God, stop boasting!

Yahweh is a God who knows everything,  
and he will evaluate everyone's actions.

So do not speak so arrogantly!

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh, you break the bows of mighty soldiers,

but you give strength to those who stumble because they are weak.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Boast no more so very proudly;

let no arrogance come out of your mouth.

For Yahweh is a God of knowledge;

by him actions are weighed.

<sup>4</sup> The bow of the mighty men are broken,

but those who stumble put on strength like a belt.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. She speaks as if other people were listening to her. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**no arrogance**

“no arrogant words”

**by him actions are weighed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “he weighs people's actions” or “he understands why people act as they do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**The bow of the mighty men are broken**

Possible meanings are 1) the bows themselves are broken or 2) the men who carry the bows are prevented from acting. AT: “Mighty bowmen are kept from acting”

**The bow of the mighty men are broken**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh breaks the bows of the mighty men” or “Yahweh can make even the strongest of people weak” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**those who stumble put on strength like a belt**

This metaphor means they will no longer stumble, but their strength will remain with them as tightly as a belt. AT: “he will make those who stumble strong” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**put on ... a belt**

This is the general term for putting something around one’s waist to prepare for work.

**translationWords**

- [boast, boasts, boastful](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [arrogant](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)
- [mighty, might](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 2:5

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Many people who previously had plenty to eat, now have to work for other people to earn money to buy food,

but many who were always hungry are not hungry anymore.

The woman who did not have any children before, now has given birth to many children,

and the woman who had many children before, now is very lonely because they have all died.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Those who were full have hired themselves out for bread;

those who were hungry have stopped being hungry.

Even the barren one gives birth to seven,

but the woman who has many children languishes.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### gives birth to seven

“gives birth to seven children”

#### languishes

“becomes weak and sad and lonely”

### translationWords

- [bread](#)
- [barren](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh, you cause some people to die,  
and you restore some people who were almost dead.

For some people, it seems that they will soon go to where dead people go, but you cause them to become healthy again.

<sup>7</sup> Yahweh, you cause some people to be poor, and you cause some people to be rich,  
you humble some people, and you honor some people.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh kills and brings to life.  
He brings down to Sheol and raises up.  
<sup>7</sup> Yahweh makes some people poor and some rich.  
He humbles, but he also lifts up.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Yahweh kills ... brings to life ... brings down ... raises up ... makes some people poor ... some rich ... humbles ... lifts up**

Yahweh is in control of everything. (See: [Merism](#))

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [Hades, Sheol](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:8****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Sometimes you lift poor people up so that they are no longer sitting in the dust,  
 and you raise up needy people so that they are no longer sitting on heaps of ashes;  
 you cause them to sit next to princes;  
 you cause them to sit on seats where people who are highly honored sit.  
 Yahweh, you are the one who laid the foundations of the earth,  
 and you have set the whole world on those foundations.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> He raises up the poor out of the dust.  
 He lifts the needy from the ash heap  
 to make them sit with princes  
 and inherit the seat of honor.  
 For the pillars of the earth are Yahweh's  
 and he has set the world upon them.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**out of the dust ... from the ash heap**

These are metaphors for the lowest position in society. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the needy**

people who do not have the things that they need

**translationWords**

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- prince, princess
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

- honor, honors, to honor
- pillar, column
- earth, earthly
- world, worldly

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:9****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> You will protect your loyal people,  
but you will cause the wicked to die and to descend to the dark place where the dead go.  
We do not defeat our enemies by our own strength.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> He will guard the feet of his faithful people,  
but the wicked will be put to silence in darkness,  
for no one will prevail by strength.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**guard the feet of his faithful people**

Here “feet” is a metonym for the way a person walks, which in turn is a metaphor for the way a person decides how to live his life. AT: “keep his faithful people from making foolish decisions” or “enable his faithful people to make wise decisions” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**the wicked will be put to silence in darkness**

This polite way of saying that Yahweh will kill the wicked can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will put the wicked to silence in darkness” or “Yahweh will put the wicked in the dark and silent world of the dead” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**the wicked will be put to silence**

The words “be put to silence” are an idiom for “be made silent.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will make them silent” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**by strength**

“because he is strong”

**translationWords**

- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [darkness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:10****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh, you will break into pieces those who oppose you.

You will cause thunder in the sky to show that you oppose them.

Yahweh, you will judge people everywhere, even those who live in the most remote places on the earth.

You will give strength to the king whom you will appoint, and give him great power over his enemies.”

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Those who oppose Yahweh will be broken to pieces;

he will thunder against them from heaven.

Yahweh will judge the ends of the earth;

he will give strength to his king

and exalt the horn of his anointed.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Those who oppose Yahweh will be broken**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will break those who oppose him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**broken to pieces**

This idiom means “defeated.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**the ends of the earth**

This is an idiom that means everywhere. AT: “the whole earth” (See: [Idiom](#))

**exalt the horn of his anointed**

A horn is a symbol of strength. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 2:1](#). AT: “he will make the leader he has chosen stronger than his enemies” (See: [Metaphor](#))



**his anointed**

This speaks of the person that Yahweh chose and empowered for his purposes as if Yahweh had anointed the person with oil. This can be stated in active form. AT: “the one he has anointed” or “the one he has chosen” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [king](#)
- [horn, horns](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:12-14****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Eli's two sons, who were also priests, were very wicked. They were not faithful to Yahweh. <sup>13</sup> The custom was that while the people were boiling the meat from their sacrifices in the huge pot at the temple, a priest would send his servant, who would come with a large three-pronged fork in his hand. <sup>14</sup> He would stick the fork into the meat in the pot, and whatever meat fastened onto the fork, he would take and give it to the priest who sent him.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Now the sons of Eli were worthless men. They did not know Yahweh. <sup>13</sup> The custom of the priests with the people was that when any man offered a sacrifice, the priest's servant would come with a three-pronged fork in his hand, while the meat was boiling. <sup>14</sup> He would stick it into the pan, or kettle, or cauldron, or pot. All that the fork brought up the priest would take for himself. They did this in Shiloh with all the Israelites that came there.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

When people would offer animals as sacrifices, they would first burn the animal's fat and then boil the meat and eat it.

**did not know Yahweh**

“did not listen to Yahweh” or “did not obey Yahweh”

**custom**

A custom is an action that people regularly do.

**into the pan, or kettle, or cauldron, or pot**

These are containers in which food could be cooked. If your language does not have separate words for these items it can be stated more generally. AT: “into whatever the people were cooking the meat in”

**pan**

a small metal container for boiling and cooking

**kettle**

a large, heavy metal container for boiling and cooking

**cauldron**

a large, heavy metal container for boiling and cooking

**pot**

a clay container for cooking

**translationWords**

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Shiloh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 2:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> However, before the fat on the meat was cut off and burned as a sacrifice to Yahweh, the servant of Eli's sons would come to the man who was making the sacrifice and say to him, "Give me some meat now to take to the priest for him to roast! He wants raw meat; he does not want boiled meat."

<sup>16</sup> If the man said to the servant, "Let the priests cut off and burn the fat first; then you can take what you want," the servant would reply, "No, give it to me now; if you do not give it to me, I will take it forcefully!"

<sup>17</sup> Yahweh considered that the young sons of Eli were committing a very great sin, because they were treating very disrespectfully the offerings that were being given to Yahweh.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Worse, before they burned the fat, the priest's servant came, and said to the man who was sacrificing, "Give meat to roast for the priest; for he will not accept boiled meat from you, but only raw." <sup>16</sup> If the man said to him, "They must burn the fat first, and then take as much as you want." Then he would say, "No, you will give it me now; if not, I will take it by force." <sup>17</sup> The sin of these young men was very great before Yahweh, for they despised Yahweh's offering.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

When people would offer animals as sacrifices, they would first burn the animal's fat and then boil the meat, give some to the priest, and eat the rest.

#### Worse, before

"They even did something worse than that. Before"

#### they burned

The person who actually did the burning can be made explicit. AT: "the man who was sacrificing took his sacrifice to the priests and the priests burned" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Give meat to roast for the priest

"Give me some meat so I can give it to the priest so he can roast it"

**roast**

cook over a fire

**boiled**

cooked in water

**raw**

not cooked

**despised Yahweh's offering**

The young men did not like Yahweh's instructions regarding the offering and paid no attention to them.

**translationWords**

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 2:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> Then Eli would ask God to bless Elkanah and his wife, and he would say to Elkanah, “I hope that Yahweh will enable your wife to give birth to other children, to take the place of the one whom she dedicated to Yahweh.” Then Elkanah and his family would return home. <sup>21</sup> Yahweh was indeed very kind to Hannah, for he enabled her to give birth to three other sons and two daughters. Their son Samuel grew up while he was doing work for Yahweh in his temple.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> Eli would bless Elkanah and his wife and say, “May Yahweh give you more children by this woman because of the request she made of Yahweh.” Then they would return to their own home. <sup>21</sup> Yahweh again helped Hannah, and again she became pregnant. She bore three sons and two daughters. Meanwhile, the child Samuel grew before Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### because of the request she made of Yahweh

Hannah had asked Yahweh for a baby and promised him that she would give the baby to serve in the temple.

#### before Yahweh

This means where Yahweh could see him and Samuel could learn about Yahweh.

### translationWords

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 2:22-24

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> Now Eli became very old. He often heard about all the evil things that his sons were doing to the Israelite people. He heard that they sometimes slept with the women who worked at the entrance to the tent where God spoke to his people. <sup>23</sup> He said to them, "It is terrible that you do such things! Many people keep telling me about the evil things that you do. <sup>24</sup> My sons, stop it! The reports about you that the people who belong to Yahweh tell others are terrible!

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> Now Eli was very old; he heard all that his sons were doing to all Israel, and how they slept with the women who served at the entrance to the tent of meeting. <sup>23</sup> He said to them, "Why do you such things? For I hear of your evil actions from all these people." <sup>24</sup> No, my sons; for it is not a good report that I hear. You make Yahweh's people disobey.

### translationNotes

#### Why do you such things?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "It is terrible that you do such things!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### translationWords

- son, sons
- Israel, Israelites
- sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking
- tent of meeting
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- report
- people of God, my people
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> If one person sins against another person, God can intercede between them. But if someone sins against Yahweh, who will speak up for him?" But Eli's sons would not listen to what their father said. This was because Yahweh had decided that someone needed to kill them.

<sup>26</sup> The boy Samuel continued to grow up, and the things that he did pleased Yahweh and the people.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> "If one man sins against another, God will judge him; but if a man sins against Yahweh, who will speak for him?" But they would not listen to the voice of their father, because Yahweh intended to kill them. <sup>26</sup> The child Samuel grew up, and increased in favor with Yahweh and also with men.

**translationNotes****who will speak for him?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "there is certainly no one who can speak for him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**speak for him**

"ask Yahweh to have mercy on him"

**the voice of their father**

Here the father's "voice" represents the father. AT: "their father" or "what their father said" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- voice
- ancestor, father, forefather
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 2:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> One day, a prophet came to Eli and told him, "This is what Yahweh has told me: 'When your ancestors were slaves of the king of Egypt, I appeared to Aaron. <sup>28</sup> From all the tribes of the Israelite people, I chose him and his male descendants to be priests for me. I appointed them to go up to my altar, to burn incense, to wear a sacred apron as they worked for me. And I declared that they could take and eat some of the meat that the Israelite people burned on the altar.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> Now a man of God came to Eli and said to him, "Yahweh says, 'Did I not reveal myself to the house of your ancestor, when they were in Egypt in bondage to Pharaoh's house? <sup>28</sup> I chose him out of all the tribes of Israel to be my priest, to go up to my altar, and to burn incense, to wear an ephod before me. I gave to the house of your ancestor all the offerings of the people of Israel made with fire.

### translationNotes

#### man of God

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. AT: "a man who hears and tells words from God"

#### Did I not reveal myself ... house?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should know that I revealed myself ... house." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### the house of your ancestor

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who lived in the house. AT: "the family of your ancestor" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### your ancestor

Aaron

#### to go up to my altar, and to burn incense

This refers to making an offering to Yahweh.

**to wear an ephod before me**

The words “wear an ephod” are a metonym for the work of the priests who wear the ephod. AT: “to do what I had commanded the priests to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [enslave, in bondage](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [incense](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [fire](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 2:29-30

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> So why do you show disrespect for the sacrifices and offerings that I commanded the people to bring to me? You are honoring your sons more than you are honoring me, by allowing them to get fat from eating the best parts of all the sacrifices that the Israelite people bring to me!

<sup>30</sup> Therefore, this is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, declares: 'I definitely promised that Aaron and his descendants would continue to serve me forever. But now I declare this: It will not continue like that! I will honor those who honor me, but I will despise those who despise me.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> Why, then, do you scorn my sacrifices and offerings that I required in the place where I live? Why do you honor your sons above me by making yourselves fat with the best of every offering of my people Israel?' <sup>30</sup> For Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, 'I promised that your house, and the house of your ancestor, should walk before me forever.' But now Yahweh says, 'Far be it from me to do this, for I will honor those who honor me, but those who despise me will be lightly esteemed.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

The man of God continues to speak to Eli.

#### Why, then, do you scorn my sacrifices ... live?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not scorn my sacrifices ... where I live." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### the place where I live

"the place where my people bring offerings to me"

#### making yourselves fat with the best of every offering

The best part of the offering was to be burned up as an offering to Yahweh, but the priests were eating it.

#### the house of your ancestor

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who lived in the house. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 2:27](#). AT: "the family of your ancestor" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**should walk before me**

This is an idiom that means “live in obedience to me.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Far be it from me to do this**

“I will certainly not allow your family to serve me forever”

**those who despise me will be lightly esteemed**

The words “lightly esteemed” is an ironic euphemism for “greatly despised.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will lightly esteem those who despise me” or “I will greatly despise those who despise me” (See: [Irony](#) and [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [promise, promises, promised](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [forever](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:31-33****UDB:**

<sup>31</sup> Listen carefully! There will soon be a time when I will cause all the strong young men in your family to die. The result will be that no men in your family will live long enough to become old men. <sup>32</sup> You will be distressed and envious as you see the blessings that I will give to the other people in Israel. And I repeat that no men in your family will ever live long enough to become old men. <sup>33</sup> There is one of your descendants whom I will spare; I will not prevent him from serving me as a priest. But he will become blind from weeping; he will always be sad and grieving. But all your other descendants will die violently.

**ULB:**

<sup>31</sup> See, the days are coming when I will cut off your strength and the strength of your father's house, so that there will no longer be any old man in your house. <sup>32</sup> You will see distress in the place where I live. Although good will be given to Israel, there will no longer be any old man in your house. <sup>33</sup> Any one of you that I do not cut off from my altar, I will cause your eyes to fail, and I will cause grief for your life. All the men born in your family will die.

**translationNotes****See**

“Listen carefully to what I am about to say” or “What I am about to say is very important”

**I will cut off your strength and the strength of your father's house**

The words “cut off ... strength” are probably a euphemism for the death of strong, young men; the words “your father's house” are a metonymy for “your family.” AT: “I will kill you and all strong, young male descendants in your family” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**be any old man**

“be any old men” or “be any men who grow old”

**cause your eyes to fail**

“cause you to lose your eyesight” or “cause you to go blind”

**translationWords**

- [cut off](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:34-35****UDB:**

<sup>34</sup> And your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, will both die on the same day. And that will prove to you that all that I have said will come true.

<sup>35</sup> I have chosen another man to be my priest. He is one who will serve me faithfully: He will do everything I want. I will make sure that his descendants will be priests and will always serve me by helping the king whom I will choose.

**ULB:**

<sup>34</sup> This will be the sign for you that will come on your two sons, on Hophni and Phinehas: They will both die on the same day. <sup>35</sup> I will raise up for myself a faithful priest who will do what is in my heart and in my soul. I will build him a sure house; and he will walk before my anointed king forever.

**translationNotes****I will raise up ... a faithful priest**

This is an idiom. AT: "I will cause a man to become priest" (See: [Idiom](#))

**for myself**

This is an idiom. AT: "to serve me" (See: [Idiom](#))

**what is in my heart and in my soul**

"what I want him to do and what I tell him to do"

**I will build him a sure house**

Here "house" is an idiom used for "descendants." AT: "I will ensure that he always has a descendant who serves as high priest" (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- faithful, faithfulness
- priest, priests, priesthood
- heart, hearts
- soul, souls



- [house](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [king](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 2:36****UDB:**

<sup>36</sup> All of your descendants who remain alive will have to go to that priest and ask him to give them money and food, and they will each have to say, "Please allow me to help the other priests, in order that I may earn some money to buy some food."""

**ULB:**

<sup>36</sup> Everyone who is left in your house will come and bow down to him, asking for a piece of silver and a loaf of bread, and will say, "Please assign me to one of the priests' positions so I can eat a piece of bread."""

**translationNotes****him**

the faithful priest whom God will raise up

**so I can eat a piece of bread**

Here "piece of bread" is used for "food. "AT: "so I can have something to eat" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [bow, bow down](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bread](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 03 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God speaks to Samuel

God spoke at night to Samuel when he was a small boy, telling him that he would punish Eli's family. As Samuel grew up, God gave him many messages. People came from all over Israel to find out what God had to say.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metonymy

In order to show respect when talking to God, Samuel calls himself "your servant" when referring to himself. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Idioms

One characteristic of prophecy is the use of figures of speech. In this passage there are two idioms: "ears will shake," meaning "will shock everyone who hears" and "carry out," meaning "do." (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Idiom](#))

In order to be sure Samuel would tell him the whole truth, Eli used the standard formula for a curse: "may God do to you, and even more, if," meaning "God will punish severely if the person does what the curse says he will do." (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [curses](#), [cursing](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 03:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 3:1-4****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> While he was still a boy, Samuel was serving Yahweh while Eli supervised him. At that time there were very few messages that anyone received from Yahweh, and very few people saw visions that Yahweh gave them.

<sup>2</sup> By that time Eli's eyes were very weak; he was almost blind. One night he was sleeping in his room, <sup>3</sup> and Samuel was sleeping in the temple of Yahweh, where the sacred chest was kept. There was a lamp there that represented the presence of God, and it was still burning. <sup>4</sup> Just then Yahweh called, "Samuel! Samuel!" Samuel replied, "I am here!"

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The child Samuel served Yahweh under Eli. Yahweh's word was rare in those days; there was no frequent prophetic vision. <sup>2</sup> At that time, when Eli, whose eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well, was lying down in his own bed. <sup>3</sup> The lamp of God had not yet gone out, and Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh, where the ark of God was. <sup>4</sup> Yahweh called to Samuel, who said, "Here I am."

**translationNotes****Yahweh's word was rare**

"Yahweh did not often speak to people"

**The lamp of God**

This is the seven-candle lampstand in the holy place of the tabernacle that burned every day and through the night until it was empty.

**the temple of Yahweh**

The "temple" was actually a tent, but it was where the people worshiped, so it is best to translate the word as "temple" here. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:9](#).

**translationWords**

- Samuel
- serve, service
- Yahweh
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

- [vision](#)
- [God](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 3:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Then he got up and ran to Eli. He said to him, "I am here, because you called me!" But Eli replied, "No, I did not call you. Go back to your bed." So Samuel went and lay down again.

<sup>6</sup> Then Yahweh called again, "Samuel!" So Samuel got up again and went to Eli and said, "I am here, because you called me!" But Eli said, "No, my son, I did not call you. Go back and lie down."

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Samuel ran to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." Eli said, "I did not call you; lie down again." So Samuel went and lay down. <sup>6</sup> Yahweh called again, "Samuel." Again Samuel rose and went to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." Eli answered, "I did not call you, my son; lie down again."

### translationNotes

#### my son

Eli was not Samuel's true father. Eli speaks as if he were Samuel's father to show Samuel that he is not angry but that Samuel needs to listen to him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- [son, sons](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 3:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> At that time Samuel had not yet known what it was like for Yahweh to speak to him, because Yahweh had not previously revealed anything to him.

<sup>8</sup> After Samuel lay down again, Yahweh called him a third time. So again Samuel got up and went to Eli and said, “I am here, because you called me!”

Then Eli realized that it was Yahweh who was calling the boy.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Now Samuel did not yet have any experience of Yahweh, nor had any message from Yahweh ever been revealed to him. <sup>8</sup> Yahweh called Samuel again the third time. Again Samuel got up and went to Eli and said, “Here I am, for you called me.” Then Eli realized that Yahweh had called the boy.

### translationNotes

#### **nor had any message from Yahweh ever been revealed to him**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “nor had Yahweh ever revealed any message to him” or “and Yahweh had never revealed any message to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 3:9****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> So he said to Samuel, “Go and lie down again. If someone calls you again, say ‘Speak to me, Yahweh, because I am listening!’” So Samuel went and lay down again.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Then Eli said to Samuel, “Go and lie down again; if he calls you again, you must say, ‘Speak, Yahweh, for your servant is listening.’” So Samuel went and lay down in his own place once more.

**translationNotes****your servant is**

Eli tells Samuel to speak to Yahweh as if Samuel were another person so that Samuel would show respect to Yahweh. AT: “I am” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 3:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Then Yahweh came and stood and called as he had done the other times, “Samuel! Samuel!” Then Samuel said, “Speak to me, because I am listening!”

<sup>11</sup> Then Yahweh said to Samuel, “Listen carefully. I am about to do something here in Israel that will shock everyone who hears about it.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh came and stood; he called as at the other times, “Samuel, Samuel.” Then Samuel said, “Speak, for your servant is listening.” <sup>11</sup> Yahweh said to Samuel, “See, I am about to do something in Israel at which the ears of everyone who hears it will tingle.

**translationNotes****Yahweh came and stood**

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh actually appeared and stood before Samuel or 2) Yahweh made his presence known to Samuel.

**your servant is**

Samuel speaks to Yahweh as if Samuel were another person to show respect to Yahweh. AT: “I am” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**at which the ears of everyone who hears it will tingle**

Here “ears ... will tingle” is an idiom that means everyone will be shocked by what they hear. AT: “that will shock everyone who hears it” (See: [Idiom](#))

**tingle**

This means to feel like someone is gently poking with small, sharp objects, usually because of the cold or because someone has slapped that body part with their hand.

**translationWords**

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 3:12-14****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> When that happens, I will punish Eli and his family. I will do to them everything that I said that I would do. <sup>13</sup> His sons have shown great disrespect for me by the disgraceful things they have done, and Eli did not keep them back from doing it. So I told him that I would punish his family forever. <sup>14</sup> I solemnly promised to Eli's family, 'You will never be able to avoid the consequences for your sin, even if you give me sacrifices or offerings.'

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> On that day I will carry out against Eli everything I have said about his house, from beginning to end. <sup>13</sup> I have told him that I am about to judge his house once for all for the sin that he knew about, because his sons brought a curse upon themselves and he did not stop them. <sup>14</sup> Because of this I have sworn to the house of Eli that the sins of his house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering."

**translationNotes****from beginning to end**

This is a merism for completeness. AT: "absolutely everything" (See: [Merism](#))

**brought a curse upon themselves**

"did those things which Yahweh had said he would punish those who did them"

**the sins of his house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "there is no sacrifice or offering that anyone can offer that will atone for the sins of his house" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the sins of his house**

"the sins that the people in his family have committed"

**translationWords**

- [house](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [curse, cursed, curses, cursing](#)

- oath, swear, swear by
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- sacrifice, offering

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 3:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Samuel lay down again until morning. Then he got up and opened the doors of the building as usual. He was afraid to tell Eli about the vision that Yahweh had given him. <sup>16</sup> But Eli called him and said, “Samuel, my son!” Samuel answered, “I am here!”

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Samuel lay down until morning; then he opened the doors of the house of Yahweh. But Samuel was afraid to tell Eli about the vision. <sup>16</sup> Then Eli called Samuel and said, “Samuel, my son.” Samuel said, “Here I am.”

### translationNotes

#### the house of Yahweh

The “house” was actually a tent, but it would be best to translate “house” here.

#### my son

Eli was not Samuel’s true father. Eli speaks as if he were Samuel’s father to show Samuel that he is not angry but that Samuel needs to answer him. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [vision](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 3:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> Eli asked him, “What was it that Yahweh told you? Do not conceal it! I want God to punish you severely if you do not tell me everything that he said to you.”

<sup>18</sup> So Samuel told him everything. He did not refuse to tell him anything. Then Eli said, “He is Yahweh. I am willing for him to do what he thinks is best.”

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> He said, “What was the word he spoke to you? Please do not hide it from me. May God do so to you, and even more, if you hide anything from me of all the words that he spoke to you.” <sup>18</sup> Samuel told him everything; he hid nothing from him. Eli said, “It is Yahweh. Let him do what seems good to him.”

### translationNotes

#### the word he spoke

“the message Yahweh gave”

#### May God do so to you, and even more

This is an idiom to emphasize how serious Eli is. AT: “May God punish you the same way he said he will punish me, and even more” (See: [Idiom](#))

### translationWords

- [word, words](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 3:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> As Samuel grew up, Yahweh helped him; he made everything that Samuel predicted to come true. <sup>20</sup> So all the people of Israel, from the northern end of the country to the southern end, realized that Samuel was truly a prophet of Yahweh. <sup>21</sup> Yahweh continued to appear to Samuel in Shiloh and give messages to him.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Samuel grew up, and Yahweh was with him, and he let none of his prophetic words fall to the ground. <sup>20</sup> All Israel from Dan to Beersheba knew that Samuel was appointed to be a prophet of Yahweh. <sup>21</sup> Yahweh appeared again in Shiloh, for he revealed himself to Samuel in Shiloh by his word.

**translationNotes****he let none of his prophetic words fall to the ground**

Here messages that do not come true are spoken of as if they fell to the ground. This can be stated positively. AT: “he made all the things he prophesied happen” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Litotes](#))

**All Israel**

“All the people in Israel”

**from Dan to Beersheba**

This is a merism for “in every part of the land.” AT: “from one end of the land to the other” or “from Dan in the very north to Beersheba in the very south” (See: [Merism](#))

**Samuel was appointed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh had appointed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Dan](#)

- [Beersheba](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [Shiloh](#)
- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 04 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### The Ark of the Covenant in Philistine country

This chapter begins a new section on the Ark and the Philistines. It recounts two battles between Israel and the Philistines. In both battles, Israel was badly defeated and, in the second, the Ark was captured.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The Ark is captured

The Philistine army invaded Israel, and Israel's army went to fight them but was defeated. Israel decided that if they took the Ark into the next battle, God would cause them to win. When Eli's sons took the Ark into the next battle and the Philistines won the battle, they killed Eli's two sons and captured the Ark. When Eli heard the Ark was captured, he fell over, broke his neck, and died. Hearing this news, his daughter-in-law named her baby "the glory has departed."

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Question

The Philistines expressed their fear using a rhetorical question: "Who will protect us from the strength of this mighty God?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [1 Samuel 04:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 4:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Samuel told to all the people of Israel the messages that God gave him.

At that time the Israelite army went to fight against the army of the Philistine people. The Israelite army set up their tents at Ebenezer, and the Philistine army set up their tents at Aphek. <sup>2</sup> The Philistine army attacked the Israelite army, and as the battle continued, the Philistines defeated the Israelites and killed about four thousand of their soldiers.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> The word of Samuel came to all of Israel.

Now Israel went out to battle against the Philistines. They set up camp at Ebenezer, and the Philistines set up camp at Aphek. <sup>2</sup> The Philistines lined up for battle against Israel. When the battle spread, Israel was defeated by the Philistines, who killed about four thousand men on the field of battle.

### translationNotes

#### Ebenezer ... Aphek

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Israel was defeated by the Philistines, who killed

This can be translated in active form. AT: “the Philistines defeated the Israelites and killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### about four thousand men

Here the number four thousand is a round number. There may have been a few more than that or a few less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number. AT: “about 4,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### translationWords

- [word, words](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 4:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> When the remaining Israelite soldiers returned to their camp, the Israelite elders said, “Why did Yahweh allow the Philistine army to defeat us today? We should bring the sacred chest here from Shiloh, in order that Yahweh will go with us when we go to the battle again, so that that our enemies will not defeat us again!”

<sup>4</sup> So the soldiers sent some men to Shiloh, and those men brought back the sacred chest, the chest of Yahweh, who sat on a throne between the statues of winged creatures that were on top of the chest. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, went with them.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> When the people came into the camp, the elders of Israel said, “Why has Yahweh defeated us today before the Philistines? Let us bring the ark of the covenant of Yahweh here from Shiloh, that it may be here with us, that it might keep us safe from the hands of our enemies.” <sup>4</sup> So the people sent men to Shiloh; from there they carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh of hosts, who sits above the cherubim. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, were there with the ark of the covenant of God.

### translationNotes

#### the people

the soldiers who had been fighting the battle

#### Why has Yahweh defeated us today before the Philistines? Let us bring ... enemies

The elders truly did not know why Yahweh had defeated them, but they wrongly thought they knew how to make sure it did not happen again, by bringing the ark to be with them.

#### who sits above the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh’s footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. AT: “who sits on his throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Phinehas

This Phinehas is not the same as the grandson of Aaron in Exodus and Numbers.

**were there**

were in Shiloh

**translationWords**

- [elder](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Shiloh](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [Phinehas](#)
- [God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 4:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> When the Israelite people saw the men bringing the sacred chest into their camp, they were so happy that they shouted loudly. They shouted so loudly that the ground shook! <sup>6</sup> The Philistines asked, “What are the people in the Hebrew camp shouting about?” Someone told them that they were shouting because the sacred chest of Yahweh had been brought to them.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> When the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came into the camp, all of the people of Israel gave a great shout, and the earth resounded. <sup>6</sup> When the Philistines heard the noise of the shouting, they said, “What does this loud shouting in the camp of the Hebrews mean?” Then they realized that the ark of Yahweh had come into the camp.

### translationNotes

#### When the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came into the camp

“When the people carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh into the camp” Some languages may need to add understood information to make the meaning clear. AT: “The people, along with Hophni and Phinehas, picked up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh and carried it into the camp. When the people carried the ark into the camp” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### the ark of Yahweh had come into the camp

“the people had carried the ark of Yahweh into the camp”

### translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 4:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Then they became very afraid. They said, "Their God has come into their camp to help them! We are in big trouble now! Nothing like this has happened to us before!" <sup>8</sup> No one can save us now! This is the God who struck the people of Egypt with many plagues before the Israelites left Egypt and traveled through the desert. <sup>9</sup> You Philistine men, be courageous! Fight very hard! If you do not do that, they will defeat us, and then you will become their slaves, just as they have been our slaves previously!"

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> The Philistines were afraid; they said, "A god has come into the camp." They said, "Woe to us! Nothing like this has happened before!" <sup>8</sup> Woe to us! Who will protect us from the strength of these mighty gods? These are the gods who attacked the Egyptians with many different kinds of plagues in the wilderness. <sup>9</sup> Take courage, and be men, you Philistines, or you will become slaves to the Hebrews, as they have been slaves to you. Be men, and fight."

**translationNotes****they said ... They said**

"they said to themselves ... They said to each other" or "they said to each other ... They said to each other." The second clause clearly refers to what the Philistines said to each other. The first clause probably refers to what they thought, though it could also refer to what they said to each other. If possible, avoid stating who was spoken to.

**A god has come**

The Philistines worshiped many gods, so they probably believed that one of those gods, or one whom they did not worship, had come into the camp. Another possible meaning is that they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel: "Yahweh has come." Because 4:8 speaks of "gods," some translations read, "Gods have come," that is, "It is gods who have come." (See: [Pronouns](#))

**Who will protect us from the strength of these mighty gods?**

This rhetorical question is an expression of deep fear. It can be written as a statement. AT: "There is no one who can protect us from these mighty gods." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**these mighty gods ... the gods who attacked**

Because the word "god" (or "God") in 4:7 is singular, many translations read "this mighty god ... the god who attacked," referring to any one of many possible gods, or "this mighty God ... the God who attacked," using the proper name of the God of Israel. (See: [Pronouns](#))

**be men**

This is an idiom. AT: “be strong and fight” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [woe](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [plague](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 4:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> So the Philistine men fought very hard, and they defeated the Israelites. They killed thirty thousand Israelite soldiers, and the other Israelite soldiers fled and ran away to their tents. <sup>11</sup> The Philistines captured the sacred chest, and they killed Eli's two sons, Hophni and Phinehas.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> The Philistines fought, and Israel was defeated. Every man fled to his house, and the slaughter was very great; for thirty thousand foot soldiers from Israel fell. <sup>11</sup> The ark of God was taken, and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, died.

### translationNotes

#### Israel was defeated

This can be stated in active form. Also, "Israel" refers to the army of Israel. AT: "they defeated the army of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

#### The ark of God was taken

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The Philistines also took the ark of God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- [slaughter](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 4:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> On that same day, one man of the tribe descended from Benjamin ran from the place where the armies were fighting. He tore his clothes and threw soil on his head to show that he was very sad. He arrived at Shiloh late that afternoon. <sup>13</sup> Eli was waiting beside the road. He wanted to hear news about the battle, and he was also very anxious to know if anything bad had happened to God's sacred chest. When the messenger arrived and told people what had happened, everyone in the town started to cry loudly.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> A man of Benjamin ran from the battle line and came to Shiloh the same day, arriving with his clothes torn and earth on his head. <sup>13</sup> When he arrived, Eli was sitting on his seat by the road watching because his heart trembled with concern for the ark of God. When the man entered the city and told the news, the whole city cried out.

### translationNotes

#### clothes torn and earth on his head

This is a way to express deep mourning in Israelite culture.

#### his heart trembled with concern

This is an idiom which means he was very fearful or terribly concerned about something. (See: [Idiom](#))

#### the whole city

This is a metonym for "all the people in the city." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- Benjamin
- Shiloh
- earth, earthly
- heart, hearts
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 4:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Eli asked, “Why are they making all that noise?” The messenger ran over to Eli and told him the news.

<sup>15</sup> At that time, Eli was ninety-eight years old, and he was blind.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> When Eli heard the noise of the outcry, he said, “What is the meaning of this uproar?” The man quickly came and told Eli. <sup>15</sup> Now Eli was ninety-eight years old; his eyes did not focus, and he could not see.

**translationNotes****The man**

“The man of Benjamin”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 4:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> The messenger said to Eli, “I have just come from where the armies were fighting. I left there earlier today.” Eli asked, “What happened?”

<sup>17</sup> The man replied, “The Philistines defeated our army. They killed thousands of our soldiers, and the others ran away. The Philistines killed your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas. They also captured God’s sacred chest.”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> The man said to Eli, “I am the one who came from the battle line. I fled from the battle today.” Eli said, “How did it go, my son?” <sup>17</sup> The man who brought the news answered and said, “Israel fled from the Philistines. Also, there has been a great defeat among the people. Also, your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, are dead, and the ark of God has been taken.”

**translationNotes****my son**

Eli was not the other man’s true father. Eli speaks as if he were the man’s father to show the man that he is not angry but that the man needs to answer him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Israel fled from the Philistines**

This is a general statement about what happened. The rest of the man’s words give details.

**Also, there has been ... people. Also, your two sons**

“I will now tell you something worse ... I will now tell you something worse” or “Not only has there been ... people, but your two sons”

**the ark of God has been taken**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Philistines have taken the ark of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [son, sons](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 4:18

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Eli was very old, and he was very fat; and when he heard what had happened to the sacred chest, he fell backward from his seat beside the city gate. His neck was broken and he died. He had led the Israelite people for forty years.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> When he mentioned the ark of God, Eli fell over backward from his seat by the side of the gate. His neck was broken, and he died, because he was old and heavy. He had judged Israel for forty years.

### translationNotes

#### When he mentioned

“When the man of Benjamin mentioned”

#### mentioned

“spoke of”

#### His neck was broken

This can be stated in active form. AT: “His neck broke because he fell” or “He broke his neck when he fell” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [judge](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 4:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> The wife of Eli's son Phinehas was pregnant, and it was almost time for her to give birth to her baby. When she heard that God's sacred chest had been captured and that her husband and her father-in-law were dead, her labor pains suddenly began and were too much for her. She quickly gave birth to a boy, but she began to die. <sup>20</sup> As she was dying, the women who were helping her tried to encourage her by saying to her, "You have given birth to a son!" But she did not pay any attention to what they said.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> Now his daughter-in-law, Phinehas' wife, was pregnant and about to give birth. When she heard the news that the ark of God was captured and that her father-in-law and her husband were dead, she knelt down and gave birth, but her labor pains overwhelmed her. <sup>20</sup> About the time of her death the women attending to her said, "Do not be afraid, for you have given birth to a son." But she did not answer or take what they said to heart.

### translationNotes

#### his daughter-in-law

Eli's daughter-in-law

#### the ark of God was captured

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the Philistines had captured the ark of God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### take what they said to heart

"pay any attention to what they said" or "allow herself to feel better"

### translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [labor pains, in labor](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 4:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> She named the boy Ichabod, which means “no glory,” because she said, “God’s glory has departed from Israel.” She said that because God’s sacred chest had been captured and because her husband and her father-in-law had died. <sup>22</sup> She said, “God’s glory has left Israel, because God’s sacred chest has been captured!” And then she died.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> She named the child Ichabod, saying, “The glory has gone away from Israel!” for the ark of God had been captured, and because of her father-in-law and her husband. <sup>22</sup> She said, “The glory has gone away from Israel, because the ark of God has been captured.”

**translationNotes****Ichabod**

The name is actually a phrase that means “no glory.” The name of a person sometimes reveals information about the person, place, or thing it refers to. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**for the ark of God had been captured ... the ark of God has been captured**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “for the Philistines had captured the ark of God ... because the Philistines have captured the ark of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [name, names, named](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 05 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The story of the Ark of the Covenant in Philistia continues.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The Ark in the Philistine Cities

The Philistines took the Ark of God to Ashdod and put it in their idol temple, but their idol fell down in front of the Ark and the people got sick with bubonic plague. They took it to Gath next, and the people of Gath began dying of the plague. When they took the Ark to Ekron, the people of Ekron were afraid of it too and did not want it there. Finally they decided to send it back to Israel. (See: [temple](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idioms

There are two slightly different idioms used in the same way: the “hand was heavy” and the “hand was hard.” Both idioms mean “was severely punished.” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 05:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 5:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> After the army of the Philistia people group captured God's sacred chest in the town of Ebenezer, they took it to Ashdod, one of their largest cities. <sup>2</sup> They carried it into the temple of their god Dagon and placed it alongside a statue of Dagon. <sup>3</sup> But early the next morning, when the people of Ashdod went to see it, they saw that the statue had fallen on its face in front of Yahweh's sacred chest! So they set the statue up in its place again.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Now the Philistines had captured the ark of God, and they brought it from Ebenezer to Ashdod. <sup>2</sup> The Philistines took the ark of God, brought it into the house of Dagon, and set it up beside Dagon. <sup>3</sup> When the people of Ashdod got up early the next day, behold, Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. So they took Dagon and set him up in his place again.

### translationNotes

#### Now

This word marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a word or phrase that does the same, you could use it here.

#### ark of God

See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 3:3](#). This is the same as the "ark of the covenant of God" in [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#).

#### house of Dagon

This refers to the temple of Dagon, the god of the Philistines.

#### behold, Dagon

"they were very surprised to see that Dagon"

#### Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground

The reader should understand that Yahweh had caused the statue to fall on its face during the night. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [house](#)
- [face](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 5:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> But the following morning, they saw that it had fallen down in front of the sacred chest again. But this time, it was as if someone had cut the statue's head and hands off; they were lying in the doorway. Only its body remained in one piece. <sup>5</sup> That is the reason that ever since that time, the priests of Dagon and everyone else who enters the temple of Dagon in Ashdod do not step on the doorsill where the hands and head of Dagon had fallen.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> But when they got up early the next morning, behold, Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. The head of Dagon and both of his hands were lying cut off in the doorway. Only the trunk of Dagon remained. <sup>5</sup> This is why, even today, the priests of Dagon and anyone who comes into Dagon's house does not step on the doorway of Dagon in Ashdod.

**translationNotes****Dagon had fallen**

The reader should understand that Yahweh had caused Dagon to fall.

**The head of Dagon and both of his hands were lying cut off**

It was as if Yahweh were a soldier who had defeated his enemy and cut off the enemy's head and hands.

**This is why, even today**

The writer is about to give some background information separate from the main story. (See: [Background Information](#))

**even today**

Here "today" means up to the day when the author was writing this book.

**translationWords**

- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 5:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then Yahweh made the people of Ashdod suffer very much with tumors. Many sickened and died, both in the city and in the surrounding region. <sup>7</sup> The people of Ashdod realized why this was happening, and they cried out, “The God of the Israelites is punishing us and our god Dagon. So we cannot allow the sacred chest of the God of the Israelites to remain here!”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh’s hand was heavy upon the people of Ashdod. He destroyed them and afflicted them with tumors, both Ashdod and its territories. <sup>7</sup> When the men of Ashdod realized what was happening, they said, “The ark of the God of Israel must not stay with us, because his hand is hard against us and against Dagon our god.”

**translationNotes****Yahweh’s hand was heavy upon**

This is an idiom. “Yahweh severely judged” (See: [Idiom](#))

**tumors**

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids.

**both Ashdod and its territories**

The name of the town is a metonym for the people living in the town. “both the people of Ashdod and the people in the land surrounding Ashdod” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**realized**

“understood”

**ark of the God of Israel**

See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 3:3](#). This is the same as the “ark of the covenant of God” in [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#).

### translationWords

- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- afflict, affliction
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- god, gods, goddess

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 5 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 5:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> They summoned the five kings of the Philistia people group and asked them, “What should we do with the sacred chest of the God of the Israelites?”

The kings replied, “Take the sacred chest to the city of Gath.” So they moved it to Gath. <sup>9</sup> But after they took it to Gath, Yahweh powerfully struck the people of that city also, with the result that many men, including young men and old men, got tumors on their skins. Then the people became very afraid.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> So they sent for and gathered together all of the rulers of the Philistines; they said to them, “What should we do with the ark of the God of Israel?” They answered, “Let the ark of the God of Israel be brought around to Gath.” So they carried the ark of the God of Israel there. <sup>9</sup> But after they brought it around, Yahweh’s hand was against the city, causing a very great confusion. He afflicted the men of the city, both small and great; and tumors broke out on them.

### translationNotes

#### Yahweh’s hand was against

This is an idiom. AT: “Yahweh punished” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### both small and great

Possible meanings are 1) this is a merism that refers to age. AT: “men of all ages” or 2) this is a merism that refers social class. AT: “from the poorest and weakest men to the richest and most powerful men” (See: [Merism](#))

#### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#)

### translationWords

- [ruler, rule](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Gath](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 5 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 5:10****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> So they took the sacred chest to the city of Ekron.

But when the men carried the sacred chest into Ekron, the people there cried out, “Why are you bringing the sacred chest of the God of the Israelites into our city? By doing that you will cause us and the rest of our people to die!”

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> So they sent the ark of God to Ekron. But as soon as the ark of God came into Ekron, the Ekronites cried out, saying, “They have brought to us the ark of the God of Israel to kill us and our people.”

**translationNotes****cried out**

Why they cried out can be stated clearly. AT: “cried out in fear” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [Ekron](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 5 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 5:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> So the people of Ekron also summoned the Philistine kings. When they came, the people said to them, “Take this sacred chest of the god of the Israelites back to its own place! If you do not do that quickly, we will all die!” The people were terrified because they knew that God was starting to punish them severely. <sup>12</sup> Some of the people in Ekron had already died, and the rest of the people were suffering because of tumors on their skins. So they all cried out to their gods to help them.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> So they sent for and gathered together all of the rulers of the Philistines; they said to them, “Send away the ark of the God of Israel, and let it return to its own place, so that it does not kill us and our people.” For there was a deathly panic throughout the city; the hand of God was very heavy there. <sup>12</sup> The men who did not die were afflicted with the tumors, and the cry of the city went up to the heavens.

### translationNotes

#### the ark of the God of Israel

See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 3:3](#). This is the same as the “ark of the covenant of God” in [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#).

#### the God of Israel

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, “the god of Israel.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:7](#).

#### there was a deathly panic throughout the city

“people all over the city were afraid that they were going to die”

#### the hand of God was very heavy there

The hand is a metonym for God punishing the people. “Yahweh was punishing the people there very severely” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### The men who did not die

This implies that many men actually died. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**tumors**

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

**the cry of the city went up to the heavens**

The word “city” is a metonym for the people of the city. Possible meanings are 1) the words “went up to the heavens” is an idiom for “was very great.” AT: “the people of the city cried out very loudly” or 2) the words “the heavens” is a metonym for the people’s gods. AT: “the people of the city cried out to their gods.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 5 translationQuestions](#)

## **1 Samuel 06 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter ends the story of the Ark of the Covenant among the Philistines.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The Philistines send the Ark back to Israel**

The Philistine leaders asked their priests what they should do with the Ark. The priests said to send it off with an offering. The Philistines put the Ark on a cart drawn by cows and let them go wherever they wanted to go. The cows went straight toward Israel. When some people peeked into the Ark, God killed them. Because of this, the people sent the Ark to Kiriath Jearim.

### **Links:**

- [1 Samuel 06:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 6:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> The people of Philistia kept the God's sacred chest in their area for seven months. <sup>2</sup> Then they summoned their priests and their diviners. They asked them, "What should we do with the sacred chest of Yahweh? Tell us how we should send it back to its own land."

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Now the ark of Yahweh was in the country of the Philistines for seven months. <sup>2</sup> Then the Philistine people called for the priests and the diviners; they said to them, "What should we do with the ark of Yahweh? Tell us how we should send it back to its own country."

**translationNotes****the priests and the diviners**

These were pagan priests and diviners who worshiped Dagon.

**Tell us how we should send it**

The Philistines wanted to know how to get rid of the ark without angering Yahweh any further.

**translationWords**

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 6:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Those men replied, “Send with it an offering to show Yahweh that you know that you are guilty for capturing the chest, in order that the plague will stop. If you do that, and then if you are healed, you will know that he is the one who caused the plague to strike you. And you will know why you have been suffering until now.”

<sup>4</sup> The people of Philistia asked, “What kind of offering should we send?”

The men replied, “Make five gold models of the tumors on your skin, and five gold models of rats. Make five of each because that will be the same number as the number of your kings, and because the plague has struck both you people and your five kings.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> The priests and diviners said, “If you send back the ark of the God of Israel, do not send it without a gift; by all means send him a guilt offering. Then you will be healed, and you will know why his hand has not been lifted off of you until now.” <sup>4</sup> Then they said, “What should the guilt offering be that we are returning to him?” They replied, “Five golden tumors and five golden mice, five being the number that is the same as the number of the rulers of the Philistines. For the same plague afflicted you and your rulers.”

**translationNotes****the God of Israel**

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, “the god of Israel.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:7](#).

**by all means send him a guilt offering**

The words “by all means” are a forceful way of saying something. AT: “you must send a guilt offering” (See: [Idiom](#))

**you will be healed**

“you will no longer be ill”

**you**

The pronoun “you” is plural, referring to all of the Philistines. (See: [Forms of You](#))



**why his hand has not been lifted off of you**

Here “hand” is a metonym used to represent God’s power to afflict or discipline. AT: “why he has not relieved your suffering” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**tumors**

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

**mice**

“more than one mouse”

**translationWords**

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)
- [guilt offering](#)
- [heal, cure](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [gold](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [plague](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 6:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Make models that represent the rats and the tumors that are ruining your land. Make them in order to honor the god of the Israelite people. If you do that, perhaps Yahweh will stop punishing you, your gods, and your land. <sup>6</sup> Do not be stubborn as Pharaoh and the Egyptians were. Remember that Yahweh finally made them suffer more than they could bear, and that they finally allowed the Israelites to leave their land.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> So you must make models of your tumors, and models of your mice that ravage the land, and give glory to the God of Israel. Perhaps he will lift his hand from you, from your gods, and from your land. <sup>6</sup> Why should you harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their hearts? That was when the God of Israel dealt severely with them; did not the Egyptians send away the people, and they left?

**translationNotes****models**

A model is something that looks like a real thing.

**tumors**

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

**that ravage**

“that are destroying”

**the God of Israel**

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, “the god of Israel.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:7](#).

**lift his hand from you, from your gods, and from your land**

Here “hand” is a metonym used to represent God’s power to afflict or discipline. AT: “stop punishing you, your gods and your land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Why should you harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their hearts?**

The priests and diviners use a rhetorical question to urge the Philistines to think very seriously about what will happen if they refuse to obey God. This can be translated as a warning. AT: “Do not be stubborn like the Egyptians and Pharaoh were!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**harden your hearts**

This is an idiom that means to be stubborn or unwilling to obey God. AT: “refuse to obey God” (See: [Idiom](#))

**did not the Egyptians send away the people, and they left?**

This is another rhetorical question used to remind the Philistines how the Egyptians finally sent the Israelites out of Egypt so that God would stop afflicting the Egyptians. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “remember that the Egyptians sent the Israelites out of Egypt.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [glory, glorious](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 6:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> So you must build a new cart. Then get two cows that have very recently given birth to calves. They must be cows that have never been hitched to a cart. Hitch those cows to the new cart, and take the calves away from their mothers. <sup>8</sup> Put their god's sacred chest on the cart. Also put in the cart the five gold models of the tumors on your skin and the five gold models of rats. Put them in a small box alongside the sacred chest. They will be an offering to show that you know that you deserved to be punished for capturing the sacred chest. Then send the cows down the road, pulling the cart. <sup>9</sup> Watch the cart as the cows pull it. If they pull it to the town of Bethshemesh in Israel, we will know that it was their god who brought this plague on us. But if they do not take it there, we will know that it was not the god of the Israelites who has punished us. We will know that it happened by chance."

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Now then, prepare a new cart with two nursing cows that have never been yoked. Tie the cows to the cart, but take their calves home, away from them. <sup>8</sup> Then take the ark of Yahweh and place it in the cart. Put the golden figures that you are returning to him as a guilt offering into a box to one side of it. Then send it off and let it go its own way. <sup>9</sup> Then watch; if it goes up on the way to its own land to Beth Shemesh, then it is Yahweh who has executed this great disaster. But if not, then we will know that it is not his hand that afflicted us; instead, we will know that it happened to us by chance."

**translationNotes****two nursing cows**

"two cows that have calves that are still drinking milk"

**Then send it off and let it go its own way**

Normally the two cows would head back home to their calves.

**if it goes ... to Beth Shemesh, then it is Yahweh**

It is unlikely that the cows would choose to wander to Beth Shemesh when their calves are back in the Philistine area.

**translationWords**

- cow, calf, bull, cattle

- [yoke](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 6:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> So the people did what the priests and diviners told them to do. They made a cart, and hitched two cows to it. They took the calves from their mothers. <sup>11</sup> They put in the cart Yahweh's sacred chest and the box with the models of the gold rats and the tumors. <sup>12</sup> Then the cows started walking, and they went straight toward Bethshemesh. They stayed on the road, and were mooing all the time. They did not turn to the left or to the right. The five kings of the region of Philistia followed the cows until they reached the edge of Bethshemesh.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> The men did as they were told; they took two nursing cows, tied them to the cart, and confined their calves at home. <sup>11</sup> They put the ark of Yahweh on the cart, together with a box containing the golden mice and the castings of their tumors. <sup>12</sup> The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh. They went along one highway, lowing as they went, and they did not turn aside either to the right or to the left. The rulers of the Philistines followed after them to the border of Beth Shemesh.

**translationNotes****two nursing cows**

“two cows that have calves that are still drinking milk” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 6:7](#).

**mice**

Translated this as in [1 Samuel 6:4](#).

**castings of their tumors**

“models of their tumors”

**tumors**

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

**The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh**

Nursing cows would normally return to their calves, but these cows went to Beth Shemesh.

**lowing as they went**

Lowing is the noise cows make with their voices.

**they did not turn aside either to the right or to the left**

“they did not wander off of the highway.” This can be stated positively. AT: “they stayed on the highway” or “they went straight ahead”

**translationWords**

- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 6:13

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> At that time, the people of Bethshemesh were harvesting wheat in the valley outside the city. When the cows came along the road, they looked up and saw the sacred chest. They were extremely happy to see it.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> Now the people of Beth Shemesh were harvesting their wheat in the valley. When they lifted up their eyes and saw the ark, they rejoiced.

### translationNotes

#### Now

The writer is introducing a new part of the story. If your language has a way of marking the beginning of a new part of the story, you could use it here.

#### people of Beth Shemesh

These were Israelites.

#### lifted up their eyes

This is an idiom. AT: “looked up” (See: [Idiom](#))

### translationWords

- [harvest](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [rejoice](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 6:14****UDB:**

<sup>14-15</sup> The cows pulled the cart into the field of a man named Joshua, and they stopped alongside a large rock. Several men from the tribe of Levi lifted from the cart the sacred chest and the box containing the gold models of the rats and the tumors, and put them all on the large rock. Then the people smashed the cart and kindled a fire with the wood from which the cart had been made. They slaughtered the cows and burned their bodies on the fire to be an offering for Yahweh that would be completely burned. That day the people of Bethshemesh offered to Yahweh many sacrifices that were completely burned, and other sacrifices.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> The cart came into the field of Joshua from the town of Beth Shemesh and stopped there. A great stone was there, and they split the wood from the cart, and offered the cows as a burnt offering to Yahweh. <sup>15</sup> The Levites took down the ark of Yahweh and the box that was with it, where the golden figures were, and put them on the great stone. The men of Beth Shemesh offered burnt offerings and made sacrifices the same day to Yahweh.

**translationNotes****A great stone was there**

The people used this stone as an altar when they offered the cows as sacrifices.

**The Levites took down the ark of Yahweh**

This actually happened before they chopped the cart into firewood to use in offering the cows to Yahweh.

**The Levites took down the ark**

According to the law of Moses, only the Levites were permitted to handle the ark.

**the box that was with it, where the golden figures were**

“the box containing the gold models of the rats and the tumors”

**translationWords**

- burnt offering, offering by fire
- Yahweh

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 6:16

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> The five kings from the region of Philistia watched all this, and then they returned to Ekron, that same day.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> When the five rulers of the Philistines saw this, they returned that day to Ekron.

### translationNotes

#### the five rulers of the Philistines

“the five Philistine kings”

### translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [Ekron](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 6:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> The five gold models of tumors that they sent to be an offering to Yahweh to show that they knew that they deserved to be punished were gifts from those five kings who were rulers of the cities of Ashdod, Gaza, Ashkelon, Gath, and Ekron. <sup>18</sup> The models of the five gold rats were gifts from the people of those five cities and the surrounding towns. The large rock at Bethshemesh, on which the men of the tribe of Levi set the sacred chest, is still there in the field that belonged to Joshua. When people see it, they remember what happened there.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> These are the golden tumors which the Philistines returned for a guilt offering to Yahweh—one for Ashdod, one for Gaza, one for Ashkelon, one for Gath, and one for Ekron. <sup>18</sup> The golden mice were the same in number as the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five rulers, both fortified cities and country villages. The great stone, beside which they set down the ark of Yahweh, remains a witness to this day in the field of Joshua the Bethshemite.

### translationNotes

#### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

#### mice

Translated this as in [1 Samuel 6:4](#).

#### fortified cities

These are cities with high walls around them to protect the people inside from attack by their enemies.

#### The great stone ... remains a witness

The stone is referred to as if it is a person who can see. AT: “The great stone ... is still there, and people remember what happened on it” (See: [Personification](#))

#### Joshua

man’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **the Bethshemite**

This is what a person from Beth Shemesh is called. AT: “from Beth Shemesh” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **to this day**

to the time at which the writer wrote the book

### **translationWords**

- [guilt offering](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [Gaza](#)
- [Ashkelon](#)
- [Gath](#)
- [Ekron](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 6:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> But some men from Bethshemesh looked into Yahweh's sacred chest, and because of that, Yahweh caused 50,070 of them to die. Then the people mourned very much because Yahweh punished those men like that. <sup>20</sup> They said, "Who can stand before Yahweh, our holy God? Where can we send away this sacred chest?"

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> Yahweh attacked some of the men of Beth Shemesh because they had looked into the ark of Yahweh. He killed 50,070 men. The people mourned, because Yahweh had given the people a great blow. <sup>[1]</sup>, some later copies and modern versions have, <sup>20</sup> The men of Beth Shemesh said, "Who is able to stand before Yahweh, this holy God? To whom will the ark go up from us?"

---

6:19 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *50,070 men seventy men*.

### translationNotes

#### they had looked into the ark

The ark was so holy that no one was permitted to look inside it. Only the priests were allowed to even see the ark.

#### 50,070 men

"fifty thousand and seventy men" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Who is able to stand before Yahweh, this holy God?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question that expresses the people's fear of Yahweh. AT: "There is no one who can resist Yahweh because he is so holy!" or 2) this is a question asking for information. The phrase "stand before Yahweh" may refer to priests who serve Yahweh. It is implied that the people were looking for a priest whom Yahweh would permit to handle the ark. AT: "Is there a priest among us who serves this holy God, Yahweh, and is able to handle this ark?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### To whom will the ark go up from us?

This is a question asking for information. It is implied that the people want Yahweh and the ark to go somewhere else so he will not punish them again. AT: "Where can we send this ark so that Yahweh will not punish us again?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 6:21

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> They sent messengers to the people of the city of Kiriath Jearim to tell them, “The people of Philistia have returned Yahweh’s sacred chest to us! Come here and take it to your city!”

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> They sent messengers to the inhabitants of Kiriath Jearim, saying, “The Philistines have brought back the ark of Yahweh; come down and take it back with you.”

### translationNotes

#### Kiriath Jearim

This was a town in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [messenger](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 6 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 07 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter completes the section on Samuel leading Israel.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Israel begins to worship Yahweh again

Samuel told the people to get rid of all their idols and worship Yahweh alone. The people were obedient. When the Philistines heard the Israelites were all gathered together, the Philistines attacked, but God defeated them. There was a time of peace during which Samuel settled disputes between the people as the judges had done before.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idioms

Whenever Samuel spoke to a group of people, he used many idioms: “to turn to” means “to worship”; “with your whole heart” means “completely”; and “rescue from the hand” means “rescued from the power.” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 07:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 7:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> When the men of Kiriath Jearim received the message, they came to Bethshemesh and took the sacred chest of Yahweh. They took it to the house of Abinadab, which was on a hillside. They set apart Abinadab's son Eleazar to take care of the chest.

<sup>2</sup> The sacred chest stayed in Kiriath Jearim for a long time. It stayed there for twenty years. During that time all the people of Israel mourned because it seemed that Yahweh had abandoned them, and they wanted to turn to him for help again.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> The men of Kiriath Jearim came, took the ark of Yahweh, and brought it into the house of Abinadab on the hill. They set apart his son Eleazar to keep the ark of Yahweh. <sup>2</sup> From the day the ark remained in Kiriath Jearim, a long time passed, twenty years. All the house of Israel lamented and wished to turn to Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### Kiriath Jearim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Abinadab ... Eleazar

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### twenty years

“20 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

### translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 7:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Then Samuel said to all the Israelite people, “If you truly want to honor Yahweh again, you must get rid of your statues of the goddess Ashtoreth and the idols the Philistine people.” <sup>4</sup> So the Israelites got rid of all their statues of the gods Baal and Ashtoreth, and they began to worship only Yahweh.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Samuel said to the entire house of Israel, “If you return to Yahweh with your whole heart, remove the foreign gods and the Ashtoreths from among you, turn your hearts to Yahweh, and worship him only, then he will rescue you from the hand of the Philistines.” <sup>4</sup> Then the people of Israel removed the Baals and the Ashtoreths, and worshiped Yahweh only.

### translationNotes

#### the entire house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the people who live in the house and their descendants. AT: “all of the descendants of Israel” or “all of the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### return to Yahweh with your whole heart

Here “with your whole heart” is an idiom that means to be completely devoted to something. AT: “become completely devoted to worshiping and obeying Yahweh only” (See: [Idiom](#))

### translationWords

- Samuel
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth](#)
- [worship](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Baal](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)

- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 7:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Then Samuel told them, “All you Israelite people must gather with me at Mizpah. Then I will pray to Yahweh for you.” <sup>6</sup> So they gathered at Mizpah, where Samuel acted as leader for the people of Israel. They had a big ceremony there. They drew water from a well, and poured the water on the ground while Yahweh watched. To show that they were sorry for having worshiped idols, they did not eat any food on that day, and they confessed that they had sinned against Yahweh.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Then Samuel said, “Bring together all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray to Yahweh for you.” <sup>6</sup> They gathered at Mizpah, drew water and poured it out before Yahweh. They fasted that day and said, “We have sinned against Yahweh.” It was there that Samuel decided disputes for the people of Israel and led the people.

### translationNotes

#### all Israel

“all the people of Israel” or “all the Israelites”

#### drew water and poured it out before Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) the people denied themselves water as part of fasting or 2) they got water out of a stream or well and poured it on the ground as an outward sign of being sorry for their sin. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [fast](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 7:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> When the kings of the region of Philistia heard that the Israelite people had gathered at Mizpah, they led their armies there to attack the Israelites. When the Israelites found out that the Philistine army was approaching them, they became very afraid. <sup>8</sup> They told Samuel, “Pray to Yahweh to rescue us from the Philistine army, and do not stop pleading with him!”

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Now when the Philistines heard the people of Israel had gathered at Mizpah, the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel. When the people of Israel heard of it, they were afraid of the Philistines. <sup>8</sup> Then the people of Israel said to Samuel, “Do not stop calling out to Yahweh our God for us, so he will save us from the hand of the Philistines.”

### translationNotes

#### the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel

It can be stated plainly that it was the army and not the rulers by themselves who attacked Israel. AT: “the Philistine rulers led their army and attacked Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### save us from the hand of the Philistines

The “hand” is a metonym for the power of the person. AT: “save us from the Philistine army” or “keep the Philistine army from harming us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [God](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 7:9

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> So Samuel took a very young lamb and killed it and offered it to Yahweh to be a sacrifice that was completely burned on the altar. Then he prayed and pleaded that Yahweh would help the Israelites, and Yahweh did help them.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> Samuel took a nursing lamb and offered it as a whole burnt offering to Yahweh. Then Samuel cried out to Yahweh for Israel, and Yahweh answered him.

### translationNotes

#### nursing lamb

a lamb that is still drinking its mother's milk

#### cried out

“cried out for help”

#### Yahweh answered him

“Yahweh did what Samuel asked him to do”

### translationWords

- [Samuel](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [cry, cry out](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 7:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> While Samuel was burning the offering, the Philistine army came near to attack the Israelites. But Yahweh caused it to thunder very loudly. The men of the Philistine army became very frightened, and then they panicked. So the Israelites were able to drive them back completely. <sup>11</sup> The Israelite men ran out of Mizpah and chased the Philistine soldiers almost to the town of Beth Kar. They killed many Philistine soldiers who were trying to run away.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> As Samuel was offering up the burnt offering, the Philistines approached to attack Israel. But Yahweh thundered with a loud sound that day against the Philistines and threw them into confusion, and they were routed before Israel. <sup>11</sup> The men of Israel went from Mizpah, and they pursued the Philistines and killed them as far as below Beth Kar.

**translationNotes****As Samuel ... Beth Kar**

This explains what the writer means by “Yahweh answered him” in (1 Samuel 7:9).

**threw them into confusion**

The word “confusion” here is used as a casual way of saying the Philistines were unable to think clearly. AT: “made them unable to think clearly” (See: [Idiom](#))

**they were routed before Israel**

This can be translated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “Yahweh routed them before Israel” or 2) “Israel routed them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**routed**

To rout people is to defeat them before they can cause any harm.

**Beth Kar**

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [Mizpah](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 7:12

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> After that happened, Samuel took a large stone and set it up between the towns of Mizpah and Shen. He named the stone “Ebenezer,” which means “stone of help,” because he said “Yahweh has helped us until the present time.”

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Then Samuel took a stone and set it between Mizpah and Shen. He named it Ebenezer, saying, “Thus far Yahweh has helped us.”

### translationNotes

#### took a stone and set it

The Israelites and other peoples in that land would place a large stone where important events had happened as a reminder of God’s help.

#### Mizpah ... Shen

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 7:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> So the Philistine people were defeated, and for a long time they did not enter the Israelite land to attack them again. During the time that Samuel was alive, Yahweh powerfully protected the Israelite people from being attacked by the Philistine army.

<sup>14</sup> The Israelite army was able to capture again the Israelite towns between Ekron and Gath that the Philistine army had captured before. The Israelites were also able to take again the other areas around those cities that the Philistine army had taken from the Israelites previously. And there was peace between the Israelites and the Amor people group.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> So the Philistines were subdued and they did not enter the border of Israel. The hand of Yahweh was against the Philistines all the days of Samuel. <sup>14</sup> The towns that the Philistines had taken from Israel were restored to Israel, from Ekron to Gath; Israel brought back their territory from the Philistines. Then there was peace between Israel and the Amorites.

### translationNotes

#### So the Philistines were subdued

The writer has just finished telling how the Philistines were subdued. If your language has a way of marking the end of a description, you could use it here.

#### the Philistines were subdued

This can be translated in active form. AT: “Yahweh subdued the Philistines” or “Yahweh kept the Philistines from causing harm” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### they did not enter the border of Israel

The Philistines did not enter Israel’s border to attack them.

#### The hand of Yahweh was against the Philistines

The word “hand” is a metonym for power. AT: “Yahweh used his power against the Philistines” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The towns ... from Israel were restored to Israel**

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) Here “Israel” refers to the “land” of Israel. “Yahweh restored to the land of Israel the towns ... from Israel” or 2) “Israel” is a metonym for the people who live there. AT: “the people of Israel were able to reclaim the towns ... from Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#)
- [Ekron](#)
- [Gath](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [Amorite](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 7:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Samuel continued to be the leader of the Israelite people until he died. <sup>16</sup> Every year he traveled among the cities of Bethel and Gilgal and Mizpah. In those cities he listened to disputes between people and made decisions about them. <sup>17</sup> After he made decisions in each of those cities, he returned to his home at Ramah, and he would listen to people's disputes there, also, and make decisions about them. He built an altar at Ramah to offer sacrifices to Yahweh.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life. <sup>16</sup> Each year he went on a circuit to Bethel, to Gilgal, and to Mizpah. He decided disputes for Israel in all these places. <sup>17</sup> Then he would return to Ramah, because his house was there; and there also he decided disputes for Israel. He also built an altar there to Yahweh.

### translationNotes

#### went on a circuit

traveled from place to place in a rough circle

#### He decided disputes

Disputes are arguments or disagreements between two or more people.

### translationWords

- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Bethel
- Gilgal
- Mizpah
- Ramah
- altar, altars

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 7 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 08 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### Saul and Samuel

The section including chapters 8-16 begins a new part of the story. The people wanted a king, and God chose Saul, the man the people wanted, to be their king. He was not the king Yahweh wanted.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The people want a king

When Samuel was old, he appointed his sons to be judges. They were corrupt and took bribes, so the people came and asked Samuel to appoint a king for them. Samuel asked God, who gave them a king but warned them what a king would be like. Despite Samuel's warning that a king would oppress them, the people still wanted a king. This was sinful because they were rejecting God as their king. (See: [appoint](#), [appoints](#), [appointed](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)).

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 08:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 8:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> When Samuel became old, he appointed his two sons, Joel and Abijah, to lead the people of Israel. <sup>2</sup> They judged people's disputes in the town of Beersheba. <sup>3</sup> But they were not like their father. They wanted only to get a lot of money. They accepted bribes, and they did not make honest decisions about people's disputes.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> When Samuel was old, he made his sons judges over Israel. <sup>2</sup> The name of his firstborn was Joel, and the name of his second son was Abijah. They were judges in Beersheba. <sup>3</sup> His sons did not walk in his ways, but chased after dishonest gain. They took bribes and perverted justice.

### translationNotes

#### chased after dishonest gain

The writer speaks of money that people would give Samuel's sons as if it were a person or animal running away from Samuel's sons, and he speaks of Samuel's sons as if they were physically chasing that person or animal. AT: "they worked hard to gain money by being dishonest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### perverted justice

"judged in favor of those who did evil"

### translationWords

- Samuel
- judge
- Israel, Israelites
- name, names, named
- firstborn
- Joel
- Abijah
- Beersheba
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- bribe
- just, justice, justly



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 8:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> Finally, the Israelite leaders met in the town of Ramah to discuss the matter with Samuel. <sup>5</sup> They said to him, “Listen! You are now old, and your sons are not like you. Appoint a king to rule over us, like the kings that other countries have!”

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> Then all the elders of Israel gathered together and came to Samuel at Ramah. <sup>5</sup> They said to him, “Look, you are old, and your sons do not walk in your ways. Appoint for us a king to judge us like all the nations.”

### translationNotes

#### do not walk in your ways

The way a person lives is spoken of as walking on a path. AT: “do not do the things you do” or “do not do what is just the way you do” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Appoint for us a king to judge us like all the nations

Possible meanings are 1) “Appoint for us a king like the kings of all the nations so that he can judge us” or 2) “Appoint for us a king who will judge us the way the kings of the nations judge them”

#### Appoint for us a king to judge us

The leaders wrongly believed that a king, and his sons after him, would rule justly.

### translationWords

- [elder](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [king](#)
- [nation](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 8:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Samuel was very unhappy with them for requesting that, so he prayed to Yahweh about it. <sup>7</sup> Yahweh replied, "Do what they have requested you to do. But do not think that you are the one whom they are really rejecting. I have been their king, and I am the one they are really rejecting.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> But it displeased Samuel when they said, "Give us a king to judge us." So Samuel prayed to Yahweh. <sup>7</sup> Yahweh said to Samuel, "Obey the voice of the people in everything they say to you; for they have not rejected you, but they have rejected me from being king over them.

**translationNotes****But it displeased Samuel ... Give us a king to judge us**

Samuel was unhappy that the people did not just want him to remove his corrupt sons and to appoint honest judges, but they wanted a king to rule over them like other countries had.

**Obey the voice of the people**

Here "the voice" is a metonym for the will or the desire of the people. AT: "Do what the people say" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**but they have rejected me**

Yahweh knew that the people were not just rejecting corrupt judges, but they were rejecting Yahweh as their king.

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [reject](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 8:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Ever since I brought them out of Egypt, they have rejected me, and they have worshiped other gods. And now they are also rejecting you in the same way. <sup>9</sup> Do what they are asking you to do. But warn them about how their kings will act toward them!”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> They are acting now the same as they did since the day I brought them out of Egypt, forsaking me, and serving other gods, and so they are also doing to you. <sup>9</sup> Now listen to them; but warn them solemnly and let them know the way the king will rule over them.”

**translationNotes****I brought them out of Egypt**

This refers to Yahweh freeing the Israelites from slavery in Egypt many years before.

**Now listen to them**

“Now do what they are asking you to do”

**warn them solemnly**

“be very serious as you warn them”

**translationWords**

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [king](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 8:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> So Samuel told those people what Yahweh had said. <sup>11</sup> He said, "If a king rules over you, this is what he will do to you: He will force many of your sons to join the army. He will make some of them run in front of your chariots to clear things out of the way. <sup>12</sup> Some of them will be commanders of his soldiers, but others will work for him like slaves. He will force some of them to plow his fields and then later harvest his crops. He will force others to make his weapons and equipment for his chariots.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> So Samuel told all the words of Yahweh to the people who were asking for a king. <sup>11</sup> He said, "This will be the practice of the king who will reign over you. He will take your sons and appoint them to his chariots and to be his horsemen, and to run before his chariots. <sup>12</sup> He will appoint for himself captains of thousands and captains of fifties. He will make some plow his ground, some reap his harvest, and some make his weapons of war and the equipment for his chariots.

**translationNotes****This will be the practice ... He will take**

The practice of the king will be to take. This begins the list of things he will take.

**This will be the practice of the king who will reign over you**

The abstract noun "practice" can be translated as a verb. AT: "This is how the king who will reign over you will act" or "This is what the king who will reign over you will do" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**appoint them to his chariots**

"have them drive chariots in battle"

**be his horsemen**

They will ride horses into battle.

**translationWords**

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [reign](#)
- [son, sons](#)

- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)
- [warrior, soldier](#)
- [plow](#)
- [reap, reaper](#)
- [harvest](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 8:13-15****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> The king will take some of your daughters from you and force them to make perfumes for him and cook food for him and bake bread for him. <sup>14</sup> He will take your best fields and vineyards and olive tree groves, and give them to his own officials. <sup>15</sup> He will take a tenth of your harvests and distribute it among the officers and servants who work in his palace.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> He will also take your daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers. <sup>14</sup> He will take the very best of your fields, your vineyards, and your olive orchards, and give them to his servants. <sup>15</sup> He will take a tenth of your grain and of your vineyards and give to his officers and his servants.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Samuel continues to tell what things the king will take.

**to be perfumers**

“to make good-smelling oils to put on his body”

**olive orchards**

“fields of olive trees”

**a tenth of your grain**

They will have to divide their grain into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king’s officers and servants. (See: [Fractions](#))

**a tenth ... of your vineyards**

They will have to divide the wine that they produce in their vineyards into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king’s officers and servants. (See: [Fractions](#))

**officers**

These are the leaders of the king’s army.

**translationWords**

- [vineyard](#)
- [olive](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [tenth, tithe](#)
- [grain](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 8:16-18****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> He will take from you your male and female servants, your best cattle and donkeys, and force them to work for him. <sup>17</sup> He will take one tenth of your sheep and goats. And you will become his slaves! <sup>18</sup> When that time comes, you will complain loudly to the king, the king that you yourselves have chosen, but Yahweh will not pay attention to you.”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> He will take your male servants and your female servants and the best of your young men and your donkeys; he will put them all to work for him. <sup>17</sup> He will take the tenth of your flocks, and you will be his slaves. <sup>18</sup> Then on that day you will cry out because of your king whom you have chosen for yourselves; but Yahweh will not answer you on that day.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Samuel continues to tell what things the king will take.

**the tenth of your flocks**

They will have to divide their flocks into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king's officers and servants. See how you translated “tenth” in [1 Samuel 8:15](#). (See: [Fractions](#))

**you will be his slaves**

“you will feel as if you are his slaves”

**you will cry out**

Possible meanings are 1) the people will ask Yahweh to rescue them from the king or 2) the people will ask the king to stop treating them so badly .

**translationWords**

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [tenth, tithe](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [cry, cry out](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 8:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> When Samuel told Yahweh what the people had said, <sup>22</sup> Yahweh replied, “Do what they are telling you to do. Give them a king!” So Samuel agreed, and then he sent the people home.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> When Samuel heard all the words of the people he repeated them in the ears of Yahweh. <sup>22</sup> Yahweh said to Samuel, “Obey their voice and cause someone to be king for them.” So Samuel said to the men of Israel, “Every man must go to his own city.”

**translationNotes****he repeated them in the ears of Yahweh**

Here “the ears of Yahweh” refers to Yahweh. Samuel prayed to Yahweh repeating all that the people said. AT: “he repeated them to Yahweh” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Obey their voice**

Here the metonym “their voice” refers to the will of the people. AT: “Obey the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**cause someone to be king for them**

“make someone king over them.” Use the common term in your language for making someone king.

**go to his own city**

“go home”

**translationWords**

- [word, words](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 09 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Samuel chooses Saul to be their king

When the donkeys of Saul's father strayed away, Saul went looking for them. When he could not find them, he asked Samuel to ask God where they were. Samuel said the donkeys had been found. He invited Saul as the guest of honor to a feast and gave him a place to sleep for the night.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical questions

Saul uses two rhetorical questions to convince Samuel he is not important: "Am not I a Benjamite, from the smallest of the tribes of Israel? Is not my clan the least of all the clans of the tribe of Benjamin?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 09:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 9:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Now there was a rich and influential man, whose name was Kish. He belonged to the tribe descended from Benjamin. Kish was son of Abiel and the grandson of Zeror. He was from the family of Bekorath and from the clan of Aphiah. <sup>2</sup> Kish had a son whose name was Saul. He was more handsome than any of the other Israelite men, and he was a head taller than any of the other Israelite men.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> There was a man from Benjamin, a man of influence. His name was Kish son of Abiel son of Zeror son of Bekorath son of Aphiah, the son of a Benjamite. <sup>2</sup> He had a son named Saul, a handsome young man. There was no man among the people of Israel who was a more handsome person than he. From his shoulders upward he was taller than any of the people.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

If your language has a way of telling the reader that the writer is giving background information in these verses, you could use it here. (See: [Background Information](#))

#### a man of influence

Possible meanings are 1) he was a wealthy man or 2) he was a nobleman or 3) he was a mighty and brave man.

#### Kish ... Abiel ... Zeror ... Bekorath ... Aphiah

These are names of the men of Saul's family line. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Benjamite

A Benjamite is someone who belongs to the tribe of Benjamin.

#### handsome

someone who looks good

#### From his shoulders upward he was taller than any of the people

The other tall people in Israel did not even come up to his shoulders.

**translationWords**

- Benjamin
- name, names, named
- Saul (OT)
- Israel, Israelites
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 9:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> One day, some of Kish's female donkeys wandered off. So Kish told Saul, "Take one of my servants with you, and go and search for the donkeys!" <sup>4</sup> So Saul did that. He took a servant, and they walked through the hill country where the descendants of Ephraim lived, and then they went through the regions of Shalishah and Shaalim, and then they went through all the region belonging to the tribe of Benjamin, but they could not find the donkeys.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Now the donkeys of Kish, Saul's father, were lost. So Kish said to Saul his son, "Take one of the servants with you; arise and go look for the donkeys." <sup>4</sup> So Saul passed through the hill country of Ephraim and went through the land of Shalishah, but they did not find them. Then they passed through the land of Shaalim, but they were not there. Then he passed through the land of the Benjamites, but they did not find them.

**translationNotes****Now**

The writer has ended the background information (1 Samuel 9:1-2) and starts a new main part of the story.

**arise**

"stop what you are doing"

**the hill country of Ephraim ... the land of Shalishah ... the land of Shaalim ... the land of the Benjamites**

These are all areas in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**did not find them ... they were not there ... did not find them**

The words "them" and "they" all refer to the donkeys.

**translationWords**

- donkey, mule
- servant, slave, slavery
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Ephraim



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 9:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Finally, they came to the region of Zuph. Then Saul said to the servant, “Let us go back home. If we do not do that, my father will stop worrying about the donkeys and start worrying about us.”

<sup>6</sup> But the servant said, “I have another idea. There is one of God’s prophets who lives in this town. People respect him very much, because everything he predicts comes true. Let us go and talk to him. Perhaps he can tell us where we can go to find the donkeys.”

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> When they came to the land of Zuph, Saul said to his servant who was with him, “Come, let us go back, or my father may stop caring for the donkeys and begin to worry about us.” <sup>6</sup> But the servant said to him, “Listen, there is a man of God in this city. He is a man who is held in honor; everything that he says comes true. Let us go there; maybe he can tell us which way we should go on our journey.”

**translationNotes****land of Zuph**

This is an area in Israel just north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**man of God**

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 2:27](#). AT: “a man who hears and tells words from God”

**which way we should go on our journey**

“which way we should go to find the donkeys”

**translationWords**

- [God](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 9:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Saul replied to the servant, “If we go to talk with him, we should give a gift to him, but what can we give to him? We have no more food in our sacks. Do we have anything else to give to him?”

<sup>8</sup> The servant replied, “Look at this! I have a small piece of silver. I can give this to him, and then he will tell us where to go to find the donkeys.”

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Then Saul said to his servant, “But if we go, what can we bring the man? For the bread in our sack is gone, and there is no present to bring to the man of God. What do we have?” <sup>8</sup> The servant answered Saul and said, “Here, I have with me one-fourth of a shekel of silver that I will give to the man of God, to tell us which way we should go.”

### translationNotes

#### what can we bring the man?

Giving a gift is a sign of respect for the man of God.

#### man of God

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 2:27](#). AT: “a man who hears and tells words from God”

#### one-fourth of a shekel

“1/4 of a shekel.” A shekel is a type of money used in the Old Testament. (See: [Biblical Money and Fractions](#))

### translationWords

- [bread](#)
- [silver](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 9:9****UDB:**

<sup>9-11</sup> Saul said, “Very good, let us go talk to him.” So they went to the town where the prophet lived. As they were going up the hill into the town, they met some young women who were coming out of the town to get some water from a well. One of them asked the women, “Is the seer in the town today?” They said that because previously, if people in Israel wanted a message from God, they would say, “Let us go to the seer,” and people who now are called prophets were at that time called seers, or “those who see visions from God.”

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> (Formerly in Israel, when a man went to seek the knowledge of God’s will, he said, “Come, let us go to the seer.” For today’s prophet was formerly called a seer.) <sup>10</sup> Then Saul said to his servant, “Well said. Come, let us go.” So they went to the city where the man of God was.

<sup>11</sup> As they went up the hill to the city, they found young women coming out to draw water; Saul and his servant said to them, “Is the seer here?”

**translationNotes****Formerly in Israel ... seer**

This is cultural information added by the Hebrew author. If it is not natural in your language to state this information here, it can be moved to the end of verse 11. (See: [Background Information](#))

**For today’s prophet was formerly called a seer**

“Seer is the old name for what we call a prophet today”

**translationWords**

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [will of God](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [man of God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 9:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> The women replied, "Yes, he is in the town. In fact, he is walking on the road ahead of you. He arrived in the town today because the people are going to offer a sacrifice on the altar where the people gather to worship God. <sup>13</sup> If you go quickly, you will have time to talk to him before he goes there. The people who have been invited will not start eating until he arrives there and blesses the sacrifice."

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> They answered, and said, "He is; see, he is just ahead of you. Hurry up, for he is coming to the city today, because the people are sacrificing today at the high place. <sup>13</sup> As soon as you enter the city you will find him, before he goes up to the high place to eat. The people will not eat until he comes, because he will bless the sacrifice; afterwards those who are invited will eat. Now go up, for you will find him immediately."

### translationNotes

#### the people are sacrificing today

These are likely the feast or first-fruit sacrifices, not the sin sacrifices, which must be held at the tabernacle.

### translationWords

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [high places](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 9:14****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> So Saul and the servant entered the town. As they went through the gates, they saw Samuel as he was coming toward them; he was on his way to where people were going to offer sacrifices.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> So they went up to the city. As they were entering the city, they saw Samuel coming out toward them, to go up to the high place.

**translationNotes****to go up to the high place**

This is a place that the people had designated as holy to make sacrifices and offerings to Yahweh. The writer writes as though it were outside the wall that was around the city.

**translationWords**

- [Samuel](#)
- [high places](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 9:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> On the previous day, Yahweh had told Samuel, <sup>16</sup> “At this time tomorrow, I will send to you a man from the land where the descendants of Benjamin live. Pour olive oil on his head to indicate that he will be the leader of my Israelite people. I have seen that my people are suffering because the Philistine people are oppressing them, and I have heard my people as they have called out to me for help. The man whom you anoint will rescue my people from the power of the Philistine people.”

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Now the day before Saul came, Yahweh had revealed to Samuel: <sup>16</sup> “Tomorrow about this time I will send you a man from the land of Benjamin, and you will anoint him to be prince over my people Israel. He will save my people from the hand of the Philistines. For I have looked on my people with pity because their call for help has come to me.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The writer stops telling the story and gives background information so the reader can understand what happens next. (See: [Background Information](#))

**you will anoint him to be prince**

The term prince is used here instead of king. This is the man whom God has chosen to be king of Israel. (See: [Euphemism](#))

**the land of Benjamin**

“the land where people from the tribe of Benjamin live”

**from the hand of the Philistines**

Here the word “hand” is a metonym for control. AT: “from the control of the Philistines” or “so the Philistines will no longer control them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**For I have looked on my people with pity**

“My people are suffering and I want to help them”

### translationWords

- Saul (OT)
- Yahweh
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- send, send out, sent
- Benjamin
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- prince, princess
- people of God, my people
- Israel, Israelites
- save, saves, saved, safe
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Philistines

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 9:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> When Samuel saw Saul, Yahweh said to him, “This is the man I told you about yesterday! He is the one who will rule my people!”

<sup>18</sup> Saul saw Samuel at the town gate, but he did not know that it was Samuel. He went over to him and asked him, “Can you tell me, where is the house of the man who sees visions from God?”

<sup>19</sup> Samuel replied, “I am that man. Go ahead of me with your servant to the place where the people make sacrifices. Both of you will eat with me today. Tomorrow morning I will tell you what you are wanting to know, and then I will send you home.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> When Samuel saw Saul, Yahweh told him, “Here is the man I told you about! He is the one who will rule over my people.” <sup>18</sup> Then Saul came close to Samuel in the gate and said, “Tell me where is the house of the seer?” <sup>19</sup> Samuel answered Saul and said, “I am the seer. Go up before me to the high place, for today you will eat with me. In the morning I will let you go, and I will tell you everything that is on your mind.

**translationNotes****Yahweh told him**

“Yahweh told Samuel”

**the seer**

“the prophet of Yahweh”

**translationWords**

- Samuel
- Saul (OT)
- Yahweh
- ruler, rule
- people of God, my people
- gate, gate bar
- high places
- mind

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 9:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Also, do not worry anymore about those donkeys that wandered away three days ago. Someone has found them.”

<sup>21</sup> Saul replied, “I am from the tribe of Benjamin, the smallest of all tribes! And my family is the least important family in our tribe! So why are you talking to me like this, about the Israelite people wanting me and my family?”

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> As for your donkeys that were lost three days ago, do not worry about them, for they have been found. Then on whom are all the desires of Israel set? Is it not on you and all your father’s house?”

<sup>21</sup> Saul answered and said, “Am not I a Benjamite, from the smallest of the tribes of Israel? Is not my clan the least of all the clans of the tribe of Benjamin? Why then have you spoken to me in this manner?”

**translationNotes****Then on whom are all the desires of Israel set? Is it not on you and all your father’s house?**

These questions are an expression of deep conviction that Saul is the one whom Yahweh wants to be the king that the Israelites are looking for. The questions can be translated as statements. AT: “You should know that it is on you that all the desires of Israel are set. They are set on you and your father’s family.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Am not I a Benjamite ... of Israel? Is not my clan ... Benjamin? Why then have you spoken to me in this manner?**

Saul is expressing surprise because Benjamin was the smallest tribe in Israel, and other Israelites considered the tribe unimportant. Also, Benjamites considered the clan of which Saul was a member as unimportant. These questions can be translated as statements. AT: “I am from the tribe of Benjamin, the least important of all tribes. And my clan is the least important clan in our tribe. I do not understand why you are saying that the Israelite people want me and my family to do something important.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- ancestor, father, forefather
- house
- tribe
- clan

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 9:22****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then Samuel brought Saul and the servant into the big dining room, and told them to sit at the head of the table, indicating that he was honoring them more than he was honoring the thirty people who had been invited.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> So Samuel took Saul and his servant, brought them into the hall, and seated them at the head place of those who had been invited, who were about thirty people.

**translationNotes****the hall**

The writer assumes that the reader knows that near the place where they would offer sacrifices there was a large building in which people would eat together.

**head place**

This is the seat of honor.

**thirty**

“30” (See: [Numbers](#))

**translationWords**

- [head](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 9:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> Then Samuel told the cook, “Bring to me the special piece of meat that I told you to set aside.”

<sup>24</sup> So the cook brought the leg and the meat that was on it; he set it in front of Saul. Samuel said to Saul, “Start eating it. I told the cook to save this for you, so that you could eat it at this time, when all these people whom I invited are here.” So Saul and Samuel ate together.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> Samuel said to the cook, “Bring the portion which I gave to you, of which I said to you, ‘Put it aside.’” <sup>24</sup> So the cook took up the thigh and what was on it and set it before Saul. Then Samuel said, “See what has been kept is set before you. Eat it, because it has been kept for you until the appointed time, from the time when I said, ‘I have invited the people.’” So Saul ate with Samuel that day.

### translationNotes

#### what was on it

Possible meanings are 1) the other food that Saul was to eat along with the meat or 2) other parts of the bull.

#### Then Samuel said

In the original language it is not clear who is speaking. It is possible that the cook is speaking to Saul. AT: “Then the cook said”

### translationWords

- [Samuel](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 9:25-26

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> After they finished eating, they returned to the town. Then Samuel took Saul up to the flat roof of his house, and talked with him there.

<sup>26</sup> As the sun was rising the next morning, Samuel called up to Saul, “Get up! It is time for me to send you on the road back home.” So Samuel got up, and later Samuel and Saul left the house together.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> When they had come down from the high place into the city, Samuel spoke with Saul on the rooftop. <sup>26</sup> Then at the break of dawn, Samuel called to Saul on the rooftop and said, “Get up, so I can send you on your way.” So Saul got up, and both he and Samuel went out into the street.

### translationNotes

#### on the rooftop

This is a normal place for family and guests to eat, visit, and sleep. It tends to be cooler in the evening and at night than the inside of the house.

#### Samuel called to Saul on the rooftop and said

What Saul was doing on the rooftop can be made explicit. AT: “while Saul was sleeping on the rooftop, Samuel called to him and said” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### translationWords

- [high places](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 9:27****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> When they got to the edge of the town, Samuel told Saul to send his servant ahead. After the servant left, Samuel said to Saul, “Stay here for a few minutes, in order that I can give you a message I received from God.”

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> As they were going to the outskirts of the city, Samuel said to Saul, “Tell the servant to go ahead of us”—and he went ahead—“but you must stay here awhile, that I may announce the message of God to you.”

**translationNotes****ahead of us”—and he went ahead—“but you must stay**

It is possible that Samuel speaks all of these words. AT: “ahead of us, and when he has gone ahead, you must stay”

**that I may announce the message of God to you**

“so that I can tell you God’s message for you”

**translationWords**

- [Samuel](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 9 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the first chapter about King Saul.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Saul as the New King

Samuel told Saul that God had chosen him to be king, and on the way home he would meet some prophets. Saul would then begin prophesying and God would give him the Holy Spirit to help him to know what to do. Samuel told everyone to come to Mizpah where he announced that God had chosen Saul to be their king. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Spirit](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical questions

This chapter uses rhetorical questions to express different ideas: to state a fact (“Has not Yahweh anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance?”), to express surprise (“And who is their father?”), to say he is someone very special (“Do you see the man that Yahweh has chosen?”), and to express contempt (“How can this man save us?”). (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Idioms

Samuel frequently uses idioms when prophesying: “going to God” means “going to worship God”; “take it from their hands” means “accept their gift”; “rush upon you” means “control you”; “hand finds to do” means “what you think you should do”; “God is with you” means “God is directing you”; “another heart” means “a different way of thinking”; “came to pass” means “happened”; “before Yahweh” means “to do work for Yahweh”; and “hearts God had touched” means “God had made them want to help Saul.” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 10:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 10:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Then Samuel took a small jar of olive oil and poured some of it on Saul's head. Then he kissed Saul on the cheek, and told him, "I am doing this because Yahweh has chosen you to be the leader of his Israelite people. <sup>2</sup> When you leave me today, and when you arrive near Rachel's tomb at Zelzah, in the region of the tribe of Benjamin, you will meet two men. They will say to you, 'The donkeys have been found, but now your father is worrying about you, and he is asking people if they have seen you.'

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Then Samuel took a flask of oil, poured it on Saul's head, and kissed him. He said, "Has not Yahweh anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance? <sup>2</sup> When you leave me today, you will find two men near Rachel's tomb, in the territory of Benjamin at Zelzah. They will say to you, 'The donkeys that you were looking for have been found. Now your father has stopped caring about the donkeys and is worried about you, saying, "What should I do about my son?"'

### translationNotes

#### took a flask of oil, poured it on Saul's head

In Israelite culture, when a prophet poured oil on someone's head, that person received a blessing from Yahweh.

#### flask

a small container made from baked clay

#### Has not Yahweh anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance?

Samuel knows the answer to his question. He is reminding Saul that Yahweh has chosen him to be king of Israel. AT: "Yahweh has certainly anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Zelzah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### What should I do about my son?

Saul's father is now concerned about Saul and wants to find him.

### translationWords

- Samuel
- oil
- Saul (OT)
- kiss
- Yahweh
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- ruler, rule
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Rachel
- tomb, grave, burial place
- Benjamin
- donkey, mule

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 10:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> When you arrive at the large oak tree at the town of Tabor, you will see three men coming toward you. They will be on their way to worship God at Bethel. One of them will be leading three young goats, one will be carrying three loaves of bread, and one will be carrying a container of wine. <sup>4</sup> They will greet you, and they will offer you two of the loaves of bread. Accept them.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Then you will go on further from there, and you will come to the oak of Tabor. Three men going to God at Bethel will meet you there, one carrying three young goats, another carrying three loaves of bread, and another carrying a skin of wine. <sup>4</sup> They will greet you and give you two loaves of bread, which you will take from their hands.

### translationNotes

#### Tabor

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### take from their hands

The hands are a synecdoche for the person. “take from them” or “accept” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### translationWords

- oak
- God
- Bethel
- goat, kid
- bread
- wine, wineskin, new wine

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 10:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> When you arrive at the hill where people worship God near the town of Gibeah, where there is a camp where the Philistine soldiers stay, you will meet a group of prophets who will be coming down from the altar on top of the hill. There will be people in front of them who will be playing various musical instruments: A harp, a tambourine, a flute, and a lyre. And all of them will be shouting out messages from God. <sup>6</sup> At that time the Spirit of Yahweh will come upon you, and you also will shout out in the same way. You will be changed, so that you will become like a different person.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> After that, you will come to the hill of God, where the garrison of the Philistines is. When you arrive at the city, you will meet a group of prophets coming down from the high place with a harp, a tambourine, a flute, and a lyre before them; they will be prophesying. <sup>6</sup> The Spirit of Yahweh will rush upon you, and you will prophesy with them, and you will be changed into a different man.

**translationNotes****tambourine**

This is a musical instrument with a head like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**The Spirit of Yahweh will rush upon you**

The phrase “rush upon” means that Yahweh’s Spirit will influence Saul. In this case it means it means he will make Saul prophesy and act like a different person. (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [high places](#)
- [harp](#)
- [flute, pipe](#)
- [lute, lyre](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 10:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> After those things occur, do whatever you think is right to do, because God is with you.

<sup>8</sup> Then go ahead of me, down to the city of Gilgal, and wait for me for seven days. Then I will join you there to burn sacrifices and offer other sacrifices to enable you to continue to have fellowship with God. When I arrive there, I will tell you what other things you should do.”

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Now, when these signs come to you, do whatever your hand finds to do, for God is with you. <sup>8</sup> Go down before me to Gilgal. Then I will come down to you to offer burnt offerings and to sacrifice peace offerings. Wait seven days until I come to you and show you what you must do.”

### translationNotes

#### do whatever your hand finds to do

Here Samuel speaks of Saul’s hand as if it were a person trying to find things. AT: “do whatever you think is right to do” (See: [Personification](#))

### translationWords

- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [God](#)
- [Gilgal](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [peace offering](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 10:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> As Saul started to leave there, God changed Saul's inner being. And all the things that Samuel had predicted happened on that day. <sup>10</sup> When Saul and his servant arrived at Gibeah, they saw some prophets who were speaking messages that came directly from God. As the prophets were approaching Saul and his servant, God's Spirit came upon Saul powerfully, and he also began to shout out messages from God.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> When Saul turned his back to leave Samuel, God gave him another heart. Then all these signs came to pass that day. <sup>10</sup> When they came to the hill, a group of prophets met him, and the Spirit of God rushed upon him so that he prophesied with them.

### translationNotes

#### God gave him another heart

God enabled Samuel to think differently from the way he had thought before. (See: [Idiom](#))

#### the Spirit of God rushed upon him

Samuel speaks as if the Spirit of Yahweh were a person running up to Saul and taking complete control of him. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:6](#). AT: "the Spirit of Yahweh took complete control of him" (See: [Personification](#))

### translationWords

- Saul (OT)
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Samuel
- God
- heart, hearts
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)

- 1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions

## 1 Samuel 10:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> When people who had known Saul previously heard him doing what the prophets were doing, they said to each other, “What has happened to this son of Kish? Is he now really one of the prophets?”

<sup>12</sup> One of the men who lived there replied, “It does not matter who the parents of these other prophets are. What matters is that, amazingly, Saul is speaking messages from God.” And that is why, when people are very skeptical about some report, they think about what happened to Saul and say, “Is Saul really one of the prophets?” <sup>13</sup> When Saul finished speaking the messages that God gave him, he went to the place where the people offered sacrifices.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> When everyone who knew him before saw him prophesying with the prophets, the people said to each other, “What has happened to the son of Kish? Is Saul one of the prophets now?” <sup>12</sup> A man who was from that same place answered, “Then who is their father?” Because of this, it became a saying, “Is Saul also one of the prophets?” <sup>13</sup> When he finished prophesying, he came to the high place.

### translationNotes

#### What has happened to the son of Kish?

Possible meanings are 1) the people are asking for information or 2) this is a rhetorical question that means Saul is not important. AT: “Kish is not an important person, so it cannot be true that his son has become a prophet!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### the son of Kish

“Saul, the son of Kish”

#### Then who is their father?

This man uses a rhetorical question to remind people that being a prophet has nothing to do with who one’s parents are. The question can be translated as a statement. AT: “It does not matter who the parents of these other prophets are. What matters is that, amazingly, Saul is speaking messages from God.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Because of this, it became a saying, “Is Saul also one of the prophets?”**

This became a proverb among the Israelites. Apparently people said this to express surprise when a person unexpectedly did something that he had not done before. The implied meaning of the question can be stated explicitly. AT: “And that is why, when people cannot believe some report, they think about what happened to Saul and say, ‘Is Saul really one of the prophets?’” (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [high places](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 10:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Later, Saul's uncle saw him there, and asked him, "Where did you go?" Saul replied, "We went to look for the donkeys. When we could not find them, we came here to ask Samuel if he could tell us where they were."

<sup>15</sup> Saul's uncle replied, "What did Samuel tell you?"

<sup>16</sup> Saul replied, "He assured us that someone had found the donkeys." But he did not tell his uncle what Samuel had said about him becoming the king of Israel.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then Saul's uncle said to him and his servant, "Where did you go?" He replied, "To look for the donkeys. When we saw that we could not find them, we went to Samuel." <sup>15</sup> Saul's uncle said, "Please tell me what Samuel said to you." <sup>16</sup> Saul replied to his uncle, "He told us plainly that the donkeys had been found." But he did not tell him about the matter of the kingdom, of which Samuel had spoken.

**translationNotes****Then Saul's uncle said to him**

"Then the brother of Saul's father said to Saul"

**he did not tell him about the matter of the kingdom**

"Saul did not tell his uncle that God had appointed him to be the king of Israel"

**translationWords**

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [kingdom](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 10:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Later Samuel summoned the people of Israel to gather at Mizpah to hear a message from Yahweh. <sup>18</sup> After they arrived, he said to them, "This is what Yahweh, the God we Israelite people worship, says: 'I brought you Israelite people out of Egypt. I rescued your ancestors from the power of the rulers of Egypt and from all the other kings who oppressed them. <sup>19</sup> I am the one who saves you from all your troubles and difficulties. But you have shown that you do not want to worship me. Instead, you have asked me to select a man to rule you as king. So now, your tribal and clan leaders must gather in my presence.'"

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Now Samuel called the people together before Yahweh at Mizpah. <sup>18</sup> He said to the people of Israel, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel says: 'I brought up Israel out of Egypt, and I rescued you from the hand of the Egyptians, and from the hand of all the kingdoms that oppressed you.' <sup>19</sup> But today you have rejected your God, who saves you from all of your calamities and your distresses; and you have said to him, 'Set a king over us.' Now present yourselves before Yahweh by your tribes and by your clans."

**translationNotes****I brought up Israel out of Egypt**

The name "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. "I brought the people of Israel out of Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**today**

"now"

**the hand of the Egyptians ... the hand of all the kingdoms**

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. AT: "the power of the Egyptians ... the power of all the kingdoms" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Set a king over us**

"Give us a king to rule us"

**present yourselves before Yahweh by your tribes and by your clans**

"gather together by tribes and clans and come to stand before Yahweh"

### translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- Yahweh
- Mizpah
- Israel, Israelites
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- kingdom
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- reject
- save, saves, saved, safe
- king
- tribe
- clan

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 10:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> When those representatives came near to Samuel, God indicated that he had chosen someone from the tribe descended from Benjamin. <sup>21</sup> Then Samuel told representatives of the tribe of Benjamin to come forward, and God indicated that from that tribe he had chosen someone from the family of Matri, and then God indicated that from the family of Matri he had chosen Saul son of Kish. But when they looked for Saul, they could not find him.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> So Samuel brought all the tribes of Israel near, and the tribe of Benjamin was chosen. <sup>21</sup> Then he brought the tribe of Benjamin near by their clans; and the clan of the Matrites was chosen; and Saul son of Kish was chosen. But when they went looking for him, he could not be found.

### translationNotes

**the tribe of Benjamin was chosen ... the clan of the Matrites was chosen ... Saul son of Kish was chosen**

This can be translated in active form. It is probably best not to say how the people knew whom Yahweh had chosen. AT: "Yahweh chose the tribe of Benjamin ... Yahweh chose the clan of the Matrites ... Yahweh chose Saul son of Kish" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- [tribe](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [clan](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 10:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> So they asked Yahweh, “Has someone else been chosen, perhaps?” Yahweh replied, “The man is hiding among the army equipment.”

<sup>23</sup> So they quickly went there and found Saul, and brought him in front of all the people. They could see that truly he was a head taller than anyone else.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then the people wanted to ask God more questions, “Is there still another man to come?” Yahweh answered, “He has hidden himself among the baggage.” <sup>23</sup> Then they ran and retrieved Saul from there. When he stood among the people, he was taller than any of the people from his shoulders upward.

**translationNotes****he was taller than any of the people from his shoulders upward**

The other tall people in Israel did not even come up to his shoulders. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 9:2](#).

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 10:25****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Then Samuel told the people what things that the king would force them to do, and all the things the king was required to do. He wrote all those things in a scroll, and then he put it in the place of the temple where Yahweh was. Then Samuel sent all the people home.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Then Samuel told the people the customs and rules of kingship, wrote them down in a book, and placed it before Yahweh. Samuel then sent all the people away, each man to his own house.

**translationNotes****the customs and rules of kingship**

The abstract noun “kingship” can be translated with a noun clause. AT: “the customs and rules that a king would be required to follow” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [ruler, rule](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 10:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> When Saul returned to his home in the town of Gibeah, a group of courageous men decided to continually accompany Saul. They did that because God motivated them to do that. <sup>27</sup> But some worthless men said, “How can this man save us from our enemies?” They despised him and refused to give him any gifts to show that they would be loyal to him. But Saul did not say anything to rebuke them.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Saul also went to his home at Gibeah, and with him went some strong men, whose hearts God had touched. <sup>27</sup> But some worthless men said, “How can this man save us?” These people despised Saul and did not bring him any gifts. But Saul kept silent. <sup>[1]</sup>

---

10:27 <sup>[1]</sup>Some modern versions add to this verse the following paragraph: *Nahash king of the Ammonites had severely oppressed the Gadites and Reubenites. He dug out the right eye of each man and did not allow anyone to rescue Israel. Across the Jordan River was left no Israelites whose right eye Nahash king of the Ammonites had not dug out. But seven thousand men had escaped from the Ammonites and had gone into Jabesh Gilead.*

**translationNotes****whose hearts God had touched**

God touching a person’s heart is an idiom that means God put something in their mind or moved them to do something. AT: “who wanted to go with Saul because God had changed their thinking” (See: **Idiom**)

**How can this man save us?**

This is a rhetorical question that is used to express sarcasm. AT: “This man has no power to save us!” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

**despised**

“strongly disliked”

**translationWords**

- [Gibeah](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 11 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the story of King Saul by telling of his first victory in war.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Saul rescues the people of Jabesh Gilead

Nahash, king of the Ammonites, and his army surrounded the Israeli town of Jabesh Gilead. When the city's leaders asked for peace terms, Nahash demanded the right to poke out one eye of every man in order to show Israel their weakness. When Saul heard this, he called for all of Israel to help save this city. Many people came to help Saul's army. Israel was victorious and everyone wanted Saul as their king. At this time, Israel was not a truly unified country, even though it is often spoken of as one country. (See: [save, saves, saved, safe](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)).

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idioms

The idioms in this chapter explain the effect God has on his people: “rushed upon him” means “empowered him”; “terror ... fell” means “they became afraid”; “as one man” means “they all agreed”; and “put to death” means “kill.” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 11:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 11:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> About a month later, King Nahash of Ammon led his army across the Jordan River, and they surrounded the city of Jabesh in the region of Gilead. But all the men of Jabesh appointed someone who said to Nahash, “Make an agreement with us not to kill us, and then we will let you rule us.”

<sup>2</sup> Nahash replied, “I will do that if you do one thing. Allow us to gouge out all the right eyes of your people. By doing that we will cause the people in other countries to despise all you Israelite people.”

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then Nahash the Ammonite went and laid seige to Jabesh Gilead. All the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, “Make a covenant with us, and we will serve you.” <sup>2</sup> Nahash the Ammonite replied, “On this condition will I make a treaty with you, that I gouge out all of your right eyes, and in this way bring disgrace on all Israel.”

**translationNotes****Nahash**

This is a man from Ammon, a descendent of Lot, Abraham’s nephew. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Jabesh Gilead**

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**I gouge out**

“I cut out” or “I pluck out”

**bring disgrace on**

“bring shame on” or “bring a bad reputation to”

**translationWords**

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [siege, besiege, besieged, besieger](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 11:3

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> The leaders of Jabesh replied, “Do not attack us for the next seven days. During that time, we will send messengers throughout Israel to tell them what you are demanding. If no one will help us, then we will surrender to you.”

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Then the elders of Jabesh replied to him, “Leave us alone for seven days, so that we may send messengers to all the territory of Israel. Then, if there is no one to save us, we will surrender to you.”

### translationNotes

#### seven days

“7 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

### translationWords

- [elder](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 11:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> So the leaders of Jabesh sent messengers throughout Israel. When the messengers came to Gibeah, which was the city where Saul lived, and they told the people there about the situation, everyone started to cry. <sup>5</sup> At that time, Saul was plowing in the field. When he returned home, he asked, “Why are all the people crying?” So they told him what the messengers from Jabesh had reported.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> The messengers came to Gibeah, where Saul lived, and told the people what had happened. All the people wept loudly. <sup>5</sup> Now Saul was following the oxen out of the field. Saul said, “What is wrong with the people that they are weeping?” They told Saul what the men of Jabesh had said.

### translationNotes

#### Gibeah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- messenger
- Saul (OT)
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- ox, oxen

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 11:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then God's Spirit came powerfully upon Saul, and he became very angry because of what Nahash wanted to do. <sup>7</sup> He took two of his oxen and killed them and cut them into pieces. Then he sent messengers carrying those pieces throughout Israel to tell people this message: "Saul says that he cut this ox in pieces, and that he will do the same thing to the oxen of anyone who refuses to come with him and Samuel to fight the army from Ammon!" Then Yahweh caused all the people of Israel to be afraid of what Saul might do to them if they did not go and help Saul. So the men all gathered together. <sup>8</sup> When Saul counted them at Bezek, he saw that there were 300,000 Israelite men there, as well as thirty thousand men from the tribe of Judah.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> When Saul heard what they said, the Spirit of God rushed upon him, and he was very angry. <sup>7</sup> He took a yoke of oxen, cut them into pieces, and sent them throughout all the territory of Israel with the messengers. He said, "Whoever does not come out after Saul and after Samuel, this is what will be done to his oxen." Then the terror of Yahweh fell on the people, and they came out together as one man. <sup>8</sup> When he mustered them at Bezek, the people of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand.

**translationNotes****the Spirit of God rushed upon him**

The phrase "rushed upon" means Yahweh's Spirit influenced Saul. In this case he enabled Saul to cause the people to fearfully respect him as their king and to join his army. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 10:6](#).

**does not come out after**

Saul was calling all the men of Israel to come fight against Nahash and the Ammonites.

**Then the terror of Yahweh fell on the people**

Yahweh enabled people to fearfully respect Saul as their king. The result was that the men rallied together with Saul at Bezek.

**Bezek**

This is the name of a town near Jabesh Gilead. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the people of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand**

“the people of Israel were 300,000, and the men of Judah were 30,000” ( See: [Numbers](#))

#### **translationWords**

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)

#### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 11:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> So Saul sent messengers back to the people at Jabesh to tell them, “We will rescue you by the time the weather is hot tomorrow morning.” The messengers went and told the people of Jabesh, who became very happy when they heard the news. <sup>10</sup> Then the men of Jabesh told Nahash, “Tomorrow we will surrender to you, and then you can do to us whatever you want to.”

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> They said to the messengers that came, “You will tell the men of Jabesh Gilead, ‘Tomorrow, by the time the sun is hot, you will be rescued.’” So the messengers went and told the men of Jabesh, and they were glad. <sup>10</sup> Then the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, “Tomorrow we will surrender to you, and you can do to us whatever seems good to you.”

### translationNotes

#### They said to the messengers

“They” refers to Samuel and Saul.

#### by the time the sun is hot

“before the hottest part of the day” or “before noon”

#### Jabesh Gilead ... Jabesh

These are the names of places. See how you translated them in [1 Samuel 11:01](#).

#### Nahash

This is the name of a king. See how you translated this name in [1 Samuel 11:01](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 11:11

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> But before the sun rose the next morning, Saul and his army arrived. He divided them into three groups. They rushed into the camp of the soldiers from Ammon, and attacked them. By noontime they had killed most of them, and those who were not killed scattered. Each of them who ran away ran away alone.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> The next day Saul put the people in three groups. They came into the middle of the camp during the morning watch, and they attacked and defeated the Ammonites until the heat of the day. Those who survived were scattered, so that no two of them were left together.

### translationNotes

#### the morning watch

This was before dawn when most people in the camp were still asleep.

### translationWords

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 11:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Then Samuel said to the people, “Let us all go to Gilgal, and there we will again proclaim that Saul is our king.” <sup>15</sup> So they went to Gilgal. There, knowing that Yahweh was watching, they proclaimed that Saul was their king. Then they offered sacrifices to enable them to continue to have fellowship with Yahweh. And Saul and all the other Israelite people were very happy.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Then Samuel said to the people, “Come, let us go to Gilgal and renew the monarchy there.” <sup>15</sup> So all the people went to Gilgal and made Saul king before Yahweh in Gilgal. There they sacrificed peace offerings before Yahweh, and Saul and all the men of Israel rejoiced greatly.

### translationNotes

#### made Saul king before Yahweh

“made Saul king while Yahweh watched”

#### There they sacrificed peace offerings before Yahweh

Part of Samuel’s service to Yahweh is to offer sacrifices even though he is not from the line of Aaron or Levi.

### translationWords

- [Gilgal](#)
- [king](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [peace offering](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [rejoice](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 11 translationQuestions](#)

## **1 Samuel 12 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Samuel's farewell address**

This chapter serves as a type of farewell address. This is a way for leaders to give instructions to their followers before they leave or die. Samuel first established his holiness before calling on the people to repent of their desire to have a king. (See: [holy, holiness](#) and [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#))

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

It is common in Scripture to use Israel's history to show how faithful God has been. This gives the readers evidence to trust in Yahweh in their current situation. (See: [faithful, faithfulness](#) and [trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#))

#### **Links:**

- [1 Samuel 12:01 Notes](#)



## 1 Samuel 12:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Then Samuel said this to all the Israelite people: "I have done everything that you told me to do, and I have given a king to rule you. <sup>2</sup> My own sons are grown up and with you now, but I have appointed Saul instead of one of them, and he is now your leader. I am now old, and my hair is gray. I have been your leader ever since I was a boy.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Samuel said to all Israel, "I have listened to everything you said to me, and I have set a king over you. <sup>2</sup> Now, here is the king walking before you; and I am old and gray; and, my sons are with you. I have walked before you from my youth until today.

### translationNotes

#### the king walking before you ... I have walked before you

These expressions mean that people can actually see the kind of lives Saul and Samuel are living. AT: "the king's life was seen ... My life was seen" (See: [Idiom](#))

### translationWords

- [Samuel](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [son, sons](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 12:3

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Now tell me, while Yahweh is listening, and while the king whom he has chosen is listening, whose ox or donkey have I stolen during all those years? Whom have I cheated? Whom have I oppressed badly? From whom have I accepted a bribe, in order that I would ignore the evil things he had done? If I have done any of these things, tell me, and I will pay back what I owe.”

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Here I am; testify against me before Yahweh and before his anointed one. Whose ox have I taken? Whose donkey have I taken? Whom have I defrauded? Whom have I oppressed? From whose hand have I taken a bribe to blind my eyes with? Testify against me, and I will restore it to you.”

### translationNotes

#### Here I am; testify against me before Yahweh and before his anointed one

By this statement, Samuel is challenging the people to speak up if he has done anything wrong to anyone. AT: “I stand in front of you now. I ask you to speak in front of Yahweh and his anointed king if I have done you any wrong” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Whose ox have I taken? Whose donkey have I taken?

Samuel uses rhetorical questions to remind the people that he has never stolen their animals. AT: “I have never stolen a prized animal from anyone.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Whom have I defrauded?

Samuel uses another rhetorical question to say he has always been honest. AT: “I have never cheated or bribed any man.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Testify against me, and I will restore it to you

“If I have done any of these evil things, speak now, and I will pay back what I owe. I will make right any wrong”

### translationWords

- [testimony, testify](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 12:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> They replied, “No, you have never cheated anyone or oppressed anyone or accepted a bribe from anyone.”

<sup>5</sup> Then Samuel said, “Today Yahweh can testify, and the king whom you chose can testify, that I have not taken a bribe from anyone.” They replied, “Yes, Yahweh can say that he knows that is true.”

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> They said, “You have not cheated us, oppressed us, or have stolen anything from any man’s hand.”

<sup>5</sup> He said to them, “Yahweh is witness against you, and his anointed one is witness today, that you have found nothing in my hand.” They replied, “Yahweh is witness.”

**translationNotes****from any man’s hand ... in my hand**

These phrases mean what a person possesses or what they have done to obtain favor from others. This is a polite way of saying he has not stolen, nor has he given or taken bribes. (See: [Euphemism](#))

**translationWords**

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 12:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Samuel continued by saying, "Yahweh is the one who appointed Moses and Aaron to lead our ancestors. He is the one who brought them out of Egypt. And he is the one who will testify that what I am saying is true. <sup>7</sup> Now while Yahweh is listening, stand here quietly while I accuse you and tell you that your requesting a king instead of trusting Yahweh to lead you was wrong. I will do that by reminding you of all the great miracles that Yahweh performed for you and your ancestors.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> Samuel said to the people, "It is Yahweh who appointed Moses and Aaron, and who brought your fathers up from the land of Egypt. <sup>7</sup> Now then, present yourself, so that I may plead with you before Yahweh about all of the righteous deeds of Yahweh, which he did for you and your fathers.

### translationNotes

#### all of the righteous deeds of Yahweh

Samuel is calling their attention to the history of Yahweh's dealing with Israel, which has been filled with goodness and purpose.

### translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 12:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Many years after our ancestor Jacob went to Egypt, his descendants pleaded to Yahweh to help them. So Yahweh sent Moses and Aaron to them, and they led our ancestors out of Egypt, and eventually they settled in this land.

<sup>9</sup> But our ancestors soon forgot about Yahweh, their God. So he allowed Sisera, the commander of the army from Hazor, to defeat them. He also allowed the Philistines and the army of the king of Moab to fight our ancestors and defeat them.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> When Jacob came to Egypt, and your ancestors cried out to Yahweh, then Yahweh sent Moses and Aaron, who led your ancestors out of Egypt and they settled in this place. <sup>9</sup> But they forgot Yahweh their God; he sold them into the hand of Sisera, captain of the armies of Hazor, into the hand of the Philistines, and into the hand of the king of Moab; these all fought against your ancestors.

**translationNotes****into the hand of Sisera ... Philistines ... king of Moab**

“into the power of Sisera ... Philistines ... king of Moab”

**Jacob ... Moses ... Aaron ... Sisera**

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Hazor**

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**he sold them**

This is an expression for God giving them over to their enemies to be their slaves.

**translationWords**

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)

- [king](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 12:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Then our ancestors pleaded with Yahweh again to help them. They admitted, ‘Yahweh, we have sinned, and we have forsaken you. We have worshiped idols that represent the god Baal and the goddess Ashtoreth. But if you rescue us from our enemies, we will worship you only.’ <sup>11</sup> So Yahweh sent men such as Gideon, Barak, Jephthah, and me to save you. And as a result, you did not have to worry about any enemies attacking you.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> They cried out to Yahweh and said, ‘We have sinned, because we have forsaken Yahweh and have served the Baals and the Ashtoreths. But now rescue us from the hand of our enemies, and we will serve you.’ <sup>11</sup> So Yahweh sent Jerub Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel, and gave you victory over your enemies all around you, so that you lived in security.

### translationNotes

#### They cried out to Yahweh

“They” refers to the nation of Israel.

#### Jerub Baal

This is sometimes translated Jerubbaal. This is a name of godly honor and strength to fight the false god.

#### Yahweh sent ... and gave you victory

Samuel is telling the story of what God did after the people’s confession of sin and plea for help. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Jerub Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel

These are the names of some judges that God raised up. Samuel included himself in this list. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### have served the Baals and the Ashtoreths

Serving here is referring to acting worshipful towards the false gods. AT: “have worshiped false gods and goddesses” (See: [Metonymy](#))



### the hand of our enemies

This statement is using “hand” to refer to power. AT: “the power or control of our enemies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 12:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> But now, when King Nahash of Ammon came with his army to attack you, you were afraid. So you came to me, and said, ‘We want a king to rule us,’ even though Yahweh was already your king! <sup>13</sup> So now, look, here is the king whom you have chosen. You asked for a king, and Yahweh has now appointed a king for you.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> When you saw that Nahash the king of the people of Ammon came against you, you said to me, ‘No! Instead, a king must reign over us’—although Yahweh your God, was your king. <sup>13</sup> Now here is the king whom you have chosen, whom you have asked for and whom Yahweh has now appointed as king over you.

### translationNotes

#### **No! Instead, a king must reign over us**

This statement shows the nation of Israel’s strong reaction against Samuel when he told them about trusting God because God delivered them in the past.

#### **whom you have chosen, whom you have asked for**

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that this is the king whom the people wanted. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### translationWords

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [king](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 12:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> If you honor Yahweh and if you serve him, and if you listen to what he says and obey what he commands, and if you and the king who rules over you do what Yahweh your God wants you to do, things will go well for you all. <sup>15</sup> But if you do not listen to what Yahweh says, if you disobey what he commands, then he will punish you, just as he punished our ancestors.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> If you fear Yahweh, serve him, obey his voice, and not rebel against the command of Yahweh, then both you and the king who reigns over you will be followers of Yahweh your God. <sup>15</sup> If you do not obey the voice of Yahweh, but rebel against the commands of Yahweh, then Yahweh's hand will be against you, as it was against your ancestors.

**translationNotes****fear ... serve ... obey ... not rebel**

These similar words are used to emphasize how important this is. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Yahweh's hand will be against you, as it was against your ancestors**

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people as his "hand" being against them. The word "hand" here represents Yahweh's power and control. AT: "Yahweh will punish you, just as he punished your ancestors" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- fear, fears, afraid
- Yahweh
- obey, obedient, obedience
- voice
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- reign
- hand, right hand, to hand over

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)

- 1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions

**1 Samuel 12:16-18****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Now stand here quietly and see the great thing that Yahweh is about to do. <sup>17</sup> You know that it does not rain at this time of the year, during the time when you harvest wheat. But I will ask Yahweh to send thunder and lightning and rain today. When he does that, you will realize that Yahweh considers that you have done a very wicked thing by requesting a king.”

<sup>18</sup> Then Samuel prayed to Yahweh, and Yahweh caused it to thunder and lightning and rain. So all the people became very afraid of Yahweh and of Samuel.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Even now present yourself and see this great thing which Yahweh will do before your eyes. <sup>17</sup> Is it not the wheat harvest today? I will call upon Yahweh, that he may send thunder and rain. Then you will know and see that your wickedness is great, which you have done in the sight of Yahweh, in asking for yourselves a king.” <sup>18</sup> So Samuel called to Yahweh; and that same day Yahweh sent thunder and rain. Then all the people greatly feared Yahweh and Samuel.

**translationNotes****before your eyes**

The word “eyes” here represents the people of the nation of Israel. AT: “out in the open where all of the nation of Israel may see” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Is it not the wheat harvest today?**

Samuel knows it is harvest time. He is using a rhetorical question to emphasize that it does not usually rain at this time so the people will know that the rain that will ruin their harvest is a judgment from Yahweh. AT: “It is harvest time and does not usually rain at this time” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**he may send thunder and rain**

Samuel is asking Yahweh to punish Israel for asking for a king by sending a rainstorm during the harvest which will ruin the grain.

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [harvest](#)

- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [king](#)
- [Samuel](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 12:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> They cried out to Samuel, “Pray for us! We have added to our previous sins by requesting a king! Pray to Yahweh, your God, in order that we will not die because of having done that!”

<sup>20</sup> Samuel replied, “Do not be afraid! You have done this evil thing, but do not stop doing the things that Yahweh wants you to do. Instead, serve Yahweh with your whole inner being. <sup>21</sup> Do not abandon Yahweh and worship useless idols. They cannot help you or save you from your enemies, because they are truly useless.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Then all the people said to Samuel, “Pray for your servants to Yahweh your God, so that we do not die. For we have added to all our sins this evil in asking for a king for ourselves.” <sup>20</sup> Samuel replied, “Do not be afraid. You have done all this evil, but do not turn away from Yahweh, but serve Yahweh with all your heart. <sup>21</sup> Do not turn away after empty things that cannot profit or rescue you, because they are useless.

**translationNotes****so that we do not die**

The ultimate punishment for sin is death. The nation of Israel had seen Yahweh destroy the nations that had oppressed them. They were concerned that they had become “dedicated for destruction” like those nations.

**Do not be afraid**

The people did evil and were afraid of God destroying them. AT: “Do not be afraid that God will be angry and destroy you because of this sin” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**turn away after empty things**

“pursue worship of false gods”

**translationWords**

- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- Yahweh
- God
- death, die, dead
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [profit, profitable](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 12:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh decided to make us his people. So he will not abandon us people whom he has chosen, because he would injure his own reputation of being completely faithful if he did that. <sup>23</sup> But as for me, I have solemnly promised that I will not sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you. And I will continue to teach you what things are good and right for you to do.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> For the sake of his great name, Yahweh will not reject his people, because it has pleased Yahweh to make you a people for himself. <sup>23</sup> As for me, far be it from me that I should sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you. Instead, I will teach you the way that is good and right.

**translationNotes****For the sake of his great name**

Here “name” refers to the reputation of Yahweh. AT: “So that people will continue to honor and respect Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**far be it from me that I should sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you**

The people are filled with fear because of the rain and thunder that Yahweh sent when Samuel prayed. Some people may believe Samuel would use his prayers to harm them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [name, names, named](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [reject](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 13 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of a story about Jonathan's victory over the Philistines.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Preparation for the battle

Saul sent most of his army home before Jonathan attacked and defeated a Philistine garrison. This attack made the Philistines very angry, and they brought a huge army into Israel and camped at the top of a hill. Most of Saul's army ran away in fear and hid from the Philistines. There are many aspects of this story that give the reader the impression that Israel was unprepared for battle.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Hyperbole

Wanting to express the vast number of enemy soldiers, the author uses a hyperbole: "as numerous as the sand on the seashore," meaning "too many to count." (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 13:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 13:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Saul was thirty years old when he began to reign. He ruled for forty years.

<sup>2</sup> Some years after he became king, he chose three thousand men from the Israelite army to go with him to fight the Philistines. Then he sent the other soldiers back home. Of the men he chose, two thousand stayed with Saul at Micmash and in the hill country near Bethel, and a thousand stayed with Saul's son Jonathan at Gibeah, in the area of the tribe of Benjamin.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Saul was thirty years old when he began to reign; when he had reigned forty years over Israel, <sup>2</sup> he chose three thousand men of Israel. Two thousand were with him in Michmash and in the hill country of Bethel, while a thousand were with Jonathan in Gibeah of Benjamin. The rest of the soldiers he sent home, each man to his tent.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Samuel has renewed Saul's kingdom at Gilgal and Samuel has reminded the people to follow the Lord.

**Saul was thirty years old ... over Israel**

The text of this verse in ancient copies seems to have been mutilated, so modern versions have many different translations. They are all attempts to represent the most probable meaning of the original text.

**chose three thousand men**

“chose 3,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

**Two thousand were with him**

“2,000 men were with him” (See: [Numbers](#))

**Michmash**

name of a city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Gibeah of Benjamin**

Gibeah is a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:26](#).

**The rest of the soldiers he sent home**

“He sent the rest of the soldiers home”

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [tent](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 13:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Jonathan and the men who were with him attacked the Philistine soldiers who were camped at Geba. The other Philistines heard about that. So Saul realized that the army of Philistia would probably come to fight the Israelites again. So Saul sent messengers to blow trumpets throughout Israel to gather the people together and proclaim to them, “All you Hebrews need to hear that now the Philistines will start a war with us!” <sup>4</sup> The messengers told the rest of the army to gather together with Saul at Gilgal. And all the people in Israel heard the news. People were saying, “Saul’s army has attacked the Philistine camp, with the result that now the Philistines hate us Israelites very much.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Jonathan defeated the garrison of the Philistines that was at Geba and the Philistines heard of it. Then Saul blew the trumpet throughout all the land, saying, “Let the Hebrews hear.” <sup>4</sup> All Israel heard that Saul had defeated the garrison of the Philistines, and also that Israel had become a rotten smell to the Philistines. Then the soldiers were summoned together to join Saul at Gilgal.

**translationNotes****garrison of the Philistines**

“military base of the Philistines” or “military camp of the Philistines”

**Geba**

This is the name of the town that the Philistine garrison was stationed in. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**All Israel heard that Saul had defeated**

Possible meanings are that 1) Saul was taking responsibility for Jonathan’s actions or 2) Saul was taking credit for Jonathan’s actions.

**Israel had become a rotten smell to the Philistines**

The Philistines hating the Israelites is spoken of as if the Israelites had become a bad smell that offended the Philistines. AT: “the Philistines hated the Israelites” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the soldiers were summoned together to join Saul at Gilgal**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Saul called the soldiers together to join him at Gilgal” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [trumpet](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [Gilgal](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 13:5

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> The Philistines gathered together and were given equipment to fight the Israelites. The Philistines had three thousand chariots and six thousand chariot drivers. Their soldiers seemed to be as many as grains of sand on the seashore. They went up and set up their tents at Micmash, to the east of Beth Aven, that is, Bethel.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel, with three thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. They came up and encamped at Michmash, east of Beth Aven.

### translationNotes

#### three thousand ... six thousand

“3,000 ... 6,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

This is an exaggeration that means a group of soldiers so large that it was difficult to count them. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

#### Michmash

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Beth Aven

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [chariot](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 13:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> The Philistines attacked the Israelites very strongly, and the Israelite soldiers realized that they were in a very bad situation. So many of the Israelite soldiers hid in caves and holes in the ground, or among the rocks, or in pits, or in wells. <sup>7</sup> Some of them crossed the Jordan River and went to the area where the region of the tribe of Gad and to the region of Gilead.

But Saul stayed at Gilgal. All the soldiers who were with him were shaking because they were so afraid.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> When the men of Israel saw that they were in trouble—for the people were distressed, the people hid in caves, in the underbrush, in rocks, in wells, and in pits. <sup>7</sup> Some of the Hebrews went over the Jordan to the land of Gad and Gilead. But Saul was still at Gilgal, and all the people followed him trembling.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The Philistines had gathered together to fight against Israel.

**the people**

This phrase refers to the nation of Israel.

**the people were distressed**

“the people worried greatly”

**followed him trembling**

The people were greatly afraid.

**translationWords**

- trouble, troubles, troubled
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- pit
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Gad
- Gilead



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 13:8-10

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Saul waited seven days, which was the number of days that Samuel had told him to wait for him. But Samuel did not come to Gilgal during that time, so many of the men in Saul's army began to leave him and run away. <sup>9</sup> So Saul said to the soldiers, "Bring to me an animal to be completely burned on the altar and one for the offering to enable us to continue to have fellowship with God." So the men did that. <sup>10</sup> And just as he was finished burning these offerings, Samuel arrived. Saul went to greet him.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> He waited seven days, the time Samuel had set. But Samuel did not come to Gilgal, and the people were scattering from Saul. <sup>9</sup> Saul said, "Bring me the burnt offering and the peace offerings." Then he offered the burnt offering. <sup>10</sup> As soon as he finished offering the burnt offering Samuel arrived. Saul went out to meet him and to greet him.

### translationNotes

#### the time Samuel had set

"according to the time Samuel had told them he would come"

#### the people were scattering from Saul

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the people had started to leave Saul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Then he offered the burnt offering

Only the line of Aaron was permitted to perform the burnt offering sacrifice to God.

### translationWords

- [Samuel](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [peace offering](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 13:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> Samuel saw what Saul had done, and he said to Saul, “Why have you done this?” Saul replied, “I saw that my men were leaving me and running away, and that you did not come here during the time that you said that you would come, and that the Philistine army was gathering together at Micmash.

<sup>12</sup> So I thought, ‘The Philistine army is going to attack us here at Gilgal, and I have not yet asked Yahweh to bless us.’ So I felt it was necessary to offer the burnt offerings to seek God’s blessings.”

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Then Samuel said, “What have you done?” Saul replied, “When I saw that the people were leaving me, and that you did not come within the set time, and that the Philistines had assembled at Michmash, <sup>12</sup> I said, ‘Now the Philistines will come down against me at Gilgal, and I have not sought the favor of Yahweh.’ So I forced myself to offer the burnt offering.”

### translationNotes

#### What have you done

Samuel was not really asking a question, but giving a rebuke to Saul. Saul sought to defend his actions even though they were wrong. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Michmash

Michmash is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:02](#).

### translationWords

- Samuel
- Saul (OT)
- Philistines
- Gilgal
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)

- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 13:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Samuel replied, "What you did was very foolish! You have not obeyed what Yahweh, your God, commanded about sacrifices. If you had obeyed him, God would have allowed you and your descendants to rule Israel for a long time. <sup>14</sup> But now because of what you have done, you will die, and after you die, none of your descendants will continue to rule. Yahweh is seeking a man to be king who be just the kind of person that he wants him to be, so that he can appoint him to be the leader of his people. Yahweh will do this because you have not obeyed what he commanded."

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then Samuel said to Saul, "You have acted foolishly. You have not kept the command of Yahweh your God that he gave you. For then Yahweh would have established your rule over Israel forever. <sup>14</sup> But now your rule will not continue. Yahweh has sought out a man after his own heart, and Yahweh has appointed him to be prince over his people, because you have not obeyed what he commanded you."

**translationNotes****You have not kept the command of Yahweh**

Saul was to wait for Samuel to come and sacrifice the burnt offering to God. He was not to perform the sacrifice himself.

**established your rule**

"set up your rule" or "authorized your rule" or "appointed your rule"

**your rule will not continue**

This is a litotes that can be stated in the positive form. AT: "your rule will end soon" (See: [Litotes](#))

**a man after his own heart**

Here "heart" represents Yahweh's desire or will. The phrase "man after his own heart" is an idiom that means to be a person who does what Yahweh desires. AT: "a man who is the kind of person he wants" or "a man who will obey him" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [fool](#), [fools](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#)

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Yahweh
- God
- ruler, rule
- Israel, Israelites
- forever
- heart, hearts
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- prince, princess
- obey, obedient, obedience

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 13:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then Samuel left Gilgal and went up to Gibeah. Saul stayed at Gilgal with his soldiers. There were only about six hundred of them left who did not run away.

<sup>16</sup> Saul and his son Jonathan and the soldiers who were with them went to the city of Geba in the area of the tribe of Benjamin and set up their tents there. The Philistine army set up their tents at Micmash.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then Samuel arose and went up from Gilgal to Gibeah of Benjamin.

Then Saul numbered the people who were present with him, about six hundred men. <sup>16</sup> Saul, his son Jonathan, and the people who were present with them, stayed in Geba of Benjamin. But the Philistines camped at Michmash.

**translationNotes****Samuel arose and went up**

This is an idiom for “Samuel left and went up.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**went up from Gilgal**

Gilgal is a city. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 7:15](#).

**Gibeah of Benjamin**

Gibeah is a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:26](#).

**six hundred men**

“600 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

**Geba of Benjamin**

Geba is a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:03](#).

**Philistines camped at Michmash**

Michmash is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:02](#).

**translationWords**

- [Gilgal](#)
- [Gibeah](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 13:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Three groups of Philistia soldiers soon left the place where their army was staying, and went and made raids on Israelite towns. One group went north toward the city of Ophrah in the region of Shual. <sup>18</sup> One group went west to the city of Beth Horon. The third group went toward the Israelite border, above Zeboim Valley, near the wilderness.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Raiders came from the camp of the Philistines in three groups. One group turned toward Ophrah, to the land of Shual. <sup>18</sup> Another group turned toward Beth Horon, and another group turned toward the border that overlooks the Valley of Zeboyim toward the wilderness.

**translationNotes****Raiders came**

Raiders are normally military people who attack enemy villages for their food and other supplies.

**Ophrah, to the land of Shual ... Beth Horon ... Valley of Zeboyim**

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 13:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> At that time, there were no men in Israel who were blacksmiths. The people of Philistia would not permit the Israelites to have men who could do that, because they were afraid that they would make iron swords and spears for the Hebrews to use. <sup>20</sup> So whenever the Israelites needed to sharpen the blades of their plows, or picks, or axes, or sickles, they were forced to take those things to a Philistine man who could sharpen those things. <sup>21</sup> They needed to pay about eight grams of silver for the sharpening of their plow blades and their picks. They needed to pay about four grams of silver for the sharpening of their axes or sickles, or to straighten the goads used to drive the oxen.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> No blacksmith could be found throughout all of Israel, because the Philistines said, “Otherwise the Hebrews would make swords or spears for themselves.” <sup>20</sup> But all the men of Israel used to go down to the Philistines, each to sharpen his plow points, his mattock, his ax, and his sickle. <sup>21</sup> The charge was two-thirds of a shekel for the plow points, and the mattocks, and one-third of a shekel for sharpening axes and for straightening the goads.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The narrative shifts to background information regarding blacksmiths in Israel.

**No blacksmith could be found**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one could find a blacksmith” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**blacksmith**

Here “blacksmith” refers to someone who made or sharpened metal tools and weapons.

**sharpen his plow points**

The words “plow points” refer to the point of a metal tool used for digging up the ground for planting crops.

**mattock ... ax ... sickle**

These are common garden tools.

**mattock**

A “mattock” is a broad-bladed axe, with a horizontal blade that is used for breaking up hard soil.

**sickle**

a curved blade for cutting grasses and grain stalks

**two-thirds of a shekel**

The shekel is divided into 3 parts, 2 of 3 parts are given. “2/3 of a shekel” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

**straightening the goads**

“taking out the bend and making the ox goad straight again so it could be used”

**translationWords**

- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [sword](#)
- [spear](#)
- [ax](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 13:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> So because the Israelites could not make swords and spears out of iron, at the time when the Israelites fought against the army of Philistia. Saul and Jonathan were the only Israelite men who had swords. None of the others had a sword. They had only bows and arrows and some kinds of other weapons.

<sup>23</sup> Before the battle started, some Philistine men went to the mountain pass outside Micmash to guard it.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> So on the day of battle, there were no swords or spears found in the hands of any of the soldiers who were with Saul and Jonathan; only Saul and his son Jonathan had them. <sup>23</sup> The garrison of the Philistines went out to the pass of Michmash.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The narrative continues.

**there were no swords or spears**

This explains in part why Saul's army was afraid. They did not have any weapons to fight.

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 13 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 14 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter completes the story of Jonathan's victory over the Philistines.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The battle against the Philistines

Jonathan took his armor bearer to where the Philistines were on the top of the hill. He said God could use a few people just as easily as he could use many people to win his battles. He and his armor bearer started killing the Philistines, and suddenly the Philistines began fighting each other or running away. The rest of Israel, who had hidden, came and chased the Philistines. Even though Israel had a king, God was still in control of the nation of Israel.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Special reference

The people of Israel often used the term “uncircumcised” to refer to Gentiles. Here it is used to mean the Philistines. (See: [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)).

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 14:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 14:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> One day, Jonathan said to the young man who carried his weapons, “Come with me; we will go over to where the Philistine soldiers have put up their tents.” So they went, but Jonathan did not tell his father what they were going to do.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> One day, Jonathan son of Saul said to his young armor bearer, “Come, let us go over to the Philistines’ garrison on the other side.” But he did not tell his father.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Jonathan begins his second raid on the Philistines’ army.

**his young armor bearer**

a teenage boy who is responsible for caring for his master’s weapons of war

**Philistines’ garrison**

This is an outpost staffed by the Philistine army.

**translationWords**

- [Jonathan](#)
- [son, sons](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [armor](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> On that day, Saul and the six hundred soldiers who were with him were sitting around a pomegranate tree at a place where the people threshed grain, near Gibeah. <sup>3</sup> Ahijah the priest was also there, one of those who wore the sacred apron. Ahijah son of Ahitub, who was a brother of Ichabod. Ichabod and Ahitub were the sons of Phinehas son of Eli, who had been Yahweh's priest at Shiloh.

Now no one knew that Jonathan had left the Israelite camp.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Saul was staying on the outskirts of Gibeah under the pomegranate tree that is in Migron. About six hundred men were with him, <sup>3</sup> including Ahijah son of Ahitub (Ichabod's brother) son of Phinehas son of Eli, the priest of Yahweh at Shiloh, who wore an ephod. The people did not know that Jonathan was gone.

**translationNotes****Gibeah**

This is the name of a hill north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**under the pomegranate tree**

a tree whose fruit is thick skinned, round, red and has many seeds to eat

**that is in Migron**

"Migron" is the name of a place north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**six hundred men were with him**

"600 men were with him" (See: [Numbers](#))

**son of Ahitub (Ichabod's brother)**

"Ahitub" and "Ichabod" are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Phinehas son of Eli**

Phinehas was one of the priests. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:03](#).

**translationWords**

- [Ahijah](#)
- [Phinehas](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Shiloh](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 14:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> Jonathan planned that he and the young man would go through a narrow pass to get to where the Philistine army was. The cliff on one side of the pass was named Bozez, and the other cliff was named Seneh. <sup>5</sup> One cliff faced north toward Michmash, and the cliff on the other side faced south toward the town of Geba.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> On each side of the pass through which Jonathan wanted to go in order to get to the Philistines' garrison, there was a rocky cliff on one side and another rocky cliff on the other side. One rocky cliff was called Bozez and the other rocky cliff was called Seneh. <sup>5</sup> One rocky cliff stood on the north in front of Michmash, and the other on the south in front of Geba.

### translationNotes

#### One rocky cliff was called Bozez

A “cliff” is a rocky height with a steep drop. The cliff was well-known and given the name “Bozez.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### the other rocky cliff was called Seneh

This was the name of the other cliff. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Michmash

“Michmash” was a town north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Geba

“Geba” was a town north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Jonathan said to the young man who carried his weapons, “Come with me. We will go to where those pagans have set up their tents. Perhaps Yahweh will help us. It does not matter whether we are only two men or many people; nothing can stop Yahweh from enabling us to defeat them.”

<sup>7</sup> The young man who was carrying Jonathan’s weapons said, “Do what you think is the best thing for us to do. I will be helping you.”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Jonathan said to his young armor bearer, “Come, let us cross over to the garrison of these uncircumcised fellows. It may be that Yahweh will work on our behalf, for nothing can stop Yahweh from saving by many or by few people.” <sup>7</sup> His armor bearer replied, “Do everything that is in your heart. Go ahead, see, I am with you, to obey all your commands.”

**translationNotes****his young armor bearer**

This was a teenage boy who was responsible for caring for his master’s weapons of war. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 14:1](#).

**uncircumcised fellows**

a derogatory term used for non-Jewish men

**work on our behalf**

“work for our support” or “help us”

**nothing can stop Yahweh from saving**

This double negative can be stated in positive form. AT: “Yahweh can save” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**by many or by few people**

These extremes also include everything in between. AT: “by any number of people” (See: [Merism](#))

**everything that is in your heart**

Here “heart” refers to Jonathan’s desires. AT: “everything that you desire to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 14:8-10

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Then Jonathan said, "Very well, come with me. We will cross the valley to where the Philistine army is, and allow them to see us. <sup>9</sup> If they then say to us, 'You two stay there until we come down to you,' we will stay there and not go up to them. <sup>10</sup> But if they say to us, 'Come up here,' that will show us that Yahweh will enable us to defeat them. Then we will go up and fight them."

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Then Jonathan said, "We will cross over to the men, and we will show ourselves to them. <sup>9</sup> If they say to us, 'Wait there until we come over to you'—then we will stay in our place and will not cross over to them. <sup>10</sup> But if they reply, 'Come over to us,' then we will cross over; because Yahweh has given them into our hand. This will be the sign to us."

### translationNotes

#### will not cross over to them

"will not go over to the other side of the valley where the Philistines are"

#### has given them into our hand

Here "hand" refers to the power to defeat them. AT: "will enable us to defeat them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### This will be the sign to us

"This will confirm that the Lord will be with us"

### translationWords

- [Jonathan](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> When the two of them crossed the valley, the Philistine soldiers saw them coming. They said, “Look! The Hebrews are crawling out of the holes in which they have been hiding!” <sup>12</sup> Then the Philistine soldiers who were closest to Jonathan and the young man who carried his weapons said, “Come up here, and we will teach you something about how to fight!”

Jonathan said to the young man who was with him, “Come behind me and climb up, because Yahweh is going to help us to defeat them!”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> So both of them revealed themselves to the garrison of the Philistines. The Philistines said, “Look, Hebrews are coming out of the holes where they have hidden themselves.” <sup>12</sup> Then the men of the garrison called to Jonathan and his armor bearer, and said, “Come up to us, and we will show you something.” Jonathan said to his armor bearer, “Follow after me, because Yahweh has given them into the hand of Israel.”

**translationNotes****revealed themselves to the garrison of the Philistines**

“allowed the Philistine soldiers to see them”

**the garrison**

the army camp

**coming out of the holes where they have hidden themselves**

The Philistines implied that the Hebrews had been hiding in holes in the ground like animals. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we will show you something**

This is an idiom that means “we will teach you a lesson.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**has given them into the hand of Israel**

Here “hand” refers to power to defeat the Philistines. AT: “will enable Israel to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [armor](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> So Jonathan climbed up, using his hands and his feet because it was very steep. The young man climbed up following him. As Jonathan climbed, he struck and killed many Philistine soldiers, and the young man who was with him killed many more as he followed behind Jonathan. <sup>14</sup> In that first battle the two of them killed about twenty Philistine soldiers in an area that was a half-hectare.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Jonathan climbed up on his hands and feet, and his armor bearer followed behind him. The Philistines were put to death before Jonathan, and his armor bearer put some to death behind him. <sup>14</sup> That first attack that Jonathan and his armor bearer made, killed about twenty men within an area of half an acre.

**translationNotes****Jonathan climbed up on his hands and feet**

He did this because it was very steep. This could be made explicit. AT: “So Jonathan climbed up, using his hands and his feet because it was very steep” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**The Philistines were put to death before Jonathan**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Jonathan killed the Philistines” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**his armor bearer put some to death behind him**

“Jonathan’s armor bearer followed him and also killed Philistine soldiers”

**translationWords**

- [death, die, dead](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:15****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Then all the other Philistine soldiers, the ones in the camp and the ones who had been attacking the Israelite towns, ones who were out in the field much closer, panicked. Then God caused the ground to shake, and they all became terrified afraid.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> There was a panic in the camp, in the field, and among the people. Even the garrison and the raiders panicked. The earth quaked, and there was a great panic.

**translationNotes****There was a panic in the camp, in the field, and among the people**

The abstract noun “panic” can be translated as a verb or as an adjective. AT: “The Philistine soldiers in the camp and in the field, and all the people with them, panicked” or “The Philistine soldiers in the camp and in the field, and all the people with them, became very afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the raiders**

the Philistines who were raiding Israelite cities

**The earth quaked**

It may be helpful to state the cause. AT: “God caused the ground to shake” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 14:16-17

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> Saul's lookouts were in the town of Gibeah in the region of the tribe of Benjamin. They saw that the soldiers of the Philistine army were running away in all directions. <sup>17</sup> Saul realized that some of his soldiers must have attacked the Philistine army. So he said to the soldiers who were with him, "Check to see if any of our men are not here." So they checked, and found out that Jonathan and the man who carried his weapons were gone.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> Then Saul's watchmen in Gibeah of Benjamin looked; the crowd of Philistine soldiers was dispersing, and they were going here and there. <sup>17</sup> Then Saul said to the people that were with him, "Count and see who is missing from us." When they had counted, Jonathan and his armor bearer were missing.

### translationNotes

#### Gibeah

This was the town where Saul was born. Translated "Gibeah" as in [1 Samuel 10:26](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### was dispersing ... going here and there

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that the soldiers were running away in every direction. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [watch, watchman](#)
- [Gibeah](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Jonathan](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> So Saul said to Ahijah the priest, “Bring the sacred chest here.” For the Israelite people had been carrying the sacred chest with them. <sup>19</sup> But while Saul was talking to the priest, he saw that the Philistine soldiers were becoming more panicked. So Saul said to Ahijah, “Do not bring the sacred chest at this time.”

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Saul said to Ahijah, “Bring the ark of God here,” for at that time it was with the people of Israel. <sup>19</sup> While Saul was talking to the priest, the commotion in the camp of the Philistines was continuing and increasing. Then Saul said to the priest, “Withdraw your hand.”

**translationNotes****Bring the ark of God here**

A few versions have “ephod” here instead of “ark of God.” (See: [Textual Variants](#))

**commotion**

“great noise and confusion”

**Withdraw your hand**

This seems to be an idiom that means “Stop what you are doing.” Saul did not want Ahijah to continue to use the ark to ask God for direction. AT: “Do not bring the sacred chest at this time” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Ahijah](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 14:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> Then Saul gathered his men and they went toward the battle. They found that the Philistine soldiers were so confused that they were striking each other with their swords. <sup>21</sup> Before that, some of the Hebrew men had deserted their army and gone to join with the Philistine army. But now those men revolted and joined with Saul and Jonathan and the other Israelite soldiers.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> Saul and all the people who were with him rallied and went into battle. Every Philistine's sword was against his fellow countrymen, and there was very great confusion. <sup>21</sup> Now those Hebrews who previously had been with the Philistines, and who had gone with them into the camp, even they joined with the Israelites that were with Saul and Jonathan.

### translationNotes

#### the people who were with him

the remnant of the Israelite army that remained with Saul

#### Every Philistine's sword was against his fellow countrymen

The swords are spoken of as if they were living people. AT: "The Philistine soldiers were striking each other with their swords" (See: [Personification](#))

### translationWords

- [sword](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 14:22-23

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> Some of the Israelite soldiers had previously run away and hidden in the mountains where the tribe of Ephraim lived. But when they heard that the Philistine soldiers were running away, they came down and joined the other Israelite soldiers and pursued the Philistine soldiers. <sup>23</sup> So Yahweh rescued the Israelites on that day. The Israelite soldiers continued to pursue their enemies beyond the town of Beth Aven.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> When all the men of Israel who had hidden themselves in the hills near Ephraim heard that the Philistines were fleeing, even they chased after them in battle. <sup>23</sup> So Yahweh saved Israel that day, and the battle passed beyond Beth Aven.

### translationNotes

#### the men of Israel who had hidden themselves in the hills

This does not refer to an ambush. These soldiers were hiding because they were afraid of the Philistines. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “the Israelite soldiers who were afraid and had hidden themselves in the hills” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Beth Aven

This is a place in Israel. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:05](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [Ephraim](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:24-26****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Before Saul's soldiers went to the battle, Saul declared to them solemnly, "I do not want any of you to eat any food before this evening, before we have defeated all our enemies. If anyone eats anything, Yahweh will curse because they were very hungry.

<sup>25</sup> The Israelite army went into the forest, and they found honeycombs on the ground, but they did not eat any honey. <sup>26</sup> They were afraid to eat any, because they had solemnly promised that they would not eat any food.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> That day the men of Israel were distressed because Saul had put the people under an oath and said, "Cursed be the man that eats any food until evening and I am avenged on my enemies." So none of the troops tasted food. <sup>25</sup> Then all the people entered the forest and there was honey upon the ground. <sup>26</sup> When the people entered into the forest, the honey flowed, but no one put his hand to his mouth for the people feared the oath.

**translationNotes****So none of the troops tasted food**

It was understood by the troops that no refreshment was permitted under Saul's oath.

**the people entered the forest**

The Philistine soldiers fled through the forests and the Israelite soldiers followed them there.

**the honey flowed**

This is an exaggeration to emphasize how much honey there was in the forest. AT: "there was a lot of honey everywhere" (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**no one put his hand to his mouth**

Here putting one's "hand to his mouth" is a metonymy that means to eat. AT: "no one ate any" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the people feared the oath**

The people were not afraid of the oath, but of the punishment that was associated with breaking the oath. AT: "the people were afraid of what Saul would do to them if they broke his oath" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [curse, cursed, curses, cursing](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:27-28****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> But Jonathan did not hear that his father had bound the people by a solemn promise. Jonathan had left the camp very early in the morning and when he saw a honeycomb, he dipped the end of his walking stick into it and ate some honey. After he ate the honey, he felt stronger.

<sup>28</sup> But one of the Israelite soldiers saw him and said to him, “Your father solemnly declared to us that Yahweh would curse anyone who ate any food today. So now we are very tired and weak from being hungry because we obeyed him.”

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> But Jonathan had not heard that his father had bound the people with an oath. He reached out the tip of the staff that was in his hand and dipped it in the honeycomb. He raised his hand to his mouth, and his eyes brightened. <sup>28</sup> Then one of the people, answered, “Your father strictly charged the people with an oath, by saying, ‘Cursed be the man that eats food on this day,’ even though the people are weak from hunger.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Jonathan learns of his father’s oath.

**bound the people with an oath**

Here the obligation to obey an oath is spoken of as if the people were bound with ropes. AT: “commanded that the people obey his oath” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**He raised his hand to his mouth**

Here “hand to his mouth” is a metonymy that means to eat. AT: “He ate some honey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**his eyes brightened**

This idiom means that he was strengthened. AT: “he regained his strength” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Jonathan](#)
- [staff](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:29-30****UDB:**

<sup>29</sup> Jonathan exclaimed, "My father had caused trouble for all of us! See how refreshed I am after eating a little honey! <sup>30</sup> If he had permitted all of us to eat from the food we took from our enemies while we were pursuing them, we would have been able to kill many more of their soldiers!"

**ULB:**

<sup>29</sup> Then Jonathan said, "My father has made trouble for the land. See how my eyes have become brightened because I tasted a little of this honey. <sup>30</sup> How much better if the people had eaten freely today of the plunder from their enemies that they found? Because now the slaughter has not been great among the Philistines."

**translationNotes****for the land**

This is a metonymy that represents the nation of Israel. AT: "for Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**my eyes have become brightened**

This idiom means that he was strengthened. AT: "I regained my strength" (See: [Idiom](#))

**How much better if the people ... that they found?**

Jonathan uses this hypothetical question to state that the people should have been allowed to eat. This can be a statement. AT: "Our victory would have been better if the people had eaten freely today of the plunder that they took from their enemies." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**plunder**

This word refers to the things the people had taken from the battle with their enemy.

**Because now the slaughter has not been great**

Because the troops were not able to eat during the battle, as the day progressed, they became weaker. Because of this, they were not able to kill as many of the Philistines.

**translationWords**

- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 14:31-32

### UDB:

<sup>31</sup> The Israelites pursued and killed Philistine soldiers all that day, from Micmash town west to Aijalon. But they continued to become more weak from being hungry. <sup>32</sup> They had taken many sheep and cattle that the Philistine soldiers had abandoned. Now, because they were extremely hungry, they butchered some of those animals and ate the meat without draining the blood from the animals.

### ULB:

<sup>31</sup> They attacked the Philistines that day from Michmash to Aijalon. The people were very weary. <sup>32</sup> The people rushed greedily on the plunder and took sheep, oxen and calves, and killed them on the ground. The people ate them with the blood.

## translationNotes

### General Information:

Jonathan's words lead the army to sin against God in their great hunger.

### Michmash

This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:02](#).

### Aijalon

"Aijalon" is a place in Zebulun in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### The people

This refers to the Israelites.

### ate them with the blood

The were so hungry they did not drain the blood first before eating. This was a violation of the Law which was given to Moses for the nation of Israel. This can be made explicit. AT: "ate them without draining the blood first as required by the law" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [blood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:33-34****UDB:**

<sup>33</sup> One of the soldiers told Saul, “Look! The men are sinning against Yahweh by eating meat that still has blood in it!”

Saul replied to the men who were near him, “They have disobeyed Yahweh! Roll a large stone over here!”

<sup>34</sup> After they did that, he said to those men, “Go and tell all the soldiers that each of them must bring an ox or a sheep to me, and kill it here on this stone, and drain the blood before he eats any of the meat. They should not sin against Yahweh by eating meat from some animal without draining its blood.” So that night all the soldiers brought animals and slaughtered them there. Then Saul built an altar to worship Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>33</sup> Then they told Saul, “Look, the people are sinning against Yahweh by eating with the blood.” Saul said, “You have acted unfaithfully. Now, roll a big stone here to me.” <sup>34</sup> Saul said, “Go out among the people, and tell them, ‘Let every man bring his ox and his sheep, kill them here, and eat. Do not sin against Yahweh by eating with the blood.’” So each of the people brought his own ox with him that night and killed it there.

**translationNotes****by eating with the blood**

This was a violation of the Law which was given to Moses for the nation of Israel. This can be made explicit. AT: “by eating meat without draining the blood first as required by the law” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**You have acted unfaithfully**

Saul is accusing his whole army of acting unfaithfully though this is a generalization because not every soldier acted unfaithfully. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**Now, roll a big stone here to me**

The stone would hold the animals up and make it easier to drain the blood from them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**kill them here, and eat**

This would allow Saul to observe if the blood was properly drained from the animals.

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [blood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:35****UDB:**

<sup>35</sup> That was the first time that he built an altar for Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>35</sup> Saul built an altar to Yahweh, which was the first altar that he built to Yahweh.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Saul had told the people to bring their animals to a big stone to kill and eat.

**Saul built an altar to Yahweh**

It is unclear if Saul built this altar with the large stone that the people brought to him in [1 Samuel 14:33](#).

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 14:36-37****UDB:**

<sup>36</sup> Then Saul said to the Israelite soldiers, “Let us chase the Philistine soldiers tonight. We can attack them all night. We will not allow any of them to escape alive.”

The Israelite soldiers answered, “We will do whatever you think is the best thing for us to do.”

But the priest said, “We should ask Yahweh what he thinks we should do.” <sup>37</sup> So Saul asked God, “Should we chase the Philistine soldiers? Will you enable us to defeat them?” But God did not answer Saul that day.

**ULB:**

<sup>36</sup> Then Saul said, “Let us pursue the Philistines by night and plunder them until morning; let us not leave one of them alive.” They replied, “Do whatever seems good to you.” But the priest said, “Let us approach God here.” <sup>37</sup> Saul asked God, “Should I pursue the Philistines? Will you give them into the hand of Israel?” But God did not answer him that day.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Saul seeks to continue the fight against the Philistines.

**let us not leave one of them alive**

This is stated in a negative way to emphasize the slaughter. It can be stated in positive form. AT: “let us kill every one of them” (See: [Litotes](#))

**Do whatever seems good to you**

Saul had the support of his army to continue the fight.

**Let us approach God here**

Here “approaching God” is associated with asking him counsel. AT: “Let us ask God what we should do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**give them into the hand of Israel**

Here “hand” refers to the power to defeat them. AT: “enable us to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**But God did not answer him that day**

This implies that God was not willing to help Saul.

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:38-39****UDB:**

<sup>38</sup> Then Saul summoned all the leaders of his army. He said to them, "I am sure that God has not answered me because someone has sinned. We must find out what sin someone has committed. <sup>39</sup> Yahweh has rescued us from the Philistine army. Just as surely as Yahweh is alive, whoever has sinned must be executed. Even if it is my son Jonathan who has sinned, he must be executed." His men knew who was guilty, but none of them said anything to Saul.

**ULB:**

<sup>38</sup> Then Saul said, "Come here, all you leaders of the people; learn and see how this sin has happened today. <sup>39</sup> For, as Yahweh lives, who saves Israel, even if it is in Jonathan my son, he will surely die." But none of the men among all the people answered him.

**translationNotes****the people**

This refers to the Israelites.

**learn and see how this sin has happened**

"find who sinned"

**even if it is in Jonathan my son, he will surely die**

Saul stated this as a hypothetical situation because he did not believe that Jonathan was guilty. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**But none of the men among all the people answered him**

The people remained silent because most of them knew that Jonathan had broken Saul's oath. This can be stated explicitly. AT: "His men knew who was guilty, but none of them said anything to Saul" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**translationWords**

- Yahweh
- save, saves, saved, safe
- Jonathan
- death, die, dead

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:40-42****UDB:**

<sup>40</sup> Then Saul said to all the Israelite soldiers, “You stand on one side. My son Jonathan and I will stand on the other side.”

His men replied, “Do whatever you think is best.” <sup>41</sup> Then Saul prayed to Yahweh, the Israelites’ God, “Tell me who is guilty and who is not guilty.” Then the priest cast lots, and they indicated that it was either Jonathan or Saul who was the guilty one, and that the other men were not guilty. <sup>42</sup> Then Saul said to the priest, “Throw the stones again to indicate which of us two is guilty.” So he did, and the stones indicated that Jonathan was the guilty one.

**ULB:**

<sup>40</sup> Then he said to all Israel, “You must stand on one side, and I and Jonathan my son will be on the other.” The people said to Saul, “Do what seems good to you.” <sup>41</sup> Saul said, “Yahweh, God of Israel! If this sin has been committed by me or by my son Jonathan, then, Yahweh, God of Israel, give the Urim. But if this sin has been committed by your people Israel, give the Thummim.” <sup>[1]</sup> Then Jonathan and Saul were taken by lot, but the army was exonerated. <sup>42</sup> Then Saul said, “Cast lots between me and Jonathan my son.” Then Jonathan was taken by lot.

---

14:41 <sup>[1]</sup>The ULB is following the LXX in the quotation. The Hebrew text has: “Give me the right answer.”

**translationNotes****Then he said to all Israel**

This was a generalization since only the Israelite soldiers were present. AT: “Then he said to the Israelite soldiers who were there” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**give the Thummim**

The Israelites at that time used special stones called the Urim and the Thummim to receive direction from God. AT: “Show us by means of the Thummim” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Thummim**

This is a borrowed word from the original language. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

**Jonathan and Saul were taken by lot, but the army was exonerated**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The lots indicated that either Jonathan or Saul was guilty, but the army was not guilty” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Then Jonathan was taken by lot**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Then the lot indicated that Jonathan was guilty” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [lots, casting lots](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:43-44****UDB:**

<sup>43</sup> Then Saul said to Jonathan, “Tell me what you have done that was wrong.”

Jonathan replied, “I ate a little bit of honey. It was only a little bit that was on the end of my stick. Do I deserve to be executed because of doing that?” <sup>44</sup> Saul replied, “Yes, you must be executed! I hope that God will strike me and kill me if you are not executed for having done that!”

**ULB:**

<sup>43</sup> Then Saul said to Jonathan, “Tell me what you have done.” Jonathan told him, “I tasted a little honey with the end of the rod that was in my hand. Here I am; I will die.” <sup>44</sup> Saul said, “God do so and more also to me, if you do not die, Jonathan.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The lots had just showed that Jonathan had sinned.

**Tell me what you have done**

“Tell me how you have sinned” or “Tell me what you have done that was wrong”

**I will die**

Possible meanings are 1) “I am willing to die” or 2) “do I deserve to be executed because of doing that?”

**God do so and more also to me, if you do not die, Jonathan**

Saul makes a second foolish oath in less than one day. AT: “May God kill me if I do not kill you, Jonathan”

**translationWords**

- Saul (OT)
- rod
- God

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 14:45-46****UDB:**

<sup>45</sup> But the Israelite soldiers said to Saul, “Jonathan has won a great victory for all us Israelites. Should he be executed for eating some honey ? Certainly not! Just as surely as Yahweh lives, we will not allow you to injure him in any manner, because today God helped Jonathan to kill many soldiers of the Philistine army!”

So by saying that the Israelite soldiers rescued Jonathan, and he was not executed. <sup>46</sup> Then Saul ordered his soldiers to stop pursuing the Philistine army, so the Philistine soldiers returned to their homes.

**ULB:**

<sup>45</sup> Then the people said to Saul, “Should Jonathan die, who has accomplished this great victory for Israel? Far from it! As Yahweh lives, not one hair of his head will fall to the ground, for he has worked with God today.” So the people rescued Jonathan so that he did not die. <sup>46</sup> Then Saul stopped pursuing the Philistines, and the Philistines went to their own place.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

The Army defends and protects Jonathan from Saul.

**Should Jonathan die, who has accomplished this great victory for Israel? Far from it!**

The people scold Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “Jonathan has just accomplished this great victory for Israel. He should surely not die.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**As Yahweh lives**

The people were expressing their certainty that they would not let anything happen to Jonathan.

**not one hair of his head will fall to the ground**

This exaggeration shows how the people of Israel would protect Jonathan and keep him safe. This litotes can be stated in a positive form. AT: “we will protect him from any harm” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#) and [Litotes](#))

**translationWords**

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:47-48****UDB:**

<sup>47</sup> After Saul became the ruler, he fought against enemies on every side. He fought against Moab, the Ammonites, Edom, the kings of Zobah, and the Philistines. Wherever the Israelite army fought, they defeated their enemies. <sup>48</sup> Saul's army fought bravely and defeated the very tall descendants of Amalek. His army rescued the Israelites from those who had plundered them.

**ULB:**

<sup>47</sup> When Saul began to rule over Israel, he fought against all his enemies on every side. He fought against Moab, the Ammonites, Edom, the kings of Zobah, and the Philistines. Wherever he turned, he inflicted punishment on them. <sup>48</sup> He acted with great courage and defeated the Amalekites. He rescued Israel out of the hands of those who plundered them.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

For a brief period Saul served with great courage in defeating Israel's enemies.

**Israel**

This is a metonymy that represents the people of Israel. AT: "the Israelites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Moab**

This refers to the people of Moab. AT: "the Moabites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Edom**

This refers to the people of Edom. AT: "the Edomites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Wherever he turned**

"Wherever he sent his army"

**out of the hands**

The word "hand" represents control. AT: "out of the control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:49-51****UDB:**

<sup>49</sup> Saul's sons were Jonathan, Ishbosheth, and Malki-Shua. He also had two daughters, Merab and her younger sister Michal. <sup>50</sup> Saul's wife was Ahinoam, the daughter of Ahimaaz. The commander of Saul's army was Abner son of Saul's uncle Ner. <sup>51</sup> Saul's father Kish and Abner's father Ner were both sons of Abiel.

**ULB:**

<sup>49</sup> The sons of Saul were Jonathan, Ishvi, and Malki-Shua. The names of his two daughters were Merab, the firstborn, and Michal, the younger. <sup>50</sup> The name of Saul's wife was Ahinoam; she was the daughter of Ahimaaz. The name of the captain of his army was Abner son of Ner, Saul's uncle. <sup>51</sup> Kish was Saul's father; and Ner, the father of Abner, was the son of Abiel.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

This is background information on Saul's family.

**Ishvi ... Malki-Shua**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Merab ... Michal**

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Ahinoam ... Ahimaaz**

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Abner ... Ner ... Kish ... Abiel**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [name, names, named](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [Abner](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 14:52****UDB:**

<sup>52</sup> All the time that Saul was alive, his army fought against the Philistine army. And whenever Saul saw a young man who was brave and strong, he forced him to join his army.

**ULB:**

<sup>52</sup> There was hard fighting against the Philistines all the days of Saul. When Saul saw any mighty man, or any valiant man, he attached him to himself.

**translationNotes****all the days of Saul**

“all of Saul’s life”

**he attached him to himself**

“he forced him to join his army”

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [mighty, might](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 14 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 15 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the end of the section on Saul and Samuel (8-15).

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God wants total obedience

Samuel told Saul that God wanted him to completely destroy the Amalekite people and animals. Saul fought the Amalekites and killed all the people except the king. He destroyed the animals that were not very good but saved the best animals. Saul told Samuel he had obeyed God's command. Samuel asked him about the animals Saul had. Saul said he had saved them for a sacrifice to God. God said that obedience was better than sacrifice. Because Saul had disobeyed him, God had chosen someone else to become king.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idiom

"He has turned back from following me" is an idiom meaning "he has stopped obeying me." (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Rhetorical questions

When Saul insisted that he had obeyed God, Samuel rebuked him with these rhetorical questions: "What then is this bleating of sheep in my ears, and the lowing of the oxen that I hear?"; "Though you are little in your own sight, were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel?"; "Why then did you not obey the voice of Yahweh, but instead you seized the booty and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh?"; and "Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 15:01 Notes](#)



**1 Samuel 15:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> One day Samuel said to Saul, "Yahweh sent me to appoint you to be the king of the Israelite people. So now listen to this message from Yahweh: <sup>2</sup> Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, has declared this: 'I am going to punish the descendants of Amalek for attacking the Israelite people after the Israelites left Egypt. <sup>3</sup> So now go with your army and attack the Amalek people group. Destroy them completely—destroy them and everything that belongs to them—the men and women, their children and infants, their cattle and sheep and camels and donkeys. Do not spare any of them!'"

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Samuel said to Saul, "Yahweh sent me to anoint you king over his people Israel. Now listen to the words of Yahweh. <sup>2</sup> This is what Yahweh of hosts says, 'I have noted what Amalek did to Israel in opposing them on the way, when they came up from Egypt. <sup>3</sup> Now go and attack Amalek and completely destroy all that they have. Do not spare them, but kill both man and woman, child and infant, ox and sheep, camel and donkey.'"

**translationNotes****the words of Yahweh**

"the message of Yahweh"

**completely destroy all that they have ... kill both man and woman, child and infant, ox and sheep, camel and donkey**

These two phrases mean the same thing. The second phrase gives specific details about what they are to destroy completely. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Do not spare them**

This negative statement emphasizes the completeness of the destruction. (See: [Litotes](#))

**translationWords**

- Samuel
- Saul (OT)
- Yahweh
- send, send out, sent
- anoint, anointed, anointing

- king
- people of God, my people
- Israel, Israelites
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts
- Amalek, Amalekite
- ox, oxen
- sheep, ram, ewe
- camel
- donkey, mule

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 15:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> So Saul summoned the army, and they gathered at Telaim town. There were 200,000 soldiers. Ten thousand of them were from Judah, and the others were from the other Israelite tribes. <sup>5</sup> Then Saul went with his army to a town where some of the Amalek people group lived. The army prepared to attack them suddenly by hiding in the valley.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> Saul summoned the people and numbered them at the city of Telaim—two hundred thousand men on foot, and ten thousand men of Judah. <sup>5</sup> Then Saul came to the city of Amalek and waited in the valley.

### translationNotes

#### the people

“the army”

#### numbered them

“counted them”

#### city of Telaim

a city in southern Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### two hundred thousand men on foot, and ten thousand men of Judah

“200,000 men on foot, and 10,000 men of Judah” (See: [Numbers](#))

### translationWords

- [Judah](#)
- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 15:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Then Saul sent this message to the Kenite people group who lived in that area: “You acted kindly toward all our Israelite ancestors when they left Egypt. But we are going to kill all of the Amalek people group, because they opposed our ancestors. So move away from where the Amalek people group live. If you do not move away, you will be killed when they are killed.” So when the Kenite people group heard that, they immediately left that area.

<sup>7</sup> Then Saul’s army slaughtered the Amalek people group, from the town of Havilah in the east to the town of Shur in the west. Shur was at the border between Israel and Egypt.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> Then Saul said to the Kenites, “Go, depart, come out from among the Amalekites, so I do not destroy you along with them. For you showed kindness to all the people of Israel, when they came from Egypt.” So the Kenites moved away from the Amalekites. <sup>7</sup> Then Saul attacked the Amalekites, from Havilah as far as Shur, which is east of Egypt.

### translationNotes

#### Kenites

a nomad people group that had always been friendly to the nation of Israel (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Havilah ... Shur

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- Amalek, Amalekite
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Egypt, Egyptian

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Saul's army captured Agag, the king of the Amalek people group, but they killed everyone else.  
<sup>9</sup> They not only spared Agag, but they also took the best sheep and goats and cattle. They took everything that was good. They destroyed only the animals that they considered to be worthless.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then he took Agag the king of the Amalekites alive; he completely destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword. <sup>9</sup> But Saul and the people spared Agag, as well as the best of the sheep, oxen, fattened calves, and the lambs. Everything that was good, they did not destroy. But they completely destroyed anything that was despised and worthless.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Yahweh had told Saul to destroy everything, but here Saul disobeys Yahweh's command.

**he took Agag**

Here Saul represents himself accompanied by his army. AT: "Saul and his army took Agag" or "Saul and his army captured Agag" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**he completely destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword**

The "edge of the sword" represents the swords and other weapons that soldiers used in battle. Here Saul represents himself accompanied by his army. AT: "they completely destroyed all of the people with their swords" or "they killed all of the people with their swords" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Saul ... spared Agag**

Saul disobeyed God by letting Agag live.

**as well as the best of the sheep**

Saul disobeyed God by keeping the best of the livestock.

**translationWords**

- Amalek, Amalekite
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- sword
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- lamb, Lamb of God
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Then Yahweh said to Samuel, <sup>11</sup> “I am sorry that I appointed Saul to be your king, because he has stopped worshiping me. He has not obeyed what I commanded him to do.” Samuel was very disturbed when he heard that, and he cried out to Yahweh all that night.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to Samuel, saying, <sup>11</sup> “It grieves me that I have made Saul king, for he has turned back from following me and has not performed my commandments.” Samuel was angry; he cried out to Yahweh all night.

**translationNotes****the word of Yahweh came to Samuel, saying,**

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. AT: “Yahweh gave a message to Samuel. He said,” or “Yahweh spoke this message to Samuel.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**It grieves me**

“I am sorry”

**he has turned back from following me**

Saul not obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if Saul had physically turned away from walking behind God. AT: “he has stopped following me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**has not performed my commandments**

“has not obeyed what I commanded him to do.” Saul was to completely destroy everything and everyone. God had placed a ban on the Amalekites. But Saul permitted some livestock to live.

**Samuel was angry**

Possible meanings are 1) Samuel was angry with Saul for his disobedience or 2) Samuel was disturbed.

**translationWords**

- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 15:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Early the next morning, Samuel got up and went to talk with Saul. But someone told Samuel, “Saul went to the city of Carmel, where he has set up a monument to honor himself. Now he has left there and gone down to Gilgal.”

<sup>13</sup> When Samuel arrived at Gilgal and came to Saul, Saul said, “I wish that Yahweh may bless you! I have obeyed what Yahweh told me to do.”

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Samuel got up early to meet Saul in the morning. Samuel was told, “Saul came to Carmel and he set up a monument to himself, then turned and proceeded on down to Gilgal.” <sup>13</sup> Then Samuel came to Saul, and Saul said to him, “Blessed are you by Yahweh! I have fulfilled the command of Yahweh.”

**translationNotes****Samuel was told**

“Someone told Samuel”

**he set up a monument to himself**

Saul was full of pride.

**down to Gilgal**

Gilgal was lower in elevation than Carmel.

**I have fulfilled the command of Yahweh**

It is not clear if Saul understood that he had not fully obeyed God’s command to completely destroy the Amalekites.

**translationWords**

- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- Gilgal
- bless, blessed, blessing
- fulfill, fulfilled
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> But Samuel replied, “If that is true, why is it that I hear cattle mooing and I hear sheep bleating?”

<sup>15</sup> Saul replied, “The soldiers took them from the Amalek people group. They saved the best sheep and cattle, in order to offer them as sacrifices to Yahweh, your God. But we have completely destroyed all the others.”

<sup>16</sup> Samuel said to Saul, “Stop talking! Allow me to tell you what Yahweh said to me last night.”

Saul replied, “Tell me what he said.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Samuel said, “What then is this bleating of sheep in my ears, and the lowing of the oxen that I hear?” <sup>15</sup> Saul replied, “They have brought them from the Amalekites. For the people spared the best of the sheep and oxen, to sacrifice to Yahweh your God. The rest we have completely destroyed.” <sup>16</sup> Then Samuel said to Saul, “Wait, and I will tell you what Yahweh has said to me tonight.” Saul said to him, “Speak!”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Samuel questions why Saul did not utterly destroyed the Amalekites.

**bleating of sheep ... lowing of the oxen**

These are the sounds that these animals make. Your language may have different terms for these.

**in my ears ... that I hear**

These two phrases mean the same thing. Here “in my ears” refers to hearing. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**They have brought ... the people spared**

The word “they” and the phrase “the people” here both represent Saul’s army. Saul is blaming the people rather than himself.

**to sacrifice to Yahweh your God**

Saul is arguing that animals for sacrifice were an exception to Yahweh’s command to destroy everything.

### **Yahweh your God**

Saul here does not describe Samuel's God as his own God.

### **translationWords**

- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Samuel said, "Previously you did not think that you were important. But now you have become the leader of the tribes of Israel. Yahweh appointed you to be their king. <sup>18</sup> And Yahweh sent you to do something for him. He said to you, 'Go and get rid of all those sinful people, the Amalek people group. Attack them and kill all of them.' <sup>19</sup> So why did you not obey Yahweh? Why did you take the plunder for yourself instead of destroying it? You have done what Yahweh says is evil, and he knows it!"

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Samuel said, "Though you are little in your own sight, were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel? Then Yahweh anointed you king over Israel, <sup>18</sup> and Yahweh sent you on your way and said, 'Go and completely destroy the sinners, the Amalekites, and fight against them until they are destroyed.' <sup>19</sup> Why did you not obey the voice of Yahweh, but instead you seized the booty and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh?"

**translationNotes****in your own sight**

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. AT: "in your own opinion" or "in your judgment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel?**

Samuel uses this question to remind Saul of how much God had given him. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "Yahweh made you the ruler of the tribes of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Why did you not obey ... Yahweh?**

Samuel asks this question to rebuke Saul for disobeying Yahweh. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should have obeyed ... Yahweh!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the voice of Yahweh**

Here "voice" refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. AT: "the things that Yahweh commanded" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**but instead you seized the booty**

Samuel is accusing Saul of direct disobedience. Yahweh commanded Saul to completely destroy everything belonging to the Amalekites, and not to bring anything back to camp.

**the booty**

“the plunder” or “the possessions you took from the enemy”

**what was evil in the sight of Yahweh**

Here “sight” refers to Yahweh’s thoughts or opinion. AT: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” or “what is evil in Yahweh’s judgement” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [head](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Saul replied to Samuel, "I did what Yahweh sent me to do! I brought back King Agag, but we killed everyone else! <sup>21</sup> My men brought back only the best sheep and cattle and other things, in order to sacrifice them to Yahweh your God here at Gilgal."

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then Saul said to Samuel, "I have indeed obeyed the voice of Yahweh, and have gone on the way that Yahweh sent me. I have captured Agag, the king of Amalek, and have completely destroyed the Amalekites. <sup>21</sup> But the people took some of the booty—sheep and oxen, the best of the things devoted to destruction, to sacrifice to Yahweh your God in Gilgal."

**translationNotes****I have indeed obeyed the voice of Yahweh**

This is an emphatic statement. It is unclear if Saul thought this was true, or if he was simply making excuses for his sin.

**the voice of Yahweh**

Here "voice" refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. AT: "the things that Yahweh commanded" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Agag**

This is the name of the king of the Amalekites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**But the people took**

This appears to be shifting the blame to the people.

**things devoted to destruction**

"animals that Yahweh commanded them to destroy"

**Gilgal**

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 15:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> But Samuel replied,

”Which do you think pleases Yahweh more, animals that are completely burned on the altar and other sacrifices,

or people obeying him ?

It is better to obey Yahweh than to offer sacrifices to him.

It is better to pay attention to what he says than to burn the fat of rams, which God said should be sacrificed to him.

<sup>23</sup> To rebel against God is as sinful as doing sorcery,

and being stubborn is as sinful as worshiping idols.

So, because you disobeyed what Yahweh told you to do,

he has declared that you will no longer be king.”

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Samuel replied, ”Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh? Obedience is better than sacrifice, and to listen is better than the fat of rams. <sup>23</sup> For rebellion is like the sin of divination, and stubbornness is like wickedness and iniquity. Because you have rejected the word of Yahweh, he has also rejected you from being king.”

**translationNotes****Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh?**

Samuel asks this question to emphasize that obedience is much more important than sacrifice. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “Yahweh does not delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as much as in obeying his voice!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the voice of Yahweh**

Here “voice” refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. AT: “the things that Yahweh commanded” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Obedience is better than sacrifice**

God wanted Saul’s complete obedience in the destruction of the Amalekites. Nothing in the land was fit for sacrifice.

**better than the fat of rams**

“better than to sacrifice the fat of rams as a burnt offering”

**rebellion is like the sin of divination**

The abstract noun “rebellion” can be translated with a verb. AT: “to rebel is as sinful as practicing divination” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**stubbornness is like wickedness and iniquity**

The abstract noun “stubbornness” can be translated with a verb and the abstract noun “wickedness” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “being stubborn is as bad as doing wicked things and practicing iniquity” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the word of Yahweh**

“Yahweh’s message” or “Yahweh’s command”

**rejected you from being king**

“decided that you will no longer be king”

**translationWords**

- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [rebel, rebellious, rebellion](#)
- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [reject](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Then Saul said to Samuel, "Yes, I have sinned. I disobeyed what you told me to do, which is what Yahweh commanded. I did that because I was afraid of what my men would say if I did not do what they wanted. So I did what they demanded. <sup>25</sup> But now, please forgive me for having sinned. And come back with me to where the people are in order that I may worship Yahweh."

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> Then Saul said to Samuel, "I have sinned; for I have broken Yahweh's commandment and your words, because I was afraid of the people and obeyed their voice. <sup>25</sup> Now, please pardon my sin, and return with me so that I may worship Yahweh."

**translationNotes****I have broken Yahweh's commandment**

This is an idiom that means he had disobeyed the commandment. AT: "I have disobeyed what Yahweh commanded" (See: [Idiom](#))

**because I was afraid of the people**

This is the reason Saul gives for not obeying God. AT: "because I was afraid of the soldiers"

**obeyed their voice**

Here "voice" refers to what the soldiers asked Saul to do. AT: "did what they asked" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**return with me**

Saul and Samuel were apparently talking in private away from the other people.

**translationWords**

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [pardon](#)
- [worship](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> But Samuel replied, “No, I will not go back with you. You have rejected what Yahweh commanded you to do. So he has rejected you, and declared that you will no longer be the king of Israel. So I do not want to talk anymore with you, either.”

<sup>27</sup> As Samuel turned to leave, Saul tried to stop him by grabbing the edge of Samuel’s robe, and it tore.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Samuel said to Saul, “I will not go back with you; for you have rejected the word of Yahweh, and Yahweh has rejected you from being king over Israel.” <sup>27</sup> As Samuel turned to leave, Saul took hold of the hem of his robe, and it tore.

**translationNotes****for you have rejected the word of Yahweh**

Samuel made it clear that Saul understood that he was disobeying God at the time when he spared the best animals and did not kill Agag.

**rejected the word of Yahweh**

“rejected Yahweh’s command” or “rejected Yahweh’s message.” This means that he refused to obey Yahweh’s command. AT: “refused to obey Yahweh’s command” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Saul took hold of the hem of his robe**

Saul did this to try to stop Samuel from leaving. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “Saul tried to stop him by grabbing the edge of Samuel’s robe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the hem of his robe**

“the edge of his robe” or “the fringe of his robe”

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [king](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [robe](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> Samuel said to him, "Today Yahweh has torn away from you the kingdom of Israel. He will appoint someone else to be king, someone who is a better man than you are. <sup>29</sup> And since the one who is the glorious God of the Israelite people does not lie, he will not change his mind. Humans sometimes change their minds, but God does not do that, because he is not a human."

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> Samuel said to him, "Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel from you today and has given it to a neighbor of yours, one who is better than you. <sup>29</sup> Also, the Strength of Israel will not lie nor change his mind; for he is not a man, that he should change his mind."

**translationNotes****Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel**

This refers back to when Saul tore Samuel's robe in [1 Samuel 15:27](#). This can be made explicit. AT: "Just as you tore my robe, Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**has given it to a neighbor of yours, one who is better than you**

God had already decided who would be the next king after Saul.

**the Strength of Israel**

Here Yahweh is referred to as "the Strength of Israel" because he gives strength to the Israelites. AT: "Yahweh, who is the strength of Israel" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**will not lie nor change his mind**

This is stated as a negative to emphasize that God tells the truth. This can be stated in positive form. AT: "will always tell the truth and do what he says" (See: [Litotes](#))

**his mind**

This refers to his thoughts and decisions. AT: "what he has decided to do" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**he is not a man, that he should change his mind**

This is stated as a negative to emphasize that God is trustworthy. This can be stated in positive form. AT: "he is God, and will do what he says he will do" (See: [Litotes](#))

**translationWords**

- [kingdom](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [mind](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 15:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> Then Saul pleaded again. He said, “I know that I have sinned. But please honor me in front of the leaders of the Israelite people and in front of all the other Israelite people by coming back to them with me in order that I may worship Yahweh your God.” <sup>31</sup> So Samuel finally agreed to do that, and they went together back to where the people were, and Saul worshiped Yahweh there.

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> Then Saul said, “I have sinned. But please honor me now before the elders of my people and before Israel. Turn again with me, that I may worship Yahweh your God.” <sup>31</sup> So Samuel turned again after Saul, and Saul worshiped Yahweh.

**translationNotes****But please honor me now before the elders**

Saul may have been more interested in being honored by the people than in actually worshipping God.

**before the elders of my people and before Israel**

Here “Israel” refers to the people of Israel. AT: “before the people of Israel and the elders who lead them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Turn again with me**

“Come back with me” or “Return with me”

**So Samuel turned again after Saul**

This implies that Samuel changed his mind, and that they went together to where the people were. AT: “So Samuel finally agreed to do that, and they went together back to where the people were”

**translationWords**

- honor, honors, to honor
- elder
- Yahweh
- God
- turn, turn away, turn back

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:32-33****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> Then Samuel said, “Bring King Agag to me.” So they brought Agag to him. Agag was brought before him, and he was locked in chains. He thought, “Surely the bitterness of death is past!”

<sup>33</sup> But Samuel said to him,

”You have killed the sons of many women with your sword,  
so now your mother will no longer have a son.”

And Samuel cut Agag into pieces with his sword, there at Gilgal, where the Israelites worshiped Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> Then Samuel said, “Bring Agag the king of the Amalekites here to me.” Agag came to him confined with chains and said, “Surely the bitterness of death has past.” <sup>33</sup> Samuel replied, “As your sword has made women childless, so shall your mother be childless among women.” Then Samuel chopped Agag to pieces before Yahweh at Gilgal.

**translationNotes****Agag came to him confined with chains and said**

“They brought Agag to him bound by chains and Agag said”

**Surely the bitterness of death has past**

This idiom appears to mean that Agag no longer thought he would be killed. AT: “Surely I am no longer in danger or dying” (See: [Idiom](#))

**As your sword has made women childless, so shall your mother be childless among women**

Both of these phrases have similar meaning and may be intended to be in poetic form. AT: “Since you have killed people, you will also be killed” (See: [Parallelism](#))

**made women childless, so shall your mother be childless**

This is a polite way of referring to killing people. AT: “killed the sons of other women, so shall I kill your mother’s son” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### **Then Samuel chopped Agag to pieces**

Samuel is the one who completed this task that Yahweh commanded Saul to do. AT: “Then Samuel cut Agag into pieces with his sword”

#### **translationWords**

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Gilgal](#)

#### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 15:34-35****UDB:**

<sup>34</sup> Then Samuel left there and returned to his home in Ramah, and Saul went to his home in Gibeah.  
<sup>35</sup> Samuel never saw Saul again, but he was very sad about what Saul had done. And Yahweh was very sorry that he had appointed Saul to be the king of Israel.

**ULB:**

<sup>34</sup> Samuel went to Ramah, and Saul went up to his house at Gibeah of Saul. <sup>35</sup> Samuel did not see Saul until the day of his death, for he mourned for Saul. Yahweh was grieved that he had made Saul king over Israel.

**translationNotes****Ramah ... Gibeah**

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**went up to his house at Gibeah**

Gibeah was higher in elevation than Gilgal where Saul and Samuel had been talking.

**Samuel did not see Saul until the day of his death**

This statement is very precise and should be translated carefully. Samuel died before Saul and did not see Saul again while he lived. However, Samuel did appear to Saul in [1 Samuel 28:11-19](#) after Samuel died.

**translationWords**

- [Ramah](#)
- [house](#)
- [mourn, mourning](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 15 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 16 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### 1 Samuel 16-31 Saul and David

Chapter 16 establishes God's choice of David to be the next king. David receives the Holy Spirit to empower and guide him as the king. This chapter also records the Holy Spirit leaving Saul because of his disobedience. (See: [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David chosen to be the next king

Humans judge others by what they look like, but God judges people by their true inner character. God rejected David's older brothers in favor of David, who truly loved and obeyed him. (See: [judge, judges, judgment, judgments and love, loves, loving, loved](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

==Rhetorical Question == God scolds Samuel with this rhetorical question for his unwillingness to accept God's decision: "How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel?" It was wrong to mourn because it was God's punishment of Saul. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [1 Samuel 16:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 16:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Finally, Yahweh said to Samuel, “I have decided that I will not allow Saul to continue to be the king. So you should not keep feeling sad about what he has done. Put some olive oil in a small container and go to Bethlehem to anoint someone with the oil, and appoint him to be king. I am sending you there to a man named Jesse, because I have chosen one of his sons to be the king of Israel.”

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Samuel, “How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel? Fill your horn with oil and go. I will send you to Jesse of Bethlehem, for I have selected for myself a king among his sons.”

**translationNotes****How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel?**

This rhetorical question is a rebuke from God and can be translated as a statement. AT: “Stop mourning that I rejected Saul from being king over Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Fill your horn with oil**

The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king.

**translationWords**

- Yahweh
- Samuel
- mourn, mourning
- Saul (OT)
- reject
- king
- Israel, Israelites
- horn, horns
- oil
- Jesse
- Bethlehem, Ephrathah
- son, sons

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 16:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> But Samuel said, “I am afraid to go. If Saul hears that I have appointed someone else to be king, he will kill me.” Yahweh answered, “Take with you a female cow that has not calved, and say to people that you have come to kill it and offer it as a sacrifice to me.

<sup>3</sup> Invite Jesse to come to the sacrifice. When he comes, I will show you what you should do. And I will show you which of his sons I have chosen to be the king. Then you should anoint him with the olive oil to be the king.”

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Samuel said, “How can I go? If Saul hears of it, he will kill me.” Yahweh said, “Take a heifer with you and say, ‘I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh.’” <sup>3</sup> Call Jesse to the sacrifice, and I will show you what you will do. You will anoint for me the one whom I tell you.”

**translationNotes****How can I go?**

Samuel uses a question to emphasize that he is worried about going to Bethlehem. AT: “I cannot go!” or “I am afraid to go.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**with you and say**

You can state the understood information. AT: “with you to Bethlehem and say to the people there” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**say, ‘I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh.’**

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: “say to the people there that you have come to sacrifice to Yahweh.” (See: [Quotes Within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**translationWords**

- Samuel
- Saul (OT)
- Yahweh
- heifer
- sacrifice, offering
- call, calls, calling, called

- [Jesse](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 16:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Samuel did what Yahweh told him to do. He went to Bethlehem. When the town leaders came to him, they trembled, because they were worried that Samuel had come to rebuke them about something. One of them asked him, “Have you come to speak peacefully to us?”

<sup>5</sup> Samuel replied, “Yes. I have come peacefully, to make a sacrifice to Yahweh. Set yourself apart for the honor of Yahweh, and then come with me to where they will offer the sacrifice.” Then Samuel set apart Jesse to do what honors God, along with his sons, and then he invited them to the sacrifice.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Samuel did as Yahweh said and went to Bethlehem. The elders of the city were trembling as they came to meet him and said, “Are you coming in peace?” <sup>5</sup> He said, “In peace; I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh. Prepare to set yourselves apart and come with me to the sacrifice.” Then he set apart Jesse and his sons and invited them to the sacrifice.

**translationNotes****The elders of the city were trembling as they came to meet him**

It seems the elders were trembling because they were worried that Samuel came to rebuke them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**In peace**

This can be stated as a complete sentence. AT: “Yes, I have come in peace” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**to set ... apart**

To set someone apart means to get that person ready for Yahweh’s purposes by making sure that person is ritually clean according to the law of Moses.

**translationWords**

- Samuel
- Yahweh
- Bethlehem, Ephrathah
- elder
- peace, peaceful
- sacrifice, offering

- [set apart](#)
- [Jesse](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 16:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> When they arrived there, Samuel looked at Jesse's oldest son Eliab, and thought, "Surely this is the one whom Yahweh has appointed be king!"

<sup>7</sup> But Yahweh said to Samuel, "Do not think that he is the one whom I have chosen because of his being handsome and very tall, because I have not chosen him. I do not evaluate people as people do. You people evaluate people by their appearance, but I evaluate people by what is in their inner beings."

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> When they came, he looked at Eliab and said to himself that Yahweh's anointed was certainly standing before him. <sup>7</sup> But Yahweh said to Samuel, "Do not look at his outward appearance, or on the height of his stature; because I have rejected him. For Yahweh does not see as man sees; man looks on the outward appearance, but Yahweh looks on the heart."

**translationNotes****When they came**

Here "they" refers to Jesse and his sons.

**he looked at Eliab**

Here "he" refers to Samuel.

**Eliab**

This is the name of Jesse's oldest son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**standing before him**

Here "him" refers to Yahweh.

**Yahweh does not see as man sees**

Here "see" means to evaluate something. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**For Yahweh does not see ... Yahweh looks**

Yahweh is speaking about himself in the third person. AT: "For I, Yahweh, do not see ... I, Yahweh, look" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

### on the heart

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [reject](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 16:8-10

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Then Jesse told his next oldest son Abinadab to step forward and walk in front of Samuel. But when he did that, Samuel said, “Yahweh has not chosen this one, either.” <sup>9</sup> Then Jesse told his next oldest son Shammah to step forward. He stepped forward, but Samuel said, “Yahweh has not chosen this one, either.” <sup>10</sup> Similarly, Jesse told his other four sons to walk in front of Samuel. But Samuel said to Jesse, “Yahweh has not chosen any of these sons of yours.”

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Then Jesse called Abinadab and made him pass before Samuel. Then Samuel said, “Neither has Yahweh chosen this one.” <sup>9</sup> Jesse then made Shammah pass by, but Samuel said, “Neither has Yahweh chosen this one.” <sup>10</sup> Jesse made seven of his sons pass before Samuel. Then Samuel said to Jesse, “Yahweh has not chosen any of these.”

### translationNotes

#### Abinadab ... Shammah

These are names of Jesse’s sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### made him pass before Samuel

“told him to go to Samuel”

#### Jesse then made Shammah pass by

It is understood that Shammah passed by Samuel. AT: “Jesse then made Shammah pass before Samuel” or “Jesse then told Shammah to go to Samuel” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### translationWords

- [Jesse](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 16:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then Samuel asked Jesse, “Do you have any other sons?” Jesse replied, “My youngest son is not here; he is out in the fields taking care of the sheep.” Samuel said, “Send someone to bring him here! We will not sit down to eat until he gets here.”

<sup>12</sup> So Jesse sent someone to bring David there. And when David arrived, Samuel saw that he was handsome and healthy, and had bright eyes. Then Yahweh said, “This is the one whom I have chosen; anoint him to be king.”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then Samuel said to Jesse, “Are all of your sons here?” He replied, “There remains yet the youngest, but he is tending the sheep.” Samuel said to Jesse, “Send and get him; for we will not sit down until he comes here.” <sup>12</sup> Jesse sent and brought him in. Now this son was ruddy and had beautiful eyes and a handsome appearance. Yahweh said, “Arise, anoint him; for he is the one.”

**translationNotes****There remains yet the youngest**

“There is still my youngest son”

**we will not sit down**

It is understood that they were waiting to sit down and eat. AT: “we will not sit down to eat” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Now ... appearance**

The word “Now” is used here to mark a break in the main storyline. Here the narrator tells about a new person in the story.

**this son was ruddy**

The word “ruddy” means David was healthy looking.

**translationWords**

- Samuel
- Jesse
- sheep, ram, ewe



- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 16:13

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> So as David stood there in front of his older brothers, Samuel took the container of oil that he had brought and poured some of it on David's head to set him apart to serve God. After they all ate, Samuel left there and returned to Ramah. But Yahweh's Spirit came on David powerfully, and stayed with David for the rest of his life.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> Then Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed him in the middle of his brothers. The Spirit of Yahweh rushed on David from that day forward. Then Samuel rose up and went to Ramah.

### translationNotes

#### the horn of oil

The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 16:1](#).

#### Samuel rose up and went

It is implied that he rose up after they sat down to eat. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### The Spirit of Yahweh rushed on David

The phrase "rushed on" means Yahweh's Spirit influenced David. In this case it means he enabled David to fulfill whatever Yahweh wanted him to do. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 10:6](#).

### translationWords

- Samuel
- horn, horns
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- Yahweh
- David
- Ramah

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 16:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> But Yahweh's Spirit left Saul. Instead of his Spirit staying with Saul, Yahweh sent an evil spirit to Saul to terrify him repeatedly.

<sup>15</sup> One of his servants said to him, "It is evident that an evil spirit sent by God is terrifying you. <sup>16</sup> So we suggest that you allow us your servants here to search for a man who plays the harp well. He can play the harp whenever the evil spirit bothers you. Then you will calm down and you will be well again."

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Now the Spirit of Yahweh left Saul, and a harmful spirit from Yahweh troubled him instead. <sup>15</sup> Saul's servants said to him, "Look, a harmful spirit from God troubles you. <sup>16</sup> Let our master now command your servants who are before you to look for a man who is a skillful player on the harp. Then when the harmful spirit from God is on you, he will play it and you will be well."

**translationNotes****Now**

This word is used here to mark a break in the main storyline. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

**harmful spirit**

This may refer to either a "spirit that causes trouble" or an "evil spirit."

**Let our master now command**

The servants refer to Saul in the third person as "our master." AT: "We ask that you, our master, command" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**command your servants who are before you to look**

The servants refer to themselves in the third person as "your servants." AT: "command us, your servants who attend to you, to look" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**is on you**

"troubles you"

**translationWords**

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- Yahweh
- Saul (OT)
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- servant, slave, slavery
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- harp

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 16:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Saul replied, “Fine, find for me a man who can play the harp well, and bring him to me.”

<sup>18</sup> One of his servants said to him, “A man named Jesse, in the city of Bethlehem, has a son who plays the harp very well. Furthermore, he is a brave man, and is a capable soldier. He is handsome and he always speaks wisely. And Yahweh always protects him.”

<sup>19</sup> So Saul sent some messengers to Jesse. He told them to say to Jesse, “Send your son David to me, the one who takes care of sheep.”

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Saul said to his servants, “Find me a man that can play well and bring him to me.” <sup>18</sup> Then one of the young men answered, and said, “I have seen a son of Jesse the Bethlehemite, who is skillful in playing, a strong, courageous man, a man of war, one prudent in speech, a handsome man; and Yahweh is with him.” <sup>19</sup> So Saul sent messengers to Jesse, and said, “Send me your son David, who is with the sheep.”

**translationNotes****a strong, courageous man**

Possible meanings are 1) “a great warrior” or 2) “a very brave man.”

**one prudent in speech**

“one wise in speech” or “one who speaks wisely”

**Yahweh is with him**

Here “with him” means Yahweh helps and blesses David. (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [David](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 16:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> So after they went and told that to Jesse, he agreed and got a young goat, a container of wine, a donkey on which he put some loaves of bread and gave them to David to take to Saul as a present.

<sup>21</sup> Then David went to Saul and started to work for him. Saul liked David very much, and he became the man who carried Saul's weapons when Saul went to fight in battles.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Jesse took a donkey loaded with bread, a container of wine, and a young goat, and sent them with his son David to Saul. <sup>21</sup> Then David came to Saul and entered his service. Saul loved him greatly, and he became his armor bearer.

**translationNotes****David came to Saul**

Here "came" can be translated as "went." (See: [Go and Come](#))

**entered his service**

The abstract noun "service" can be stated as a verb. AT: "began to serve him" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**he became his armor bearer**

"David became Saul's armor bearer"

**translationWords**

- Jesse
- donkey, mule
- bread
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- goat, kid
- David
- Saul (OT)
- love, loves, loving, loved
- armor



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 16:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then Saul sent a messenger to go to Jesse and tell him, “I am pleased with David. Please let him stay here and work for me.”

<sup>23</sup> Jesse agreed, and after that, whenever the evil spirit whom God sent tormented Saul, David played the harp. Then Saul would become calm, and the evil spirit would leave him.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Saul sent to Jesse, saying, “Let David stand before me, for he has found favor in my eyes.” <sup>23</sup> Whenever the harmful spirit from God was upon Saul, David took the harp and played it. So Saul would be refreshed and well, and the harmful spirit would depart from him.

**translationNotes****Let David stand before me**

Here “stand before me” is an idiom that means to continue in Saul’s service. AT: “Let David stay in my service” (See: [Idiom](#))

**he has found favor in my eyes**

Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and “my sight” represents how Saul judges or evaluates David. AT: “he has found favor in my judgment” or “I am pleased with him” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**harmful spirit**

Here “harmful spirit” may refer to either a “spirit that causes trouble” or an “evil spirit.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 16:14](#).

**was upon Saul**

“troubled Saul”

**Saul would be refreshed and well**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the music would refresh Saul and make him well” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [David](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [God](#)
- [harp](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter introduced David as a soldier, a skill that will be important for the rest of his life.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David kills Goliath

Trust in God is more powerful than physical might or military training and equipment. David, trusting in the Lord and armed only with a sling, defeats Goliath who is well-armed and physically strong but who did not believe in Yahweh. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [believe](#), [believes](#), [believed](#), [belief](#))

#### Uncircumcised

The people of Israel often used the term “uncircumcised” to refer to Gentiles. Here it is used to describe the Philistines. (See: [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)).

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical questions

David uses rhetorical questions to state his desire to fight the giant: “What will be done for the man who kills this Philistine and takes away the disgrace from Israel? Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

His brother uses rhetorical questions to show his disdain for his younger brother, whom he thinks is pretending to be bigger than he really is: “Why did you come down here? With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness?” David defends himself with some questions: “What have I done now? Was it not just a question?”

Goliath also uses a rhetorical question to show his contempt for young David: “Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?”

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 17:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 17:2-3****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> Saul gathered the Israelite army near Elah Valley, and they set up their tents. Then they all took their places, ready to fight the Philistines. <sup>3</sup> So the Philistine and Israelite armies faced each other. They were on two hills, with a valley between them.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> Saul and the men of Israel gathered and encamped in the Valley of Elah, and drew up their battle line to meet the Philistines. <sup>3</sup> The Philistines stood on a mountain on one side, and Israel stood on a mountain on the other side with a valley between them.

**translationNotes****the Valley of Elah**

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> Then Goliath, from the city of Gath, came out from the Philistine camp. He was a great warrior, three meters tall. <sup>5</sup> He wore a helmet made of bronze to protect his head, and he wore a coat made of metal plates to protect his body. The metal coat weighed about fifty-five kilograms.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> A strong man came out of the Philistines' camp, a man named Goliath of Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span. <sup>5</sup> He had a helmet of bronze on his head, and he was armed with a coat of chainmail. The coat weighed five thousand shekels of bronze.

### translationNotes

#### six cubits and a span

A cubit is a unit of measurement equal to about 46 centimeters. A span is a unit of measurement equal to about 23 centimeters. AT: "about 3 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### he was armed with a coat of chainmail

A "coat of chainmail" is a flexible piece of body armor covered with protective scales or small plates. This can be stated in active form. AT: "he protected himself by wearing a coat of chainmail" or "he wore a coat of chainmail" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### five thousand shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. AT: "about 55 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [Goliath](#)
- [Gath](#)
- [bronze](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> He wore bronze guards on his legs. He had a small bronze spear fastened on his back. <sup>7</sup> He also had a big spear. It had a cord on it to enable him to throw it better. Its iron head weighed about seven kilograms. A soldier carrying Goliath's huge shield walked in front of him.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> He had bronze armor on his legs and a javelin of bronze between his shoulders. <sup>7</sup> The staff of his spear was large, with a loop of cord for throwing it like the cord on a weaver's beam. His spear's head weighed six hundred shekels of iron. His shield bearer went before him.

**translationNotes****a javelin of bronze**

A "javelin" is a small spear that is meant to be thrown.

**staff of his spear**

"the handle of his spear"

**loop of cord**

"rope rolled up into a circle"

**His spear's head**

"The point of his spear"

**six hundred shekels of iron**

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. AT: "about 7 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

**translationWords**

- bronze
- armor
- spear
- shield

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 17:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Goliath stood there and shouted to the Israelite army, "I can see you are lined up for battle, but you will not fight me. You can see that I am a Philistine soldier who is ready to fight, but you are just the slaves of Saul. Choose one man who can fight for all of you and send him down here to me! <sup>9</sup> If he fights with me and kills me, then my fellow Philistines will all be your slaves. But if I defeat him and kill him, then you Israelites will all be our slaves.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> He stood and shouted to the ranks of Israel, "Why have you come out to draw up for battle? Am not I a Philistine, and are you not servants of Saul? Choose a man for yourselves and let him come down to me. <sup>9</sup> If he is able to fight with me and kill me, then will we be your servants. But if I defeat him and kill him, then you will be our servants and serve us."

**translationNotes****Why have you come out to draw up for battle?**

"Why have you come to fight in battle against us?" Goliath uses this question to mock the Israelites. AT: "You are fools if you think you can fight in battle against us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Am not I a Philistine, and are you not servants of Saul?**

Goliath uses this question to mock the Israelites. When he says that he is a Philistine, he is implying that he is strong. AT: "I am a great Philistine, and you are merely servants of Saul." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [serve, service](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> None of you Israelite men can defeat me! Send me a man who will fight with me!” <sup>11</sup> When Saul and all the Israelite soldiers heard that, they were very terrified.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> Again the Philistine said, “I challenge the ranks of Israel today. Give me a man so we may fight together.” <sup>11</sup> When Saul and all Israel heard what the Philistine said, they were discouraged and greatly afraid.

### translationNotes

#### I challenge the ranks of Israel

“I challenge the army of Israel”

#### all Israel

This refers to the Israelite soldiers who were there.

#### they were discouraged and greatly afraid

The words “discouraged” and “greatly afraid” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of their fear. (See: [Doublet](#))

### translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> Now David son of Jesse was from the clan of Ephrath. He lived in Bethlehem, in the region of the tribe of Judah. Jesse had eight sons. When Saul was king, Jesse had already become a very old man. <sup>13</sup> Jesse's three oldest sons, Eliab and Abinadab and Shammah, had gone with Saul to fight the Philistines.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Now David was the son of the Ephrathite of Bethlehem in Judah, whose name was Jesse. He had eight sons. Jesse was an old man in the days of Saul, very old among men. <sup>13</sup> The three oldest sons of Jesse had followed Saul to the battle. The names of his three sons who went to the battle were Eliab the firstborn, second to him Abinadab, and the third Shammah.

### translationNotes

#### He had eight sons

“He” refers to Jesse.

#### Jesse was an old man ... very old among men

The two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### second to him Abinadab, and the third Shammah

“Abinadab the second born, and Shammah the third born.” This phrase shows birth order.

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [firstborn](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:14-16

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> David was Jesse's youngest son. While his three oldest brothers were with Saul, <sup>15</sup> David went back and forth. Sometimes he went to Saul's camp, and sometimes he stayed in Bethlehem to take care of his father's sheep.

<sup>16</sup> For forty days Goliath came out from the Philistine camp and stood there mocking the Israelite army. He kept telling the Israelites to choose one man to fight with him. He did this twice each day, in the morning and in the evening.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> David was the youngest. The three oldest followed Saul. <sup>15</sup> Now David went back and forth between Saul's army and his father's sheep at Bethlehem, in order to feed them. <sup>16</sup> For forty days the Philistine strong man came near morning and evening to present himself for battle.

### translationNotes

#### The three oldest

The implied information is that these are the sons of Jesse. AT: "The three oldest sons of Jesse" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### For forty days

"For 40 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### to present himself for battle

"to show that he was ready to fight"

### translationWords

- David
- Saul (OT)
- ancestor, father, forefather
- sheep, ram, ewe
- Bethlehem, Ephrathah
- Philistines

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> One day, Jesse said to David, "Here is a sack of roasted grain and ten loaves of bread. Take these quickly to your older brothers. <sup>18</sup> And here are ten large chunks of cheese. Take them to their commander. And see how things are going with your older brothers. Then if they are safe, bring back something to show they are all right.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> Then Jesse said to his son David, "Take to your brothers an ephah of this roasted grain and these ten loaves, and carry them quickly to the camp for your brothers. <sup>18</sup> Also bring these ten cheeses to the captain of their thousand. See how your brothers are doing and bring back some proof that they are doing well.

### translationNotes

#### ephah

An ephah is a unit of measurement equal to about 22 liters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

#### the captain of their thousand

"the captain of your brothers' thousand." Possible meanings are 1) the word "thousand" represents the exact amount of soldiers that this captain led. AT: "the captain of your brothers' unit of 1,000 soldiers" or 2) the word translated as "thousand" does not represent exact number, but is the name of a large military division. AT: "the captain of your brothers' military division" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### See how your brothers are doing

"Check and find out how your brothers are doing"

### translationWords

- [Jesse](#)
- [David](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [grain](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:19-21

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> Your brothers are with Saul and all the other Israelite soldiers, camped alongside Elah Valley, preparing to fight the Philistines.” <sup>20</sup> So David arranged for another shepherd to take care of the sheep. Early the next morning he took the food and went to the Israelite camp, as Jesse told him to do. He arrived there just as the Israelite soldiers were forming their ranks and going out to the battlefield. As they went, they were shouting a war cry. <sup>21</sup> The Philistine army and the Israelite army stood on the hillsides, facing each other, ready for the battle.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> Your brothers are with Saul and all the men of Israel in the Valley of Elah, fighting the Philistines.”  
<sup>20</sup> David got up early in the morning and left the flock in the care of a shepherd. He took the supplies and left, as Jesse commanded him. He came to the camp as the army was going out to the battlefield shouting the war cry. <sup>21</sup> Then Israel and the Philistines lined up for battle, army against army.

### translationNotes

#### all the men of Israel

“all the soldiers of Israel”

#### the Valley of Elah

This is the name of a place. See how you translated it in [1 Samuel 17:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)



- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:22-24

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> David gave the food to the man who was taking care of the war equipment. He told him to take care of the food that he brought, and then he went and greeted his older brothers. <sup>23</sup> While he was talking with them, he saw Goliath coming out from among the Philistine soldiers, shouting to the Israelites, challenging them to send a man to fight him. David heard what Goliath was saying. <sup>24</sup> When all the Israelite soldiers saw Goliath, they were terrified and started to run away.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> David left his belongings with the keeper of supplies, ran to the army, and greeted his brothers. <sup>23</sup> As he talked with them, the strong man, the Philistine of Gath, Goliath by name, and he came out of the ranks of the Philistines, and said the same words as before, and David heard them. <sup>24</sup> When all the men of Israel saw the man, they fled from him and were very afraid.

### translationNotes

#### Goliath by name

“whose name was Goliath”

#### came out of the ranks of the Philistines

“stepped forward from the Philistines’ battle line”

### translationWords

- David
- Philistines
- Gath
- Goliath
- name, names, named
- word, words
- Israel, Israelites
- fear, fears, afraid

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:25****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> They were saying to each other, “Look at him coming up toward us! And listen to him as he defies us Israelites! The king says that he will give a big reward to whoever kills this man. He also says that he will give his daughter to that man for him to marry her, and that he will no longer require that man’s family to pay taxes.”

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> The men of Israel said, “Have you seen this man who has come up? He has come to challenge Israel. The king will give great riches to the man who kills him, and he will give his daughter to him in marriage, and will make his father’s house free from taxation in Israel.”

**translationNotes****Have you seen this man who has come up?**

The soldiers were saying this to draw one another’s attention to the man Goliath. AT: “Look at this man who has come up!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**The king**

This refers to the king of Israel. AT: “Our king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**his daughter**

This refers to the king’s daughter.

**to him ... his father’s house**

The words “him” and “his” refer to the man who kills Goliath.

**will make his father’s house free from taxation in Israel**

The word “house” refers to the household or family. AT: “will no longer require his family to pay taxes” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king](#)

- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [house](#)
- [tax, taxes](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> David talked to some of the men who were standing near him. He said, “This Philistine–this uncircumcised man–should not be mocking the all-powerful God. What will be given to the person who kills this Philistine and stops him from shaming us Israelites?”

<sup>27</sup> The men told him the same thing that the other men had said, about what the king would do for anyone who killed Goliath.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> David said to the men who stood by him, “What will be done for the man who kills this Philistine and takes away the disgrace from Israel? Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?” <sup>27</sup> Then the people repeated what they had been saying and told him, “So it will be done for the man who kills him.”

**translationNotes****takes away the disgrace from Israel**

This can be expressed with the verb “disgrace.” AT: “stops Israel from being disgraced” or “stops him from disgracing Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?**

David said this to show his anger that this Philistine was defying God’s army. AT: “This uncircumcised Philistine certainly has no power that he should defy the armies of the living God!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**this uncircumcised Philistine**

This phrase is an insult and indicates that Goliath does not belong to the living God.

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:28-30****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> But when David's oldest brother Eliab heard David talking to the men, he was angry. He said to David, "Why have you come down here? Is someone taking care of those few sheep that you left in the desert? I know you are just a troublemaking boy! You just want to watch the battle!"

<sup>29</sup> David replied, "Have I done something wrong? I was merely asking a question!" <sup>30</sup> Then he walked over to another man and asked him the same question, but the man gave him the same answer. Each time he asked someone, he received the same answer.

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> Eliab his oldest brother heard when he spoke to the men. Eliab's anger was kindled against David, and he said, "Why did you come down here? With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness? I know your pride, and the mischief in your heart; for you have come down here so that you might see the battle." <sup>29</sup> David said, "What have I done now? Was it not just a question?" <sup>30</sup> He turned away from him toward another, and spoke in the same way. The people answered the same thing as before.

**translationNotes****Eliab's anger was kindled against David**

Here anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that could be kindled. AT: "Eliab became angry with David" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Why did you come down here?**

Eliab uses this question to show that he is angry that David came down. He was probably implying that David did not have a good reason for coming. AT: "You had no good reason to come here" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness?**

Eliab uses this question to insult David by making his work seem unimportant and by accusing him of not taking care of his father's sheep. AT: "You simply had the responsibility of watching over a few sheep in the wilderness. You could not even carry out that simple responsibility!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**your pride, and the mischief in your heart**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**What have I done now? Was it not just a question?**

David used these questions to express his frustration and to justify himself. AT: "I have done nothing wrong. I was only asking a question!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**He turned away from him**

"He" refers to David and the word "him" refers to Eliab.

**translationWords**

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [David](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 17:31-33****UDB:**

<sup>31</sup> Finally, someone told King Saul what David had asked, and Saul sent someone to bring David to him.

<sup>32</sup> David told King Saul, “No one should worry because of that Philistine man. I will go and fight with him!”

<sup>33</sup> Saul said to David, “You are only a young man, and he has been a very powerful soldier all his life. So you are not able to go and fight with him!”

**ULB:**

<sup>31</sup> When the words that David said were heard, soldiers repeated them to Saul, and he sent for David. <sup>32</sup> Then David said to Saul, “Let no man’s heart fail because of that Philistine; your servant will go and fight with this Philistine.” <sup>33</sup> Saul said to David, “You are not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him; for you are only a youth, and he a man of war from his youth.”

**translationNotes****When the words that David said were heard**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “When the soldiers heard what David said” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Let no man’s heart fail**

The heart failing represents being terrified and losing confidence. AT: “Do not let anyone be terrified” or “Do not let anyone lose their confidence” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**your servant will go**

David spoke of himself as “your servant” to show respect to Saul. AT: “I, your servant, will go” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**translationWords**

- [word, words](#)
- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:34-35****UDB:**

<sup>34</sup> David replied, "I have been taking care of my father's sheep for many years. Whenever a lion or a bear came and carried away a lamb, <sup>35</sup> I went after it and attacked it and rescued the lamb from the animal's mouth. Then I grabbed the animal by its jaw and struck it and killed it.

**ULB:**

<sup>34</sup> But David said to Saul, "Your servant used to keep his father's sheep. When a lion or a bear came and took a lamb out of the flock, <sup>35</sup> I chased after him and attacked him, and rescued it out of his mouth. When he rose up against me, I caught him by his beard, struck him, and killed him.

**translationNotes****Your servant used to keep his father's sheep**

David spoke of himself as "your servant" to show respect to Saul. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 17:32](#). AT: "I, your servant, used to keep my father's sheep" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**used to keep his father's sheep**

"used to take care of his father's sheep"

**a bear**

A bear is a large animal with thick fur and long claws and that walks on four legs but can stand on two legs as a person does.

**chased after him and attacked him**

Here "him" refers to the lion or bear. Some languages would use the word "it" instead of "him."

**rescued it out of his mouth**

Here "it" refers to the lamb.

**he rose up against me**

Here "rose up against" is an idiom that refers to attacking. AT: "it attacked me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### **caught him by his beard**

The “beard” refers to the lion’s mane or the hair on the bear’s face.

### **translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [lion](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:36

### UDB:

<sup>36</sup> I have killed both lions and bears. And I will do the same to this heathen Philistine, because he has defied the army of the all-powerful God!

### ULB:

<sup>36</sup> Your servant has killed both a lion and a bear. This uncircumcised Philistine will be like one of them, since he has challenged the armies of the living God.”

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to King Saul.

#### This uncircumcised Philistine

This phrase is an insult and indicates that Goliath does not belong to the living God. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 17:26](#).

#### will be like one of them

David is saying that he will be able to kill the Philistine just as he was able to kill the lion and bear.

### translationWords

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [lion](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:37-38****UDB:**

<sup>37</sup> Yahweh has rescued me from paws of lions and bears, and he will rescue me from this Philistine!" Then Saul said to David, "All right, go and fight him, and I hope that Yahweh will help you!"

<sup>38</sup> Then Saul gave to David his own clothes that he always wore in battles, and he gave him a bronze helmet and a coat made of metal plates.

**ULB:**

<sup>37</sup> David said, "Yahweh rescued me from the paw of the lion and from the paw of the bear. He will rescue me from the hand of this Philistine." Then Saul said to David, "Go, and may Yahweh be with you." <sup>38</sup> Saul clothed David with his armor. He put a helmet of bronze upon his head, and he clothed him with a coat of chainmail.

**translationNotes****from the paw of the lion and from the paw of the bear**

Bears and lions use their paws when they attack, so the word "paw" represents the attack. AT: "from the attack of the lion and from the attack of the bear" or "from the lion and the bear" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the hand of this Philistine**

The Philistine's hand represents his power in fighting. AT: "the power of this Philistine" or "the Philistine" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**coat of chainmail**

a flexible piece of body armor covered with protective scales or small plates

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [lion](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [armor](#)
- [bronze](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:39-40****UDB:**

<sup>39</sup> David put these things on. Then he fastened his sword over them and tried to walk. But he could not walk, because he was not accustomed to wearing those things. So David said to Saul, "I cannot fight wearing all these things, because I am not accustomed to wearing them!" So he took them off.

<sup>40</sup> Then he took his walking staff; then he chose five smooth stones out of a streambed. He put them in the pouch of his shoulder bag. Then he put his sling in his hand and started walking toward Goliath.

**ULB:**

<sup>39</sup> David strapped his sword on his armor. But he was not able to walk, because he had not trained with them. Then David said to Saul, "I cannot go out to fight with these, for I have not trained with them." So David put them off. <sup>40</sup> He took his staff in his hand and chose five smooth stones out of the brook; he put them in his shepherd's pouch. His sling was in his hand as he approached the Philistine.

**translationNotes****his sword on his armor**

"Saul's sword on the armor"

**his staff in his hand**

Here "his" refers to David.

**His sling was in his hand**

A sling is a weapon for throwing stones.

**translationWords**

- David
- sword
- armor
- Saul (OT)
- staff
- shepherd, to shepherd
- Philistines



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:41-43****UDB:**

<sup>41</sup> Goliath walked toward David, with the soldier who was carrying his shield walking in front of him. When he got near David, <sup>42</sup> he looked at David closely. He saw that David had a handsome face and healthy body, but that he was only a young man. So he sneered at David. <sup>43</sup> He said to David, “Are you coming to me with a stick because you think that I am a dog?” Then he called out to his gods to harm David.

**ULB:**

<sup>41</sup> The Philistine came and approached David, with his shield bearer in front of him. <sup>42</sup> When the Philistine looked around and saw David, he despised him, for he was only a boy, and ruddy, with a handsome appearance. <sup>43</sup> Then the Philistine said to David, “Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?” and the Philistine cursed David by his gods.

**translationNotes****with his shield bearer in front of him**

“and his shield bearer walked in front of him”

**he despised him**

“he hated him”

**ruddy**

“healthy”

**Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?**

Here a dog represents a small animal that a person can easily kill. The word “sticks” refers to David’s staff and shows Goliath’s opinion that it is not a good weapon. Goliath uses this question to accuse David of insulting him. AT: “You insult me by coming at me with mere sticks as if I were just a dog!” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [shield](#)

- [curse, cursed, curses, cursing](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:44-45****UDB:**

<sup>44</sup> He said to David, “Come here to me, and I will kill you and give your dead body to the birds and wild animals to eat!”

<sup>45</sup> David replied, “You are coming to me with a sword and a spear and a small spear. But I am coming to you in the name of Yahweh, commander of the angel armies. He is the God whom the army of Israel worships, and he is the God whom you have defied.

**ULB:**

<sup>44</sup> The Philistine said to David, “Come to me, and I will give your flesh to the birds of the heavens and to the beasts of the field.” <sup>45</sup> David replied to the Philistine, “You come to me with a sword, a spear, and a javelin. But I come to you in the name of Yahweh of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied.

**translationNotes****I will give your flesh to the birds of the heavens and to the beasts of the field**

Goliath speaks of killing David and leaving his body on the ground for the animals to eat it as if he were to give David’s body to the animals. AT: “I will kill you, and the birds of the heavens and the beasts of the field will eat your body” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**birds of the heavens**

“birds of the sky” or “birds”

**beasts of the field**

“wild animals”

**in the name of Yahweh**

Here “name” represents God’s power or authority. AT: “with the power of Yahweh” or “with the authority of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**whom you have defied**

“whom you have provoked” or “whom you have insulted”

### translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [beast](#)
- [sword](#)
- [spear](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:46-47****UDB:**

<sup>46</sup> Today Yahweh will enable me to defeat you. I will strike you down and cut off your head. And we Israelites will kill many Philistine soldiers and give their bodies to the birds and wild animals to eat. And everyone in the world will hear about it and know that we Israelite people worship an all-powerful God. <sup>47</sup> And everyone here will know that Yahweh can rescue people without a sword or a spear. Yahweh always wins his battles, and he will enable us to defeat all of you Philistines.”

**ULB:**

<sup>46</sup> Today Yahweh will give me victory over you, and I will kill you and remove your head from your body. Today I will give the dead bodies of the Philistine army to the birds of the heavens and to the wild beasts of the earth, so that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel, <sup>47</sup> and that all this gathering may know that Yahweh does not give victory with sword or spear. For the battle is Yahweh’s, and he will give you into our hand.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

David continues speaking to Goliath.

**I will give the dead bodies ... to the birds ... and to the wild beasts of the earth**

David speaks of leading the Israelites in killing the Philistines and leaving their bodies on the ground for the animals to eat them as if he were to give their bodies to the animals. AT: “We Israelites will kill the Philistine army, and the birds of the heavens and the wild beasts of the earth will eat them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**all the earth may know**

The word “earth” refers to the people on earth. AT: “all the people of the earth may know” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Yahweh does not give victory with sword or spear**

Swords and spears are examples of battle weapons. They represent human ways of fighting. AT: “The victory that Yahweh gives does not depend on sword and spear” or “when Yahweh gives us victory, he does not depend on how we fight” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the battle is Yahweh's**

Winning the battle is spoken of as owning the battle. AT: "Yahweh always wins the battle" or "the victory belongs to Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**he will give you into our hand**

Giving the Philistines into Israel's hand represents helping Israel to defeat the Philistines in battle. AT: "he will help us defeat you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sword](#)
- [spear](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 17:50

### UDB:

<sup>50-51</sup> Then David ran and stood over Goliath. He pulled Goliath's sword from its sheath and killed him with it, and then cut off his head. In that way David defeated the Philistine without having his own sword. He used only a sling and a stone!

When the other Philistines saw that their great warrior was dead, they ran away.

### ULB:

<sup>50</sup> David defeated the Philistine with a sling and with a stone. He hit the Philistine and killed him. There was no sword in David's hand. <sup>51</sup> Then David ran and stood over the Philistine and took his sword, drew it out of the sheath, killed him, and cut off his head with it. When the Philistines saw that their strong man was dead, they fled.

### translationNotes

#### David defeated ... He hit ... killed ... There was no sword in David's hand

Verse 50 is a summary of David's amazing victory over Goliath. The details about how he hit and killed Goliath are in [1 Samuel 17:49](#) and [17:51](#). Some languages do not use summary statements like this. In those situations, translators may restructure the verses as they are in the UDB.

#### Then David ran and stood over the Philistine

David did this after Goliath fell to the ground in [1 Samuel 17:49](#).

#### took his sword

"took the Philistine's sword." Here the word "his" refers to Goliath.

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [sword](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 17:52-54****UDB:**

<sup>52</sup> The Israelite men shouted and ran after them. They pursued them all the way to the city of Gath and to the gates of the city of Ekron. They struck them down as they went, with the result that dead Philistines were lying on the road all the way from Shaaraim to Gath and Ekron. <sup>53</sup> When the Israelites returned from chasing the Philistines, they plundered the Philistine camp. <sup>54</sup> David later took the head of Goliath to Jerusalem, but he kept Goliath's weapons in his own tent.

**ULB:**

<sup>52</sup> Then the men of Israel and of Judah rose with a shout, and chased after the Philistines as far as the valley and the gates of Ekron. The dead Philistines lay along the way to Shaaraim, all the way to Gath and Ekron. <sup>53</sup> The people of Israel returned from chasing the Philistines, and they plundered their camp. <sup>54</sup> David took the head of the Philistine and brought it to Jerusalem, but he put his armor in his tent.

**translationNotes****The dead Philistines lay along the way to Shaaraim**

It can be stated clearly that the Israelites were killing the Philistines as they chased them. AT: "And they killed the Philistines as they chased them, and the bodies of the dead Philistines were on the ground along the way to Shaaraim" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they plundered their camp**

"the Israelites plundered the Philistines' camp"

**he put his armor in his tent**

"he put Goliath's armor in his own tent"

**translationWords**

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [Ekron](#)
- [Gath](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [armor](#)
- [tent](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:55-56****UDB:**

<sup>55</sup> As Saul watched David going toward Goliath, he said to Abner, the commander of his army, “Abner, whose son is that young man?” Abner replied, “As sure as you are alive, I do not know.”

<sup>56</sup> Then the king said, “Find out whose son he is!”

**ULB:**

<sup>55</sup> When Saul saw David go out against the Philistine, he said to Abner, the captain of the army, “Abner, whose son is this youth?” Abner said, “As you live, king, I do not know.” <sup>56</sup> The king said, “Ask those who might know, whose son the boy is.”

**translationNotes****When Saul saw David**

The conversation in 17:55-56 happened before David killed Goliath. AT: “When Saul had seen David” or “Earlier when Saul saw David” (See: [Order of Events](#))

**go out against the Philistine**

“go to fight against the Philistine”

**whose son is this youth**

“who is this youth’s father”

**As you live**

This was a way of swearing that what he was about to say was true.

**whose son the boy is**

“who the boy’s father is”

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Abner](#)
- [king](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 17:57-58****UDB:**

<sup>57</sup> Later, as David returned from killing Goliath, Abner took him to Saul. David was carrying Goliath's head.

<sup>58</sup> Saul asked him, "Young man, whose son are you?" David replied, "Sir, I am the son of your servant Jesse, who lives in Bethlehem."

**ULB:**

<sup>57</sup> When David returned from killing the Philistine, Abner took him, and brought him before Saul with the head of the Philistine in his hand. <sup>58</sup> Saul said to him, "Whose son are you, young man?" David answered, "I am the son of your servant Jesse the Bethlehemite."

**translationNotes****in his hand**

Here "his" refers to David.

**Whose son are you**

"Who is your father"

**I am the son of your servant Jesse the Bethlehemite**

"My father is your servant Jesse, the Bethlehemite"

**your servant Jesse**

David referred to his father as "your servant" to show that his father was faithful to King Saul.

**translationWords**

- David
- Philistines
- Abner
- Saul (OT)
- servant, slave, slavery
- Jesse
- Bethlehem, Ephrathah

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 18 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the first chapter of a section explaining why Saul wants to kill David.

Many translations set apart quotations, prayers, or songs. 1 Samuel 18:7 is a song praising David. It has been set apart in the ULB through the use of indentation.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Saul is jealous of David's popularity

Saul's son, Jonathan, loves David. David is successful in battling the Philistines, and Saul is happy until the women give David more attention than they give him. He fears that David will replace him as king. This is potentially confusing because the author has already established that David will be the next king. It is probably that Saul feared David would kill him in order to be the next king sooner, or that he did not really believe David would be the next king. (See: [love](#), [loves](#), [loving](#), [loved](#))

#### Jonathan's love of David

Some scholars believe Jonathan loved David as a man loves his wife. There is no reason to translate this as if Jonathan were a homosexual. Instead, treat this as a brotherly type of love.

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 18:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 18:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> After David finished talking with Saul, he met Saul's son, Jonathan. Jonathan immediately liked David; in fact, he began to love him. <sup>2</sup> From that day, Saul kept David with him to serve him; he did not let him return home.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> When he had finished speaking to Saul, the soul of Jonathan was bound to the soul of David, and Jonathan loved him as his own soul. <sup>2</sup> Saul took David into his service that day; he did not let him return to his father's house.

### translationNotes

#### the soul of Jonathan was bound to the soul of David

Very close friendship is spoken of as if it were binding together the souls of two people. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Jonathan felt a strong affection towards David" or "Jonathan committed himself to David" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Jonathan loved him as his own soul

Here "loved" refers to the love between friends, not romantic love. The word "soul" represents the person or the person's life. AT: "Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself" or "Jonathan loved David as he loved his own life" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [soul, souls](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [David](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [house](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 18:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Because he loved David so much, Jonathan made a solemn agreement with David. They promised each other that they would always be friends. <sup>4</sup> Jonathan took off his own outer robe and gave it to David. He also gave David his soldier's tunic, his sword, his bow and arrows, and his belt.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Then Jonathan and David made a covenant of friendship because Jonathan loved him as his own soul. <sup>4</sup> Jonathan took off the robe that he was wearing and gave it to David with his armor, as well as his sword, bow, and belt.

### translationNotes

#### Jonathan loved him as his own soul

Here “loved” refers to the love between friends, not romantic love. The word “soul” represents the person or the person’s life. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 18:1](#). AT: “Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself” or “Jonathan loved David as he loved his own life” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### translationWords

- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [robe](#)
- [armor](#)
- [sword](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 18:5

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> David went wherever Saul sent him. And whatever Saul told him to do, David did it very successfully. As a result, Saul appointed David as a commander in the army. All the officers and other men in the army approved of that.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> David went out wherever Saul sent him, and he succeeded. Saul set him over the men of war. This was pleasing in the eyes of all the people and also in the sight of Saul's servants.

### translationNotes

#### he succeeded

“he prospered”

#### This was pleasing in the eyes of all the people and also in the sight of Saul's servants

The phrases “in the eyes of” and “in the sight of” mean the same thing. The opinion of the people is spoken of as something that they view as either good or bad. AT: “This was pleasing in the opinions of all the people and of Saul's servants” or “This pleased all the people and Saul's servants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 18:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> But when the men in the army were returning home after David had killed Goliath, Israelite women came out from many cities and towns. They greeted King Saul while they were singing and dancing very joyfully, playing tambourines and lyres. <sup>7</sup> As they danced, they sang this song:

”Saul has killed a thousand enemy soldiers,  
But David has killed ten thousand of them.”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> As they came home from defeating the Philistines, the women came from all the cities of Israel, singing and dancing, to meet King Saul, with tambourines, with joy, and with musical instruments. <sup>7</sup> The women sang one to another as they played. They sang:

”Saul has killed his thousands,  
and David his ten thousands.”

**translationNotes****from all the cities of Israel**

This is generalization that emphasizes the great number of women who came from many cities. AT: “from many of the cities throughout Israel” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**with tambourines, with joy, and with musical instruments**

“joyfully playing tambourines and other musical instruments”

**with tambourines**

A “tambourine” is a small handheld drum.

**David his ten thousands**

The verb may be supplied from the previous line. AT: “David has killed his ten thousands” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [joy, joyful](#)
- [David](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 18:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> When Saul heard them singing that, he did not like it. He became very angry. He said to himself, “They are saying that David killed ten thousand men, but that I have killed only one thousand. Soon they will want to make him their king!” <sup>9</sup> From that time, Saul watched David very closely because he was suspicious that David would try to become king.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Saul was very angry, and this song displeased him. He said, “They have ascribed to David ten thousands, but they have ascribed only thousands to me. What more can he have but the monarchy?” <sup>9</sup> Saul looked at David with suspicion from that day on.

### translationNotes

#### They have ascribed

“They have credited”

#### What more can he have but the monarchy?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “The only thing left for him to have is the kingship.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### translationWords

- [angry, anger](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 18:10-12****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> The next day, an evil spirit sent by God suddenly took control of Saul. He began to act like a madman, inside his house. David was playing the lyre for him, as he did every day. Saul was holding a spear in his hand, <sup>11</sup> and he hurled it at David, thinking, “I will fasten David to the wall with the spear!” He did that two times, but David jumped aside both times.

<sup>12</sup> Because it became evident that Yahweh had abandoned Saul but that he was helping David, Saul was afraid of David.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> The next day a harmful spirit from God rushed upon Saul and he raved within the house. So David played his instrument, as he did each day. Saul had a spear in his hand. <sup>11</sup> Saul threw the spear, for he thought, “I will pin David to the wall.” But David escaped from Saul’s presence twice in this way. <sup>12</sup> Saul was afraid of David, because Yahweh was with him, but was no longer with Saul.

**translationNotes****a harmful spirit from God**

Here “harmful spirit” may refer to either “a spirit that causes trouble” or “an evil spirit.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 16:15](#).

**a harmful spirit from God rushed upon Saul**

The phrase “rushed upon” means the harmful spirit influenced Saul. In this case it means it caused Saul to be troubled and act crazy. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 10:6](#).

**he raved**

“he acted crazy”

**Yahweh was with him**

“Yahweh was with David”

**translationWords**

- [God](#)
- [spear](#)

- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 18:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> So he appointed David as a commander of a thousand soldiers and sent David away from him, hoping that David would be killed in a battle. But when David led his soldiers in their battles, <sup>14</sup> he always had great success, because Yahweh was helping him.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> So Saul removed him from his presence and appointed him a commander of a thousand. In this way David went out and came in before the people. <sup>14</sup> David was prospering in all his ways, for Yahweh was with him.

### translationNotes

#### So Saul removed him from his presence

“So Saul removed David from his presence”

#### a commander of a thousand

Possible meanings are 1) the word “thousand” represents the exact amount of soldiers that he would lead. AT: “a commander of 1,000 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “thousand” does not represent exact number, but is the name of a large military division. AT: “a commander of a large military division” See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 17:18](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

#### David went out and came in before the people

Here “the people” refers to the soldiers under David’s command. The phrases “went out” and “came in” are idioms that refer to leading the people into battle and leading them home from battle. AT: “David led his soldiers into battle and led them home from battle” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [commander](#)
- [David](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 18:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> When Saul heard that David and his soldiers were very successful, he became more afraid of David. <sup>16</sup> But all the people of Israel and of Judah loved David, because he led the soldiers very successfully in the battles.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> When Saul saw that he prospered, he stood in awe of him. <sup>16</sup> But all Israel and Judah loved David, for he went out and came in before them.

**translationNotes****he stood in awe of him**

Here “stood in awe” is an idiom that means to fear. AT: “he feared David” (See: [Idiom](#))

**all Israel and Judah loved David**

Here “Israel and Judah” represent the people of all of the tribes. AT: “all the people in Israel and Judah loved David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**went out and came in before them**

The phrases “went out” and “came in” are idioms that refer to leading the people into battle and leading them home from battle. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 18:13](#). AT: “led his soldiers into battle and led them home from battle” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [awe, awesome](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 18:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> One day Saul said to David, “I am ready to give you my oldest daughter, Merab, to be your wife. I will do that if you serve me bravely by fighting battles for Yahweh against the Philistines.” He said that because he thought, “I will not try to get rid of David by myself. I will allow the Philistines to do that.”

<sup>18</sup> But David said to Saul, “I am not a very important person, and my family is not very important. Also my clan is not a very important Israelite clan. So I do not deserve to become your son-in-law.”

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then Saul said to David, “Here is my oldest daughter Merab. I will give her to you as a wife. Only be courageous for me and fight Yahweh’s battles.” For Saul thought, “Let not my hand be on him, but let the hand of the Philistines be on him.” <sup>18</sup> David said to Saul, “Who am I, and who are my relatives, or my father’s clan in Israel, that I should be son-in-law to the king?”

**translationNotes****Let not my hand be on him, but let the hand of the Philistines be on him**

Harming someone is spoken of as if it were placing one’s hand on that person. Here, Saul is referring to killing David. AT: “I will not be the one to kill him; I will let the Philistines kill him” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

**Who am I, and who are my relatives, or my father’s clan in Israel ... to the king?**

David uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he is not worthy of being Saul’s son-in-law. AT: “I am nobody and neither my relatives nor my father’s family are important enough in Israel ... to the king.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**son-in-law to the king**

“husband of the king’s daughter”

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [clan](#)
- [king](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 18:19****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> So, when it was time for Merab to be given to David to become his wife, instead, Saul gave her to a man named Adriel, from Meholah.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> But at the time when Merab, Saul's daughter, should have been given to David, she was given to Adriel the Meholathite as a wife.

**translationNotes****when Merab, Saul's daughter, should have been given to David**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "when Saul should have given his daughter Merab to David" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**she was given to Adriel**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Saul gave her to Adriel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 18:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> However, Saul's other daughter, Michal, fell in love with David. When they told Saul about that, he was pleased. <sup>21</sup> He thought, "I will give Michal to him, in order that she may trap him, and the Philistines will be able to kill him." So he said to David, "You can marry Michal," and by saying that, he indicated for the second time that David would become his son-in-law.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> But Michal, Saul's daughter, loved David. They told Saul, and this pleased him. <sup>21</sup> Then Saul thought, "I will give her to him, so that she can be a trap for him, and that the hand of the Philistines may be against him." So Saul said to David a second time, "You will be my son-in-law."

### translationNotes

#### Michal ... loved David

Here "loved" means she had romantic feelings for David.

#### They told Saul

Here "they" refers to people who found out about Michal's feelings, not to David and Michal.

#### that the hand of the Philistines may be against him

Harming someone is spoken of as if it were placing one's hand on that person. Here, Saul is referring to killing David. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 18:17](#). AT: "so that the Philistines may kill him" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

#### You will be my son-in-law

"You will be the husband of my daughter"

### translationWords

- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 18:22****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Saul told his servants, “Talk to David privately, and say to him, ‘Listen, the king is pleased with you, and all of us his servants love you. So now we think that you should marry Michal and become the king’s son-in-law.’”

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Saul commanded his servants, “Speak with David in private, and say, ‘See, the king takes pleasure in you, and all his servants love you. Now then, become the king’s son-in-law.’”

**translationNotes****all his servants love you**

“all of his servants admire you”

**Now then**

“For these reasons you should”

**translationWords**

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [king](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 18:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> So they said that to David. But David said, “It would be a great honor to become the king’s son-in-law. But I do not think that I should do that, because I am only a poor and insignificant man.”

<sup>24</sup> Saul’s servant told him what David had said.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> So Saul’s servants spoke these words to David. Then David said, “Is it a small matter to you to be the king’s son-in-law, since I am a poor man, and lightly esteemed?” <sup>24</sup> The servants of Saul reported to him the words which David spoke.

### translationNotes

#### **Is it a small matter to you to be the king’s son-in-law, since I am a poor man, and lightly esteemed?**

David asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that he is not worthy to be the king’s son-in-law. AT: “It is a great matter to be the king’s son-in-law, and I am too poor and unimportant for that.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [David](#)
- [report](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 18:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Saul replied, “Go and say to David, ‘In order for the king to allow you to marry Michal, he wants you to kill one hundred Philistines and to cut off their foreskins and bring the foreskins to him to prove that you have killed them. In that way he will get revenge on his enemies.’” But what Saul really wanted was that the Philistines would kill David while he was trying to kill them.

<sup>26</sup> When the servants told that to David, he was very pleased that he could become the king’s son-in-law by doing that. The king had said how many days he would allow for David to do that.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Then Saul said, “Say this to David, ‘The king does not desire any dowry, only one hundred foreskins of the Philistines, to be avenged from the king’s enemies.’” Now Saul thought to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines. <sup>26</sup> When his servants told David these words, it pleased David to be the king’s son-in-law.

**translationNotes****The king does not desire any dowry, only one hundred foreskins**

The verb for the second phrase may be supplied from the first. AT: “The king does not desire any dowry; he desires only that you bring to him 100 foreskins” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Numbers](#))

**dowry**

“bride price.” In this culture, the man was required to give a gift to the bride’s father.

**foreskins**

The word “foreskin” refers to the fold of skin on a man’s private parts that is removed during circumcision.

**to be avenged from the king’s enemies**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “to get revenge on the king’s enemies” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines**

Here “fall” means to die. The phrase “by the hand” is an idiom that tells us the means by which something will happen, in this case, David will be killed by the Philistines. This can be stated in active form. AT: “to have the Philistines kill David” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 18:27-29****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> But before that time ended, David and his men went and killed, not one hundred, but two hundred Philistines! He brought their foreskins to Saul, and counted them while Saul was watching, in order to prove that he had fulfilled what the king required so that he could become Saul's son-in-law. So then Saul was obligated to allow David to marry his daughter Michal.

<sup>28</sup> But when Saul realized that Yahweh was helping David, and that his daughter loved David, <sup>29</sup> he became more afraid of David. So as long as Saul lived, he was David's enemy.

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> Before those days had expired, David went with his men and killed two hundred Philistines. David brought their foreskins, and they gave them in full number to the king, so that he might be the king's son-in-law. So Saul gave him Michal his daughter as his wife. <sup>28</sup> When Saul saw, and he knew that Yahweh was with David, and that Michal, Saul's daughter, loved him, <sup>29</sup> Saul was even more afraid of David. Saul was continually David's enemy.

**translationNotes****two hundred Philistines**

This can be rendered numerically. AT: "200 Philistines" (See: [Numbers](#))

**they gave them in full number to the king**

"David and his men gave all of them to the king"

**Saul saw, and he knew**

Here the words "saw" and "knew" share similar meanings and emphasize that Saul knew with certainty. AT: "Saul recognized" (See: [Doublet](#))

**Michal, Saul's daughter, loved him**

Here "loved" means she had romantic feelings for David.

**translationWords**

- [king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 18:30****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> The Philistine armies repeatedly came to fight the Israelites, but every time they fought, David and his soldiers were more successful than any of Saul's other army commanders. As a result, David became very famous.

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> Then the princes of the Philistines came out for battle, and as often as they came out, David succeeded more than all the servants of Saul, so that his name was highly regarded.

**translationNotes****so that his name was highly regarded**

Here "name" is a metonym for David. This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that people greatly respected David" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [prince, princess](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [name, names, named](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 19 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### God protects David

Jonathan persuades Saul not to kill David, but Saul again becomes jealous and orders his servants to bring David to him to be killed. God uses Michal to save David. David flees to Samuel and they begin prophesying. When Saul sends servants to capture David, they begin prophesying. This causes Saul to go himself and he begins to prophesy. (See: [jealous](#), [jealousy](#), [save](#), [saves](#), [saved](#), [safe](#) and [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 19:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 19:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Then Saul urged all his servants and his son Jonathan to kill David. But Jonathan liked David very much. <sup>2</sup> So he warned David, "My father Saul is seeking for a way to kill you. So be careful. Tomorrow morning go and find a place to hide in the field. <sup>3</sup> I will ask my father to go out there with me. While we are out there, I will talk to him about you. Then I will tell you everything that he tells me." So David did what Jonathan told him to do.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Saul said to Jonathan his son and to all his servants that they should kill David. But Jonathan, Saul's son, took great pleasure in David. <sup>2</sup> So Jonathan told David, "Saul my father seeks to kill you. Therefore be on your guard in the morning and hide yourself in a secret place. <sup>3</sup> I will go out and stand beside my father in the field where you are, and I will speak with my father about you. If I learn anything, I will tell you."

### translationNotes

#### to all his servants

Here "his" refers to Saul.

#### took great pleasure in David

Jonathan greatly enjoyed being with David.

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [David](#)
- [seek, sought](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 19:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> The next morning, Jonathan spoke with his father, saying many good things about David. He said, "You should never do anything to harm your servant David! He has never done anything to harm you! Everything that he has done has helped you very much. <sup>5</sup> He was in danger of being killed when he fought against Goliath, the great soldier of the Philistine army. By enabling David to kill him, Yahweh won a great victory for all the people of Israel. You were very happy when you saw that. Why would you want to do anything now to harm David? There is no reason for you to kill him, because he has not done anything wrong!"

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Jonathan spoke well of David to Saul his father and said to him, "Do not let the king sin against his servant David. For he has not sinned against you, and his deeds have brought you good. <sup>5</sup> For he took his life in his hand and killed the Philistine. Yahweh brought about a great victory for all Israel. You saw it and rejoiced. Why would you sin against innocent blood by killing David for no reason?"

**translationNotes****Do not let the king sin against his servant**

Jonathan speaks as if Saul is another person to show Saul that Jonathan respects Saul. AT: "Do not sin against your servant" (See: [Pronouns](#))

**he took his life in his hand**

Here "life in his hand" is an idiom that refers to risking his life. AT: "he risked his life" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Why would you sin against innocent blood by killing David for no reason?**

Jonathan asks this question to rebuke Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not sin against innocent blood and kill David without cause." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**sin against innocent blood**

Here "blood" is a metonym for the life of an innocent person. AT: "commit the sin of murder" (See: [Metonymy](#))



### translationWords

- king
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- works, deeds, work, acts
- good, goodness
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Philistines
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- rejoice
- innocent
- blood

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 19:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Saul listened to what Jonathan said. Then Saul said, “I solemnly promise that just as surely as Yahweh is alive, I will not kill David.”

<sup>7</sup> Afterward, Jonathan summoned David and told him what he and Saul had said. Then Jonathan brought David to Saul, and David served Saul as he had done before.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Saul listened to Jonathan. Saul swore, “As Yahweh lives, he will not be put to death.” <sup>7</sup> Then Jonathan called David, and Jonathan told him all these things. Jonathan brought David to Saul, and he was in his presence as before.

**translationNotes****he will not be put to death**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will not put him to death” or “I will not kill him” or “I will certainly keep him alive” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**he was in his presence**

David was in Saul’s presence.

**translationWords**

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 19:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> One day a war started again, and David led his soldiers to fight against the Philistine army. David's army attacked them very furiously, with the result that the Philistine army ran away.

<sup>9</sup> But one day when Saul was sitting in his house, an evil spirit sent from Yahweh suddenly came upon Saul. David was playing his harp for Saul.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> There was war again, and David went out and fought with the Philistines and defeated them with a great slaughter. They fled before him. <sup>9</sup> A harmful spirit from Yahweh came on Saul as he sat in his house with his spear in his hand, and as David was playing his instrument.

**translationNotes****A harmful spirit from Yahweh**

Here "harmful spirit" may refer to either "a spirit that causes trouble" or "an evil spirit." See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 16:14](#).

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [spear](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 19:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Saul hurled his spear at David to try to fasten him to the wall. David dodged, and the spear did not hit him. The spear stuck in the wall, but David ran out into the darkness and escaped.

<sup>11</sup> Then Saul sent messengers to David's house. He told them to watch the house and to kill David while he was leaving the house the following morning. But David's wife Michal saw them and warned him, saying, "To save your life, you must run away tonight, because if you do not do that, you will be killed tomorrow!"

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Saul tried to pin David to the wall with the spear, but he slipped away from Saul's presence, so that Saul drove the spear into the wall. David fled and escaped that night. <sup>11</sup> Saul sent messengers to David's house to watch him that he might kill him in the morning. Michal, David's wife, told him, "If you do not save your life tonight, tomorrow you will be killed."

**translationNotes****pin David to the wall with the spear**

throw his spear so it would go through David and into the wall

**he might kill him**

"Saul might kill David"

**Michal ... told him**

Michal told David

**If you do not save your life**

Here "save your life" is an idiom that refers to escape. AT: "If you do not escape" (See: [Idiom](#))

**you will be killed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone will kill you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 19:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> So she enabled David to climb out through a window, and he ran away and escaped. <sup>13</sup> Then Michal took an idol that was in the house and put it in the bed. She covered it with some of David's clothes, and put some goat's hair on the head of the idol.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> So Michal let David down through the window. He went and fled, and escaped. <sup>13</sup> Michal took a household idol and laid it in the bed. Then she put a pillow of goats' hair at its head, and covered it with the clothes.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Michal helps David escape King Saul. She uses a household idol to make David's bed look like he is sleeping in it.

**she put a pillow of goats' hair at its head, and covered it with the clothes**

Possible meanings are 1) the head of the idol was lying on the goat's hair pillow and Michal dressed the idol in David's clothes or 2) Michal used David's clothes as a blanket to completely cover the idol and made the "pillow" of goat's hair look like David's hair sticking out from under the blanket of clothes.

**translationWords**

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 19:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> When the messengers came to the house the next morning, she told them that David was sick and could not get out of bed.

<sup>15</sup> When they reported that to Saul, he told them to go back to David's house. He said to them, "Bring him to me lying on his bed, in order that I can kill him!"

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> When Saul sent messengers to take David, she said, "He is sick." <sup>15</sup> Then Saul sent the messengers to see David; he said, "Bring him up to me in the bed, so that I may kill him."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Saul acts out his desire to kill David.

#### take David

"take David back to Saul"

#### she said

Here "she" refers to Michal.

#### Bring him up to me in the bed

The reason why the men thought David was in bed can be made explicit. AT: "If he really is too sick to come to me, bring me the bed with him in it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 19:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> But when those men entered David's house, they saw that there was only an idol in the bed, with goat's hair on its head.

<sup>17</sup> When they reported that to Saul, Saul summoned Michal and said to her, "Why did you trick me like that? You allowed my enemy to escape!"

Michal replied to Saul, "David told me that if I did not help him to escape, he would kill me!"

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> When the messengers came in, behold, the household idol was in the bed along with the pillow of goats' hair at its head. <sup>17</sup> Saul said to Michal, "Why have you deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped?" Michal answered Saul, "He said to me, 'Let me go. Why should I kill you?'"

**translationNotes****pillow of goats' hair**

See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 19:13](#).

**behold**

The word "behold" here shows that the messengers were surprised by what they saw.

**Why have you deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped?**

Possible meanings are 1) Saul really wants to know why Michal did what she did or 2) Saul uses this question to rebuke Michal. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not have deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Let me go. Why should I kill you?**

Although David did not actually say this, Michal tells Saul that David threatened her with this question. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "I will kill you if you do not help me to escape." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- messenger
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 19:18-20****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> After David had escaped from Saul, he went to Samuel, who was at his home in Ramah. He told Samuel everything that Saul had done to try to kill him. Then David and Samuel went to Naioth, which was nearby, and they stayed there. <sup>19</sup> Someone told Saul that David was in Naioth, <sup>20</sup> so Saul sent some messengers to capture him. When those messengers arrived in Ramah, they met some men who were shouting messages from Yahweh, and Samuel was there as their leader. When Saul's messengers met them, the Spirit of God came upon Saul's men, and they also shouted in the same way.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Now David fled and escaped, and went to Samuel in Ramah and told him all that Saul had done to him. Then he and Samuel went and stayed in Naioth. <sup>19</sup> It was told to Saul, saying, "See, David is at Naioth in Ramah." <sup>20</sup> Then Saul sent messengers to capture David. When they saw the company of the prophets prophesying, and Samuel standing as head over them, the Spirit of God came on the messengers of Saul, and they also prophesied.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

David flees to Samuel.

**Now**

This word is used here to show that the writer has started to tell a new part of the story.

**It was told to Saul**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone told Saul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**See**

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**standing as head over them**

Here "head" refers to a position of authority. AT: "acting as their leader" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Samuel](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [head](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 19:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> When Saul heard about that, he sent more messengers, but they also started to shout out messages from Yahweh. <sup>22</sup> Finally, Saul also went to Ramah. When he arrived at the well at a place named Seku, he asked people there, “Where are Samuel and David?”

The people replied, “They are at Naioth near the city of Ramah.”

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> When Saul was told this, he sent other messengers, and they also prophesied. So Saul sent messengers again the third time, and they also prophesied. <sup>22</sup> Then he also went to Ramah and came to the deep well that is in Seku. He asked, “Where are Samuel and David?” Someone said, “See, they are at Naioth in Ramah.”

### translationNotes

#### When Saul was told this

This can be stated in active form. AT: “When someone told Saul this” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Ramah ... Seku ... Naioth

These are place names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- Saul (OT)
- messenger
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- well, cistern
- David

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 19:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> While Saul was walking toward Naioth, the Spirit of God also came upon him. While he walked on, he shouted messages from Yahweh until he came to Naioth. <sup>24</sup> There he took off his outer clothes, and he spoke messages from God in front of Samuel. He lay on the ground doing that all day and all night. That is the reason that when people see someone doing something that is very unexpected, they say, “Is Saul also a prophet?”

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> Saul went to Naioth in Ramah. Then the Spirit of God came upon him, and as he went he prophesied until he came to Naioth in Ramah. <sup>24</sup> He stripped off his clothes and also prophesied before Samuel. He lay naked all that day and all that night. This is why they ask, “Is Saul also among the prophets?”

### translationNotes

#### This is why they ask, “Is Saul also among the prophets?”

This became a proverb among the Israelites. Apparently people said this to express surprise when a person unexpectedly did something that he had not done before. The implied meaning of the question can be stated explicitly. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:12](#). AT: “That is the reason that when people see someone doing something that is very unexpected, they say, ‘Is Saul also a prophet?’” (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### they ask

Here “they” refers to people in general. The question became a proverb among the people.

#### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 20 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Jonathan warns David

David tells Jonathan that Saul is still trying to kill him. Jonathan promises to find out if this is true. When David misses dinner two consecutive days, Saul asks about him. Jonathan says that David went home for an annual sacrifice. Saul gets angry at Jonathan, telling him he will never be king unless they kill David. Saul throws his spear at Jonathan. Jonathan warns David to run away, but first they both promise to always be friends. It was usually a king's son who became king after his death in the ancient Near East. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)).

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

David uses a powerful metaphor and an oath to impress Jonathan with the danger he is in: "But as truly as Yahweh lives, and as you live, there is but a step between me and death." (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 20:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 20:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> David ran away from Naioth. He went to Jonathan and asked him, “What have I done to displease your father? What did I do that was wrong? Why is he trying to kill me?”

<sup>2</sup> Jonathan replied, “My father is certainly not trying to kill you! He always tells me before he does anything that he is planning. He tells me about important things and unimportant things that he plans to do. Why would he refuse to tell me if he were planning to kill you? So what you are saying cannot be true.”

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then David fled from Naioth in Ramah and came and said to Jonathan, “What have I done? What is my iniquity? What is my sin before your father, that he seeks to take my life?” <sup>2</sup> Jonathan said to David, “Far from it; you will not die. My father does nothing either great or small without telling it to me. Why should my father hide this thing from me? It is not so.”

**translationNotes****What have I done? What is my iniquity? What is my sin before your father, that he seeks to take my life?**

These three questions mean basically the same thing. David uses them to emphasize that he has done nothing wrong to Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “I have done nothing wrong. I have not committed any iniquity. I have not sinned against your father. He has no reason to take my life.” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

**that he seeks to take my life?**

Here “take my life” is an idiom for “kill me.” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Far from it**

Here “far from it” is an idiom that refers to that it is not true. AT: “This is certainly not true” (See: [Idiom](#))

**nothing either great or small**

The words “great or small” include everything in between. AT: “nothing at all” (See: [Merism](#))

**Why should my father hide this thing from me?**

Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that Saul would have told him if he planned to kill David. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “My father has no reason to hide this thing from me!” or “If this thing were true, my father would certainly let me know!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**It is not so**

“It is not true”

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [seek, sought](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 20:3****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then David solemnly declared this to Jonathan: “Your father knows very well that you and I are very good friends, so he says to himself, ‘I will not tell Jonathan what I am going to do. If I tell Jonathan, he will be upset, and then he will tell David.’ But just as surely as Yahweh is alive and you are alive, I am only one step away from being killed.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Yet David vowed again and said, “Your father knows well that I have found favor in your eyes. He has said, ‘Do not let Jonathan know this, or he will be grieved.’ But as truly as Yahweh lives, and as you live, there is but a step between me and death.”

**translationNotes****I have found favor in your eyes**

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “I have pleased you” or “you consider me favorably” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**he will be grieved**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “this will grieve him” or “he will be very sad” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**there is but a step between me and death**

Here “step between me and death” is an idiom that refers to being very close to death. AT: “I am very close to death” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [vow, vows, vowed](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 20:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> Jonathan said to David, "I will do whatever you tell me to do."

<sup>5</sup> David replied, "Tomorrow we will celebrate the festival of the new moon. I always eat with the king at that festival. But tomorrow I will hide in the field, and I will stay there for one night. I will stay there until the evening of the day after tomorrow."

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> Then Jonathan said to David, "Whatever you say, I will do for you." <sup>5</sup> David said to Jonathan, "Tomorrow is the new moon, and I ought to sit down to eat with the king. But let me go, so that I may hide myself in the field until the third day at evening."

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

David proposes a test against King Saul to Jonathan.

#### Tomorrow is the new moon

On the first of every month the people would celebrate and offer sacrifices to God.

#### until the third day at evening

"until the evening of the day after tomorrow"

### translationWords

- [new moon](#)
- [king](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> If your father asks why I am not there at the festival, say to him, ‘David requested me to allow him to go to his home in Bethlehem, where his family will offer the sacrifice that they offer every year.’  
<sup>7</sup> If your father says ‘Very well’, then I know I will be safe. But if he becomes extremely angry, you will know that he is determined to harm me.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> If your father misses me at all, then say, ‘David earnestly asked leave of me that he might run to Bethlehem his city; because it is the yearly sacrifice there for all the clan.’ <sup>7</sup> If he says, ‘It is well,’ your servant will have peace. But if he is very angry, then know that he has decided on evil.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

David’s continues to describe the test he proposes.

**asked leave of me**

“asked me if I would allow him to leave”

**he says ... he is ... he has decided**

The word “he” refers to Saul.

**your servant will have peace**

David speaks of himself as if he were another person to show that he respects Jonathan. AT: “I, your servant, will have peace” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [family](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Please be kind to me. Yahweh heard you when you made a solemn agreement with me that you and I will always be good friends. But if I deserve to be punished, you should kill me yourself, rather than allow your father to punish me.”

<sup>9</sup> Jonathan replied, “I will never do that! If I ever find out that my father is determined to harm you, I will certainly tell you.”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Therefore deal kindly with your servant. For you have brought your servant into a covenant of Yahweh with you. But if there is sin in me, kill me yourself; for why then should you bring me to your father?” <sup>9</sup> Jonathan said, “Far be it from you! If I learned my father decided harm to come upon you, would I not tell you?”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

David continues speaking to Jonathan.

**with your servant ... have brought your servant**

David speak of himself in the third person as a form of humility. AT: “with me, your servant ... have brought me, your servant” or “with me ... have brought me” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**you have brought your servant into a covenant of Yahweh with you**

What it was that the two men agreed on can be made explicit. AT: “Yahweh heard you when you made a solemn agreement with me that you and I will always be good friends” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for why then should you bring me to your father?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “then there would be no reason for you to bring me to your father” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Far be it from you!**

This is an idiom that means it will never happen to you. AT: “This will never happen to you!” (See: [Idiom](#))

### **would I not tell you?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “I would certainly tell you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### **translationWords**

- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> There Jonathan said to David, "I promise this while Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, is listening: At this time the day after tomorrow, I will find out what my father is thinking about you. If he is saying good things about you, I will certainly send a message to you to tell that to you.

<sup>13</sup> But if he is planning to hurt you, I hope that Yahweh will punish me very severely if I do not tell you in advance and help you flee, so that you might go away in safety. I hope that Yahweh will be with you and help you like he has helped my father.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Jonathan said to David, "May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be witness. When I have questioned my father around this time tomorrow, or the third day, see, if there is good will toward David, will I not then send to you and make it known to you? <sup>13</sup> If it pleases my father to do you harm, may Yahweh do to Jonathan and more also if I do not make it known to you and send you away, so that you may go in peace. May Yahweh be with you, as he has been with my father.

**translationNotes****see**

"look" or "listen" or "pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**if there is good will**

"if my father wants to do good things for you"

**will I not then send to you and make it known to you?**

Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that he will tell David if Saul intends to harm him. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "then I will certainly send to you and make it known to you" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**may Yahweh do to Jonathan and more also**

This is an idiom. Jonathan uses this oath for emphasis and speaks of himself as if he were another person. AT: "may Yahweh do to me whatever harm my father intends to do to you, and even more than that" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Pronouns](#))

**translationWords**

- David
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- good, goodness
- send, send out, sent
- know, knowledge, make known
- peace, peaceful

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 20:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> But while I am still alive, please act kindly toward me because of the oath that we both swore in Yahweh's sight; do not kill me when you become king. <sup>15</sup> But if I die, never stop acting kindly toward my family for the sake of our oath, even after Yahweh has gotten rid of all your enemies all over the earth."

<sup>16</sup> So Jonathan made a solemn agreement with David and his descendants. And he said, "I hope that Yahweh will get rid of all your enemies."

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> If I am still alive, will you not show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die? <sup>15</sup> Do not cut off your covenant faithfulness from my house forever—not even when Yahweh cuts off every one of the enemies of David from the face of the earth." <sup>16</sup> So Jonathan made a covenant with the house of David and said, "May Yahweh require an accounting from the hand of the enemies of David."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

Jonathan asks David not to completely kill all his offspring so that a remnant will remain.

**will you not show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die?**

Jonathan asks this question to confirm that David will do this. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "please show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh**

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithful." Possible meanings for "of Yahweh" are 1) "be faithful to me as Yahweh is faithful" or 2) "be faithful to me as Yahweh requires" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**house of David**

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who live in the house. AT: "David's family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**May Yahweh require an accounting from the hand of the enemies of David**

The hand is a synecdoche for the person. Possible meanings are 1) “May Yahweh use David’s enemies to punish David if David breaks this promise” or 2) “May Yahweh destroy the enemies of David.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [house](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [face](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> And Jonathan requested David to repeat his solemn promise to be his close friend, because Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself.

<sup>18</sup> Then Jonathan said, "Tomorrow we will celebrate the festival of the new moon. When you are not sitting at your place when we eat, my father will miss you. <sup>19</sup> The day after tomorrow, in the evening go to the place where you hid before. Wait by the pile of stones.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Jonathan made David vow again because of the love that he had for him, because he loved him as he loved his own soul. <sup>18</sup> Then Jonathan said to him, "Tomorrow is the new moon. You will be missed because your seat will be empty. <sup>19</sup> When you have stayed three days, go down quickly and come to the place where you hid yourself when the business was in hand, and stay by the stone Ezel.

**translationNotes****he loved him as he loved his own soul**

Here "his own soul" refers to himself. AT: "Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**You will be missed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "My father will miss you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**when the business was in hand**

Here "business was in hand" is an idiom that refers to when everything happened. AT: "when everything happened" (See: [Idiom](#))

**the stone Ezel**

"Ezel" was the name of the stone. AT: "the stone that people call Ezel" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [Jonathan](#)
- [vow, vows, vowed](#)

- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [soul, souls](#)
- [new moon](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> I will come out and shoot three arrows as though I were trying to shoot at a target. The arrows will hit the ground close to the pile of stones. <sup>21</sup> Then I will send a boy to bring the arrows back to me. If you hear me say to him, 'They are closer to me,' then just as surely as Yahweh is alive, you will know that everything is fine, and that you will not be killed.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> I will shoot three arrows to the side of it, as though I were shooting at a target. <sup>21</sup> Then I will send my young man and say to him, 'Go find the arrows.' If I say to the young boy, 'Look, the arrows are on this side of you; get them,' then come; for there will be safety for you and not harm, as Yahweh lives.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Jonathan continues to speak to David.

**to the side of it**

Here the word "it" refers to the stone by which David was to hide.

**my young man ... the young boy**

These refer to the same person.

**Look**

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**then come**

"then you, David, come"

**translationWords**

- bow and arrow

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 20:22-23

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> But if I tell him, ‘The arrows are farther away,’ you will know that you must leave immediately, because Yahweh wants you to run away. <sup>23</sup> I hope that Yahweh will watch you and me and enable us to never forget what we have promised each other.”

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> ”But if I say to the young man, ‘Look, the arrows are beyond you,’ then go your way, for Yahweh has sent you away. <sup>23</sup> As for the agreement of which you and I have spoken, see, Yahweh is between you and me forever.”

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

Jonathan continues to speak to David.

#### see

The word “see” here adds emphasis to what follows. AT: “indeed”

#### Yahweh is between you and me

Possible meanings are 1) “Yahweh is a witness between you and me” or “Yahweh will be watching how we treat each other” or 2) “May Yahweh be a witness between you and me” or “May Yahweh watch how we treat each other”

### translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [forever](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 20:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> So David went and hid in the field. When the festival of the new moon started, the king sat down to eat. <sup>25</sup> He sat where he usually sat, close to the wall. Jonathan sat across from him, and Abner the army commander sat next to Saul. But no one was sitting in the place where David usually sat.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> So David hid himself in the field. When the new moon came, the king sat down to eat food. <sup>25</sup> The king sat on his seat, as usual, on the seat by the wall. Jonathan stood up, and Abner sat by Saul's side. But David's place was empty.

### translationNotes

#### Jonathan stood up

Some ancient copies have "Jonathan sat across from him." (See: [Original Manuscripts](#))

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [new moon](#)
- [king](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [Abner](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 20:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> On that day, Saul did not say anything about David, because he was thinking, “Something must have happened that caused David to become unacceptable to worship God.” <sup>27</sup> But the next day, when David was not sitting at the place where he usually sat, Saul asked Jonathan, “Why has that son of Jesse not been here to eat with us yesterday and today?”

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Yet Saul did not say anything that day, because he thought, “Something has happened to him. He is not clean; surely he is not clean.” <sup>27</sup> But on the second day, the day after the new moon, David’s place was empty. Saul said to Jonathan his son, “Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal either yesterday or today?”

**translationNotes****He is not clean; surely he is not clean**

According to the law of Moses, a person who is ceremonially unclean is not to participate in the feast until the priest declares that he is clean. Saul repeats this phrase as if he is trying to convince himself.

**translationWords**

- Saul (OT)
- clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes
- Jesse

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> Jonathan replied, "David earnestly requested me that I permit him to go to Bethlehem. <sup>29</sup> He said, 'Please allow me to go, because our family is going to offer a sacrifice. My older brother insisted that I be there. So please allow me to go to be with my older brothers.' I allowed David to go, and that is the reason that he is not here eating with you."

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> Jonathan answered Saul, "David earnestly asked permission from me to go to Bethlehem. <sup>29</sup> He said, 'Please let me go. For our family has a sacrifice in the city, and my brother has ordered me to be there. Now, if I have found favor in your eyes, please let me go and see my brothers.' For this reason he has not come to the king's table."

**translationNotes****asked permission from me to go**

"asked me to allow him to go"

**if I have found favor in your eyes**

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 20:3](#). AT: "I have pleased you" or "you consider me favorably" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the king's table**

Jonathan speaks of Saul as if he is another person to show that he respects Saul. AT: "your table" (See: [Pronouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [family](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 20:30-31

### UDB:

<sup>30</sup> Saul was furious! He said to Jonathan, "I know that you are being loyal to that son of Jesse. But you will cause shame to come to yourself and to your mother. <sup>31</sup> As long as Jesse's son is living, you will never become the king, and you will never rule over this kingdom! So now, summon David, and bring him to me. He must be executed!"

### ULB:

<sup>30</sup> Then Saul's anger burned against Jonathan, and he said to him, "You son of a perverse, rebellious woman! Do I not know that you have chosen the son of Jesse to your own shame, and to the shame of your mother's nakedness? <sup>31</sup> For as long as the son of Jesse lives on the earth, neither you nor your kingdom will be established. Now then, send and bring him to me, for he must surely die."

### translationNotes

#### Saul's anger burned against Jonathan

Here "anger burned" is a metonymy that refers to becoming very angry. AT: "Saul became very angry with Jonathan" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### You son of a perverse, rebellious woman!

This is an idiom. Saul uses this phrase as a harsh rebuke to Jonathan and his concern for David. AT: "You stupid son of a prostitute" or "You stupid traitor" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Do I not know that you have chosen the son of Jesse ... mother's nakedness?

Saul uses this question to emphasize that he knows that Jonathan and David are friends. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "I know that you have chosen the son of Jesse ... mother's nakedness." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### to the shame of your mother's nakedness

Here "mother's nakedness" is an idiom that refers to the mother who gave birth to you. AT: "to the shame of your mother who gave birth to you" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### neither you nor your kingdom will be established

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you will not become king and will not establish your kingdom" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### translationWords

- angry, anger
- Jonathan
- perverse, perversely, pervert
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- earth, earthly
- kingdom
- death, die, dead

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 20:32-34

### UDB:

<sup>32</sup> Jonathan asked his father, “Why should David be executed? What wrong has he done?” <sup>33</sup> Then Saul threw his spear at Jonathan in order to kill him, but the spear did not hit him. So Jonathan knew that his father really wanted to kill David.

<sup>34</sup> Jonathan was very angry, and he left the room. On that second day of the festival he refused to eat anything. He was disgusted about what his father had done, and he was worried about David.

### ULB:

<sup>32</sup> Jonathan answered Saul his father, “For what reason should he be put to death? What has he done?” <sup>33</sup> Then Saul threw his spear at him to kill him. So Jonathan knew that his father was determined to put David to death. <sup>34</sup> Jonathan got up from the table in fierce anger and ate no food the second day of the month, for he was grieved over David, because his father had dishonored him.

### translationNotes

#### For what reason should he be put to death? What has he done?

Jonathan is trying to get Saul to think carefully about what he is doing. This can be translated as a statement, and the words “should he be put to death” can be translated in active form. AT: “You have no good reason to put him to death. He has done nothing wrong.” or “You have no good reason to kill him. He has done nothing wrong.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### the second day of the month

This “second” is an ordinal number which refers to two. AT: “the second day of the new moon festival” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

#### he was grieved over David

This can be stated in active form. AT: “he was grieving over David” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### had dishonored him

Here “him” refers to David.

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [spear](#)
- [David](#)
- [day](#)
- [month](#)
- [dishonor, dishonorable](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:35-37****UDB:**

<sup>35</sup> The following morning Jonathan went out to the field to give a message to David, as he had agreed that he would do. He took a young boy with him. <sup>36</sup> Jonathan said to the boy, “Run and find the arrows that I shoot.” The boy started running, and Jonathan shot an arrow ahead of the boy. <sup>37</sup> The boy ran to the place where the arrow hit the ground, but Jonathan called out, “The arrow is further away!”

**ULB:**

<sup>35</sup> In the morning, Jonathan went out into the field to the appointment with David, and a young man was with him. <sup>36</sup> He said to his young man, “Run and find the arrows that I shoot.” As the young man ran, he shot an arrow beyond him. <sup>37</sup> When the young man came to the place where the arrow that Jonathan shot had landed, Jonathan called after the young man, and said, “Is not the arrow beyond you?”

**translationNotes****a young man was with him**

Here “him” refers to Jonathan.

**he shot an arrow beyond him**

“Jonathan shot an arrow beyond the young man”

**Is not the arrow beyond you?**

Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that the arrow is farther ahead of the young man. The uses of litotes also emphasizes this. The rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “You should know that the arrow is beyond you.” or “The arrow is far beyond you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Litotes](#))

**translationWords**

- [bow and arrow](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:38-40****UDB:**

<sup>38</sup> Then he shouted to the boy, “Go quickly; do not wait! Do not stop!” The boy picked up the arrow and brought it back to Jonathan. <sup>39</sup> But the boy did not understand the meaning of what Jonathan had said; only Jonathan and David knew. <sup>40</sup> Then Jonathan gave his bow and arrows to the boy and told him, “Go back to the town.”

**ULB:**

<sup>38</sup> Then Jonathan called after the young man, “Hurry, be quick, do not stay!” So Jonathan’s young man gathered up the arrows and came to his master. <sup>39</sup> But the young man did not know anything. Only Jonathan and David knew the matter. <sup>40</sup> Jonathan gave his weapons to his young man and said to him, “Go, take them to the city.”

**translationNotes****called after the young man, “Hurry**

“called out to the young man, who was running away from him, ‘Hurry”

**translationWords**

- Jonathan
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- know, knowledge, make known

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 20:41-42****UDB:**

<sup>41</sup> When the boy left, David came out from behind the pile of stones, where he had been hiding. He went to Jonathan and bowed in front of Jonathan three times, with his face touching the ground. Then David and Jonathan kissed each other on the cheek, and they cried together. But David cried more than Jonathan.

<sup>42</sup> Jonathan said to David, “May things go well for you as you go. Yahweh has heard what we solemnly promised to always do for each other, and what we said that our descendants must do for each other.” Then David left, and Jonathan went back to the town.

**ULB:**

<sup>41</sup> As soon as the young man was gone, David stood up from behind the mound, lay facedown on the ground, and bowed himself three times. They kissed one another and wept together, with David weeping the more. <sup>[1]</sup> Modern versions interpret this passage in different ways because the Hebrew text is difficult to understand. <sup>42</sup> Jonathan said to David, “Go in peace, because we have both sworn in the name of Yahweh and said, ‘May Yahweh be between you and me, and between my descendants and your descendants, forever.’” Then David stood up and left, and Jonathan returned to the city.

---

20:41 <sup>[1]</sup>The Hebrew text reads, *David came out from beside the south.*

**translationNotes****the mound**

It seems that David had hidden behind a pile of earth or stones.

**lay facedown on the ground, and bowed himself three times.**

David bowed before Jonathan, who was still the King’s son, worthy of such respect. Also, this was the last time David met with Jonathan.

**May Yahweh be between you and me**

Possible meanings are 1) “Yahweh is a witness between you and me” or “Yahweh will be watching how we treat each other” or 2) “May Yahweh be a witness between you and me” or “May Yahweh watch how we treat each other.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 20:23](#).

### translationWords

- David
- bow, bow down
- kiss
- peace, peaceful
- oath, swear, swear by
- name, names, named
- Yahweh
- descendant, descended from
- forever

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 20 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 21 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotes, songs, or poems. The ULB sets [1 Samuel 21:11](#) apart through the use of indentation because it is a song.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David and the chief priest

David visits the chief priest and lies to him about being on a special mission for the king. He asks for food, weapons, and prayer. The chief priest gives him some sacred bread and Goliath's sword and prays for him.

#### David and the king of Gath

David flees to Gath. The advisers to the king tell him that David is almost the king of Israel. David becomes afraid of the king and pretends to be insane.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical questions

The king of Gath's advisers use two rhetorical questions to warn him about how dangerous David could be: "Is not this David the king of the land? Did they not sing to one another about him in dances, 'Saul has killed his thousands, and David his ten thousands?'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [1 Samuel 21:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 21:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> David fled from there and went to the city of Nob to see Ahimelech the priest. Ahimelech trembled when he saw David because he was afraid that something bad had happened. He said to David, “Why are you alone? Why have no men come with you?”

<sup>2</sup> David deceived Ahimelech by replying, “The king sent me. But he does not want anyone to know anything about what he sent me to do. I have told my men where they should meet me.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Then David came to Nob to see Ahimelech the priest. Ahimelech came to meet David trembling and said to him, “Why are you alone and have no one with you?” <sup>2</sup> David said to Ahimelech the priest, “The king has sent me on a mission and has said to me, ‘Let no one know anything about the business I am sending you, and what I have commanded you.’ I have directed the young men to a certain place.

**translationNotes****Nob**

place name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Ahimelech**

a man’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**trembling**

shaking in fear

**on a mission**

“to do work for him”

**I have directed the young men to a certain place**

“I have told the young men to go to another place, and I will meet them there later”

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [king](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 21:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Now I want to know, do you have any food here for me to eat? Could you give me five loaves of bread, or whatever other food that you can find?"

<sup>4</sup> The priest answered David, "There is no ordinary bread here, but I have some of the sacred bread that was placed before Yahweh. Your men may eat it if they have not slept with women recently."

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Now then what do you have on hand? Give me five loaves of bread, or whatever is here." <sup>4</sup> The priest answered David and said, "There is no ordinary bread on hand, but there is holy bread—if the young men have kept themselves from women."

**translationNotes****Now then**

David is starting a new part of the conversation.

**what do you have on hand?**

Here "on hand" is a metonymy meaning "available." AT: "What food do you have that you can give me?" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Give me five loaves of bread**

This is a polite request.

**ordinary bread**

bread that the priests have not used in worship

**holy bread**

bread that the priests have used in worship

**if the young men have kept themselves from women**

This can be translated as a complete sentence. AT: "Your men may eat it if they have not slept with women recently" (See: [Ellipsis](#))



**translationWords**

- [bread](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 21:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> David replied, “They have not been near women for many days. I do not allow my men to defile themselves by sleeping with women while they are preparing to fight in battles. They must continue to keep themselves acceptable to God when they are on ordinary trips, and today they have certainly kept themselves acceptable to God because now we are doing something very special.” <sup>6</sup> Now the only bread that the priest had was the bread on display before God, the bread that had been placed in Yahweh’s presence in the sacred tent. So the priest gave David some of that bread. On that day the priest had taken those loaves from the table and replaced them with fresh loaves.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> David answered the priest, “Surely women have been kept from us for the past three days, as usual when I set out. The things belonging to the men have been set apart even on ordinary missions. How much more today will what they have be set apart!” <sup>6</sup> So the priest gave him the bread that was set apart. For there was no bread there except the bread of the presence, which was removed from before Yahweh, in order to put hot bread in its place on the day it was taken away.

**translationNotes****women have been kept from us**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “we have kept ourselves from women” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**three days**

“3 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

**when I set out**

“when I begin a journey”

**The things belonging to the men have been set apart**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “The men have set what belongs to them apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**How much more today will what they have be set apart**

This is a statement, not a question. It can be translated in active form. AT: “It is especially true today that they will set apart what they have” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the bread that was set apart**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “the bread that the priests had set apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**which was removed from before Yahweh, in order to put**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “which the priests had removed from before Yahweh so that they could put” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [bread](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 21:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> It happened that Doeg, from the Edom people group, was there on that day to make himself acceptable to Yahweh, and he saw what Ahimelech did. He was one of Saul's officials and the leader of Saul's shepherds.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Now one of the servants of Saul was there that day, detained before Yahweh. His name was Doeg the Edomite, the chief of Saul's herdsman.

**translationNotes****detained before Yahweh**

Possible meanings are that 1) Doeg had some religious work regarding Yahweh to do there. AT: "for some work before Yahweh" or 2) Yahweh detained Doeg there. AT: "because Yahweh had detained him there" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Doeg ... herdsman**

You may need to say clearly that Doeg saw what David did. AT: "Doeg ... herdsman, and he saw what Ahimelech did" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Doeg**

man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**herdsman**

the keepers and protectors of a herd, especially of cattle or sheep

**translationWords**

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [chief](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 21:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> David asked Ahimelech, “Do you have a spear or a sword that I can use? The king appointed us to do this task and told us to leave immediately, so I did not have time to bring any weapons.”

<sup>9</sup> Ahimelech replied, “I have only the sword that belonged to Goliath the giant from the Philisti people group whom you killed in Elah Valley. It is wrapped in a cloth, and is behind the sacred apron in the sacred tent. If you want it, take it, because I have no other weapon here.”

David replied, “Truly, there is no other sword that is as good as that one! Give it to me.”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> David said to Ahimelech, “Now is there not here on hand any spear or sword? For I brought neither my sword nor my weapons with me, because the king’s business was urgent.” <sup>9</sup> The priest said, “The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom you killed in the Valley of Elah, is here wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod. If you want to take that, take it, for there is no other weapon here.” David said, “There is no other sword like that one; give it to me.”

**translationNotes****Now is there not here on hand any spear or sword?**

Here “on hand” is a metonymy meaning “available.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:3](#). AT: “Do you have a spear or sword that you can give me?” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**weapons**

a general name for such things as swords, knives, bows and arrows, and spears

**Valley of Elah**

This is the name of a place in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [spear](#)
- [sword](#)
- [king](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Goliath](#)

- [Philistines](#)
- [ephod](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 21:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> So Ahimelech gave it to him, and David left there. He and his men and went to the city of Gath in the region of Philistia, to stay with King Achish. <sup>11</sup> But the officers of King Achish did not approve of David's coming. They said to King Achish, "This man David is just as powerful as the king of his land. Our enemies, the Israelite people, honored him by dancing and singing,

'Saul has killed thousands of his enemies,  
but David has killed tens of thousands of them!'"

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> David arose and fled that day from Saul and went to Achish, the king of Gath. <sup>11</sup> Achish's servants said to him, "Is not this David, the king of the land? Did they not sing to one another about him in dances,

'Saul has killed his thousands,  
and David his ten thousands?'"

**translationNotes****Is not this David, the king of the land?**

They were probably exaggerating when they said that David was king of the land. They used this question to imply that David was a powerful enemy and Achish should not let him stay there. AT: "You know that this is David, who is as dangerous as the king of the land" (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Did they not sing to one another about him in dances, 'Saul ... thousands?'**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You know that when the people of the land were dancing, they sang to each other about him, 'Saul ... thousands.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- David
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Saul (OT)
- Gath
- servant, slave, slavery



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 21:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> David heard what those men were saying, so he was afraid of what King Achish might do to him.

<sup>13</sup> So he pretended that he was insane. He started scratching on the gates of the city and allowing his saliva to run down his beard.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> David took these words to heart and was very afraid of Achish, the king of Gath. <sup>13</sup> He changed his behavior before them and pretended to be insane in their hands; he made marks on the doors of the gate and let his saliva run down his beard.

### translationNotes

#### David took these words to heart

Here “took ... to heart” is a metonymy to think seriously about what was said. AT: “David thought seriously about what the servants said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### in their hands

Here “hands” are a synecdoche for the person. AT: “in their presence” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [king](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 21:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Then King Achish said to his men, "Look at this man! He is acting like an insane man! Why have you brought him to me? <sup>15</sup> Have you brought him because I do not already have enough insane men here in my house?"

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Then Achish said to his servants, "Look, you see the man is mad. Why have you brought him to me? <sup>15</sup> Do I lack madmen, so that you have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence? Will this fellow really come into my house?"

### translationNotes

#### Why have you brought him to me?

Possible meanings are 1) Achish demands that his servants explain why they have brought David to him or 2) Achish is scolding them with a rhetorical question. AT: "You should have known not to bring him to me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Do I lack madmen, so that you have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke. AT: "There are enough madmen here who waste my time. You should not have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Will this fellow really come into my house?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "Do not allow this fellow to enter my house." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### translationWords

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [house](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

There are two stories in this chapter: David gathering a group of followers and Saul having all the priests and their families killed. (See: [priest](#), [priests](#), [priesthood](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David assembles a force of unhappy people

David hides in the wilderness, and people in trouble come to him. Soon he has a force of 500 men. The prophet then tells him to leave the wilderness. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

#### Saul and the chief priest's family

Doeg tells Saul that Ahimelech the priest gave David food and a sword and prayed for him. Saul accuses the priests of encouraging David to rebel. This is a serious accusation because the priests are God's representatives and are rebelling against God's king if the accusation is true. Saul has the priests and all their families killed except those who escape to David. (See: [high priest](#))

### Links:

- [1 Samuel 22:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 22:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> David and his men left Gath and went east to hide in a cave on a hill near the town of Adullam. Soon his older brothers and all his other relatives came and stayed with him there. <sup>2</sup> Then other men came there. Some were men who had caused trouble, some were men who owed money, and some were men who were unhappy for any reason. They continued to come until there were four hundred men there, and David was their leader.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> So David left there and escaped to the cave of Adullam. When his brothers and all his father's house heard it, they went down there to him. <sup>2</sup> Everyone who was in distress, everyone who was in debt, and everyone who was discontented—they all gathered to him. David became captain over them. There were about four hundred men with him.

**translationNotes****cave**

a hollow space under the ground, generally opening into the side of a hill, large enough for people to enter

**Adullam**

This is the name of a town near the city of Gath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**heard it**

heard that David had gone to hide in the cave

**Everyone who was in distress ... everyone who was discontented**

This is a generalization. AT: "Many people who were distressed ... many people who were unhappy" (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**captain**

military officer who leads soldiers

**four hundred**

"400" (See: [Numbers](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [house](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 22:3-5****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> Later they left there and went east to the city of Mizpah in the land of Moab. There David asked the king of Moab, “Please allow my father and mother to live here with you until I know what God is going to do for me.” <sup>4</sup> The king gave him permission, so David’s parents stayed with the king of Moab all the time that David and the men who were with him were hiding in that area.

<sup>5</sup> One day the prophet Gad told David, “Leave your hideout here and return to Judah.” So David and his men went to the Hereth Forest in Judah.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then David went from there to Mizpah in Moab. He said to the king of Moab, “Please let my father and my mother go out with you until I know what God will do for me.” <sup>[1]</sup> and some modern versions read this way. <sup>4</sup> He left them with the king of Moab. His father and mother stayed with him the whole time that David was in his stronghold. <sup>5</sup> Then the prophet Gad said to David, “Do not stay in your stronghold. Leave and go into the land of Judah.” So David left there and went into the forest of Hereth.

---

22:3 <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient versions have, *Please let my father and my mother stay with you,*

**translationNotes****Then David went from there**

“Then David went from the cave at Adullam”

**Mizpah**

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**go out with you**

David wanted his parents to live with the king of Moab so that King Saul would not be able to harm them. Translators can express his basic meaning by using the ideas of “come to stay with you,” “stay with you,” or “live here with you,” as in the UDB.

**go into the land of Judah**

“go to your home land of Judah”

**Hereth**

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- David
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- king
- ancestor, father, forefather
- know, knowledge, make known
- God
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Gad
- Judah

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 22:6

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> One day, someone told Saul that David and his men had arrived in Judah. On that day, Saul was sitting underneath the tamarisk tree on a hill near the town of Gibeah. He was holding his spear and was surrounded by his army officers.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> Saul heard that David had been discovered, along with the men who were with him. Now Saul was sitting in Gibeah under the tamarisk tree in Ramah, with his spear in his hand, and all his servants were standing around him.

### translationNotes

#### David had been discovered, along with the men who were with him

Saul was most interested in David, so the writer mentions the other men separately. This can be translated in active form. AT: “someone had discovered where David and all the men who were with him were hiding” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### the tamarisk tree

This is a type of tree. AT: “a large shade tree” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### in Ramah

Ramah is the name of a place in Gibeah. The name means “high place.” Possible meanings are 1) it refers here to the place called Ramah, or 2) it refers to any high place. AT: “on a hill”

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [spear](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 22:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> He shouted to them, "You men of the tribe of Benjamin, listen to me! Do you think that the son of Jesse will give all of you fields and vineyards if he becomes your king? Will he appoint all of you to become generals and captains in his army? <sup>8</sup> Is that why you have all conspired against me, as he is doing today? Not one of you informed me that my own son had sworn friendship with him! Not one of you has had any pity on me or told me that my son has encouraged the son of Jesse to revolt against me, to hide out from me!"

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Saul said to his servants who stood around him, "Listen now, people of Benjamin! Will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards? Will he make you all captains of thousands and captains of hundreds, <sup>8</sup> in exchange for all of you plotting against me? None of you informs me when my son makes a covenant with the son of Jesse. None of you is sorry for me. None of you informs me that my son has incited my servant David against me. Today he hides and waits for me so he may attack me."

**translationNotes****Will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards?**

Saul uses a question to emphasize that David, who is from the tribe of Judah, does not desire to do this for the people of the tribe of Benjamin. AT: "The son of Jesse will not give you fields or vineyards." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Will the son of Jesse give**

The time when he will give can be made explicit. AT: "When the son of Jesse becomes king, will he give" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the son of Jesse**

"David"

**Will he make you all captains ... me?**

Saul uses a question to emphasize that David, who is from the tribe of Judah, does not desire to do this for the people of the tribe of Benjamin. AT: "He will not make you captains ... against me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Will he make you all captains**

You may need to make explicit when he will make them captains. AT: “When he becomes king, will he make you all captains” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**captains of thousands and captains of hundreds**

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these captains led. AT: “captains of 1,000 soldiers and captains of 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. AT: “captains of large military divisions and captains of smaller military divisions” See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 17:18](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 22:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Doeg, a man from the Edom people group, was standing there with Saul's officers. He said to Saul, "When I was at Nob, I saw that son of Jesse talking to Ahimelech the priest. <sup>10</sup> Ahimelech asked Yahweh what David should do. Then Ahimelech gave to David some food and the sword of Goliath, that Philistine giant."

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Then Doeg the Edomite, who stood by the servants of Saul, answered, "I saw the son of Jesse come to Nob, to Ahimelech son of Ahitub. <sup>10</sup> He prayed to Yahweh that he might help him, and he gave him provisions and the sword of Goliath the Philistine."

**translationNotes****Doeg the Edomite**

man's name. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Nob ... Ahimelech**

place name and man's name. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Ahitub**

man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**He prayed to Yahweh that he might help him, and he gave him**

Ahitub prayed to Yahweh that Yahweh might help David, and Ahitub gave David

**translationWords**

- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Goliath](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 22:11-13****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then Saul summoned Ahimelech and all Ahimelech's relatives who were priests at Nob. So they all came to the king. <sup>12</sup> Saul said to Ahimelech, "You son of Ahitub, listen to me!"

Ahimelech answered, "Yes, sir!" <sup>13</sup> Saul said, "Why are you and Jesse's son conspiring to get rid of me? You gave him some bread and a sword. You requested God to tell David what he should do. David has rebelled against me, and right now he is hiding somewhere, waiting to attack me."

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Then the king sent someone to summon the priest Ahimelech son of Ahitub and all his father's house, the priests who were in Nob. All of them came to the king. <sup>12</sup> Saul said, "Listen now, son of Ahitub." He answered, "Here I am, my master." <sup>13</sup> Saul said to him, "Why have you plotted against me, you and the son of Jesse, in that you have given him bread, and a sword, and have prayed to God that he might help him, so that he might rise up against me, to hide in secret, as he does today?"

**translationNotes****in that you have given**

"by giving"

**rise up**

"rebel" or "fight"

**translationWords**

- king
- send, send out, sent
- priest, priests, priesthood
- ancestor, father, forefather
- house
- Saul (OT)
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- Jesse
- bread
- sword
- God
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 22:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Ahimelech replied, "I do not understand why you are saying that, because David, your son-in-law, the captain of your bodyguards, is very loyal to you. No one is more loyal to you than David! Everyone in your household respects him very much. <sup>15</sup> Furthermore, this was certainly not the first time that I requested God to say what he wanted David to do. And it is not right for you to accuse me or any of my relatives of trying to get rid of you, because I do not know anything about anyone wanting to do that."

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then Ahimelech answered the king and said, "Who among all your servants is so faithful as David, who is the king's son-in-law and is over your bodyguard, and is honored in your house? <sup>15</sup> Is today the first time I have prayed to God to help him? Far be it from me! Do not let the king impute anything to his servant or to all the house of my father. For your servant knows nothing of this whole matter."

**translationNotes****Who among all your servants is so faithful as David ... house?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "None of your servants is as faithful as David ... house." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**bodyguard**

a person or group of people who protect someone

**is honored in your house**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. This can be translated in active form. AT: "whom your family honors" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Is today the first time I have prayed to God to help him?**

Ahimelech asks himself this question before Saul can ask it, then immediately answers it. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "This is not the first time I have prayed to God to help David." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Far be it from me!**

This idiom means "Absolutely not!" (See: [Idiom](#))



**Do not let the king impute anything to his servant or to all the house of my father. For your servant knows nothing**

Ahimelech speaks of himself in the third person as the “servant.” Ahimelech also refers to Saul in the third person as “the king.” Ahimelech speaks this way to show respect to Saul. AT: “Please, King Saul, do not consider me, your servant, or anyone in the house of my father to be guilty. For I know nothing” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**impute**

to consider someone guilty

**to all the house of my father**

Here “house” represents “family.” AT: “to all my father’s family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [king](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [David](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [God](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 22:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> The king then shouted, “Ahimelech, you and your all your relatives are going to be executed right now!”

<sup>17</sup> Then he commanded his bodyguards, “Kill these priests of Yahweh, because they are allies of David, and they are conspiring with David against me! They knew that David was trying to run away from me, but they did not tell me!”

But Saul’s bodyguards refused to kill Yahweh’s priests.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> The king replied, “You will surely die, Ahimelech, you and all your father’s house.” <sup>17</sup> The king said to the guard that stood around him, “Turn and kill the priests of Yahweh. Because their hand also is with David, and because they knew that he fled, but did not reveal it to me.” But the servants of the king would not put out their hand to kill the priests of Yahweh.

**translationNotes****your father’s house**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. AT: “your father’s family” or “your father’s descendants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the guard that stood around him**

“the soldiers standing nearby to protect him”

**Turn and kill**

Here “Turn” means to turn around or turn away from the king. AT: “Go and kill” or “Kill” (See: [Idiom](#))

**their hand also is with David**

The word “hand” is a metonym for the work done with the hand. AT: “they also help David” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**would not put out their hand to kill**

The word “hand” is a metonym for the work done with the hand. AT: “did not do anything to kill” or “refused to kill” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- king
- death, die, dead
- ancestor, father, forefather
- house
- turn, turn away, turn back
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- David
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- servant, slave, slavery

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 22:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Then the king said to Doeg, “You kill them!” So Doeg, the man from the Edom people group, went out and struck them down with his sword. On that day he killed eighty-five men who were able to wear the sacred aprons because they were all God’s priests. <sup>19</sup> He also went and killed many people in Nob, the city where the priests lived. He killed men, women, children, babies, cattle, donkeys, and sheep there.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> Then the king said to Doeg, “Turn and kill the priests.” So Doeg the Edomite turned and attacked the priests; he killed eighty-five persons who wore a linen ephod that day. <sup>19</sup> He also put to the sword, Nob, the city of the priests; both men and women, children and infants, and oxen and donkeys and sheep he put to the sword.

### translationNotes

#### Turn and kill the priests ... turned and attacked the priests

Here “Turn” means to turn around or turn away from the king. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 22:17](#). AT: “Go and kill the priests ... went and attacked” or “Kill the priest ... attacked the priests” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Doeg the Edomite turned and attacked ... he killed ... He also put to the sword ... he put to the sword

Possible meanings are 1) Doeg killed all the priests himself or 2) the word “Doeg” is a synecdoche for Doeg and the men who went with him. AT: “Doeg and his men turned and attacked ... they killed ... They put to the sword ... they put to the sword” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

#### eighty-five persons

“85 men” or “85 priests” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### put to the sword

“killed with the sword”

#### Nob

Nob is the name of a city. Here the name “Nob” represents the people of that city. AT: “the people in the city of Nob” or “the people of Nob” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- king
- turn, turn away, turn back
- priest, priests, priesthood
- ephod
- sword
- children, child
- ox, oxen
- donkey, mule
- sheep, ram, ewe

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 22:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> But Abiathar, Ahimelech's son, escaped. He ran away and joined David and the men who were with him. <sup>21</sup> He told David that Saul had commanded Doeg to kill Yahweh's priests.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> But one of the sons of Ahimelech son of Ahitub, named Abiathar, escaped and fled after David. <sup>21</sup> Abiathar told David that Saul had killed Yahweh's priests.

**translationNotes****Abiathar**

man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 23 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Saul chases David

Saul wants to kill David, but David trusts in God who keeps rescuing him. David rescues the town of Keilah from the Philistines who are stealing their harvest. Saul goes to Keilah to capture David, but David flees to the wilderness near Ziph. When David goes deeper into the wilderness, Saul follows but he has to leave to fight the Philistines who have invaded the land. Saul's pursuit of David shows that Saul cares more about killing his enemies than pleasing God. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

== Synecdoche== Jonathan strengthens David with a synecdoche: "For the hand of Saul my father will not find you." This helps to strengthen David's faith. (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [faith](#))

### Links:

- [1 Samuel 23:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 23:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> One day someone told David, “You need to know that the Philistine army is attacking the town of Keilah and that they are stealing grain from where men are threshing it.” <sup>2</sup> David asked Yahweh, “Should my men and I go to fight against those men from the Philistia people group?”

Yahweh answered, “Yes, go. Attack them, and rescue the people of Keilah.”

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> They told David, “Look, the Philistines are fighting against Keilah and are robbing the threshing floors.” <sup>2</sup> So David prayed to Yahweh for help and asked him, “Should I go and attack these Philistines?” Yahweh said to David, “Go and attack the Philistines and save Keilah.”

### translationNotes

#### fighting against Keilah

“Keilah” is the name of a town. Here “Keilah” represents the people who live there. AT: “fighting against the people of Keilah” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### threshing

separating the grain or seeds, generally from a cereal plant or wheat by some mechanical means

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [thresh, threshing](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 23:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> But David's men said to him, "We are afraid that Saul will attack us here in Judah. We will be more afraid if we go to Keilah where the Philistine army is!"

<sup>4</sup> So David asked Yahweh again if they should go to Keilah. Yahweh answered, "Yes, go down to Keilah. I will help you to defeat the Philistines."

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> David's men said to him, "See, we are afraid here in Judah. How much more then if we go to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?" <sup>4</sup> Then David prayed to Yahweh for help yet again. Yahweh answered him, "Arise, go down to Keilah. For I will give you victory over the Philistines."

### translationNotes

#### How much more then if we go to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "We will be even more fearful if we go to Keilah to fight the armies of the Philistines." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### translationWords

- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 23:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> So David and his men went to Keilah. They fought against the Philistines and captured many of their cattle. David and his men killed many of the Philistine men and rescued the people of Keilah.

<sup>6</sup> Abiathar son of Ahimelech, fled to be with David at Keilah, and he brought a sacred apron with him to use to determine what God wanted him to do.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> David and his men went to Keilah and fought with the Philistines. He led away their cattle and struck them with a great slaughter. So David saved the inhabitants of Keilah. <sup>6</sup> When Abiathar son of Ahimelech had fled to David at Keilah, he came down with an ephod in his hand.

### translationNotes

#### went ... fought ... led ... struck ... saved

The writer pays the most attention to David, so these words are all singular, though David's men helped him do all these things. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Ahimelech

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [ephod](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:7-9****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Soon Saul found out that David was at Keilah. So he said, “That is good! God is enabling me to capture him! He has trapped himself in that town, because it has high walls with gates around it.”

<sup>8</sup> So Saul summoned his army, and they prepared to go down to Keilah to attack David and his men.

<sup>9</sup> But David found out that Saul was planning for his army to attack him. So he said to Abiathar the priest, “Bring here the sacred apron.”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> Saul was told that David had gone to Keilah. Saul said, “God has given him into my hand. For he is shut in because he has entered a city that has gates and bars.” <sup>8</sup> Saul summoned all his forces for battle, to go down to Keilah, to besiege David and his men. <sup>9</sup> David knew that Saul was plotting harm against him. He said to Abiathar the priest, “Bring the ephod here.”

**translationNotes****Saul was told**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “Someone told Saul” or “They told Saul” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**summoned**

“called for” or “assembled”

**translationWords**

- Saul (OT)
- David
- God
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- gate, gate bar
- Abiathar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- ephod

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> So when Abiathar brought it, David prayed, "Yahweh, God of us Israelites, I have heard that Saul is planning to come here with his army and destroy Keilah because I am here. <sup>11</sup> Will Saul come down here to Keilah, as people reported to me? Will the leaders of Keilah enable Saul to capture me? Yahweh, God of us Israelites, please tell me!"

Yahweh answered, "Yes, Saul will come down."

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Then David said, "Yahweh, the God of Israel, your servant has indeed heard that Saul seeks to come to Keilah, to destroy the city for my sake. <sup>11</sup> Will the men of Keilah surrender me into his hand? Will Saul come down, as your servant has heard? Yahweh, the God of Israel, I beg you, please tell your servant." Yahweh said, "He will come down."

**translationNotes****David said**

"David asked" or "David prayed"

**your servant has indeed heard ... as your servant has heard ... tell your servant**

David speaks as if he were someone else to show his respect for Yahweh. AT: "I have indeed heard ... as I have heard ... tell me" (See: [Pronouns](#))

**surrender me into his hand**

Here "hand" represents power or control. AT: "give me over to Saul" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**destroy**

"defeat completely"

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:12****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Then David asked, “Will the leaders of Keilah enable Saul’s army to capture me and my men if we stay here?”

By means of the stones in the sacred vest, Yahweh replied, “Yes, they will.”

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> Then David said, “Will the men of Keilah surrender me and my men into the hand of Saul?” Yahweh said, “They will surrender you.”

**translationNotes****David said**

or “David asked” or “David prayed”

**surrender me and my men into the hand of Saul**

Here “hand” represents power or control. AT: “give me and my men over to Saul” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> So David and his six hundred men left Keilah. They continued to move from one place to another, wherever they thought that Saul would not find them. And when Saul found out that David had escaped from Keilah, he did not go there.

<sup>14</sup> David and his man stayed in hiding places in the desert and in the hills of the wilderness of Ziph. Every day Saul sent men to search for David, but Yahweh did not allow them to capture David.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> Then David and his men, who were about six hundred, got up and went away from Keilah, and they went from place to place. It was told Saul that David had escaped from Keilah, and he stopped the pursuit. <sup>14</sup> David stayed in the strongholds in the wilderness, in the hill country in the wilderness of Ziph. Saul looked for him every day, but God did not give him into his hand.

**translationNotes****six hundred**

“600” (See: [Numbers](#))

**It was told Saul**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “Someone told Saul” or “They told Saul” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**had escaped**

“had run away from”

**wilderness of Ziph**

This is the name of a deserted area near the city of Ziph. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**did not give him into his hand**

The word “hand” is a metonymy for power. AT: “did not allow Saul to have power over David” or “did not allow Saul to do as he desired with David” or “did not allow Saul to capture David” (See: [Metonymy](#))



**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 23:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> While David and his men were at a place named Horesh in the wilderness of Ziph, he found out that Saul was coming there to kill him. <sup>16</sup> But Saul's son Jonathan went to David at Horesh and encouraged him to continue to trust in God.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> David saw that Saul had come out to seek his life; now David was in the wilderness of Ziph at Horesh. <sup>16</sup> Then Jonathan, Saul's son, got up and went to David at Horesh, and strengthened his hand in God.

### translationNotes

#### seek his life

This is an idiom. AT: "try to kill him" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Horesh

This is the name of city near Ziph. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### strengthened his hand in God

This is an idiom. AT "encouraged him to trust in God" (See: [Idiom](#))

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [God](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Jonathan told him, “Do not be afraid, because my father will not be able to harm you. Some day you will be the king of Israel, and I will be the second most important man in Israel. My father Saul also knows that.” <sup>18</sup> Then the two of them repeated their solemn promise that Yahweh had heard them make previously, that they would always be loyal to each other. Then Jonathan went home, but David stayed at Horesh.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> He said to him, “Do not be afraid. For the hand of Saul my father will not find you. You will be king over Israel, and I will be next to you. Saul my father also knows this.” <sup>18</sup> They made a covenant before Yahweh. David remained at Horesh, and Jonathan went home.

**translationNotes****For the hand of Saul my father will not find you**

Here “hand” is a metonym for Saul and his power. AT: “For Saul my father will not find you” or “For Saul my father will never be able to have power over you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [king](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 23:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> Some people from Ziph went to Saul when he was at Gibeah, and they told him, "David and his men are hiding in our land! They are hiding in places at Horesh on the hill of Hakilah, south of a place named Jeshimon. <sup>20</sup> So, O king, come down there any time that you want to. It is our duty to capture him and put him in your hands."

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> Then Ziphites came to Saul at Gibeah and said, "Is not David hiding among us in the strongholds at Horesh, on the hill of Hakilah, which is south of Jeshimon? <sup>20</sup> Now come down, king! According to your desire, come down! Our part will be to surrender him into the king's hand."

### translationNotes

#### Ziphites

This is the name of the people group from Ziph. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Is not David hiding among us in ... Jeshimon?

This rhetorical question can be translated as an exclamation. AT: "David is hiding among us in ... Jeshimon!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### the hill of Hakilah

This is the name of a hill in the wilderness of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as "the Judean Wilderness" or "the wasteland." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### surrender him into the king's hand

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. The Ziphites speak to Saul as if he were another man to show him that they respect him. AT: "give David to you so you can do whatever you desire with him" (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Saul replied, "I hope that Yahweh will bless you for telling that to me. <sup>22</sup> Go back and find out more about him. Find out exactly where he is staying, and find out who has seen him there. People tell me that he is very clever, so we need to be clever also to be able to capture him. <sup>23</sup> Find out all the places where he and his men hide. Then come back and tell me everything that you have found out. Then I will take my army and go there with you. If David is in any of the clans of Judah, we will search for him and find him!"

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Saul said, "May you be blessed by Yahweh. For you have had compassion on me. <sup>22</sup> Go, make even more sure. Learn and find out where his hiding place is and who has seen him there. It is told to me that he is very crafty. <sup>23</sup> So look, and learn all of the places where he hides himself. Come back to me with sure information, and then I will return with you. If he is in the land, I will search him out among all the thousands of Judah."

**translationNotes****May you be blessed by Yahweh**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "I hope that Yahweh blesses you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**you have had compassion on me**

The abstract noun "compassion" can be translated with the adjective "kind." Saul says this because they had told him about David and they were willing to help Saul capture David. AT: "you have been kind to me" or "you have kindly told this to me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Learn and find out**

These two words mean almost the same thing and can be translated as one phrase. AT: "Know for sure" (See: [Doublet](#))

**who has seen him**

"who saw him"

**It is told to me**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "People tell me" or "I have heard" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **among all the thousands of Judah**

This is an idiom. AT: “even if I have to arrest every man in Judah” or “among all the clans of Judah”  
(See: [Idiom](#))

### **translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [Judah](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> So those people went back to Ziph before Saul went there. At that time David and his men were in the desert of Maon, south of Jeshimon. <sup>25</sup> Saul and his soldiers went to search for David, but David heard about that. So he and his men went further south to a rocky hill in the wilderness of Maon. When Saul heard about that, he and his men followed David and his men to the wilderness of Maon.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> Then they rose up and went to Ziph ahead of Saul. Now David and his men were in the wilderness of Maon, in the Arabah to the south of Jeshimon. <sup>25</sup> Saul and his men went to seek him. But David was told of it, so he went down to a rocky hill and lived in the wilderness of Maon. When Saul heard it, he chased David in the wilderness of Maon.

**translationNotes****Then they rose up**

They stopped what they had been doing. The reader should not believe that they were sitting or lying.

**Then they**

“Then the Ziphites”

**Ziph**

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:14](#).

**Jeshimon**

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as “the Judean Wilderness” or “the wasteland.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**David was told of it**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “Someone told David that they were coming” or “David learned that they were coming” (See: [Active or Passive](#))



**rocky hill**

a hill covered with many rocks or boulders

**the wilderness of Maon**

This is the name of the deserted area around the city of Maon in southern Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Arabah](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> Saul and his soldiers were walking along one side of the hill, and David and his men were on the other side. David and his men were hurrying to escape from Saul's soldiers, because Saul and his soldiers were coming much closer. <sup>27</sup> But then a messenger came to Saul and said to him, "Come quickly! The Philistine army is attacking the people in our land!"

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Saul went on one side of the mountain, and David and his men were going on the other side of the mountain. David hurried to get away from Saul. As Saul and his men were surrounding David and his men to take them, <sup>27</sup> a messenger came to Saul and said, "Hurry and come, for the Philistines have made a raid against the land."

**translationNotes****Hurry and come**

The words "hurry" and "come" can be combined into one idea. AT: "Come quickly" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 23:28-29****UDB:**

<sup>28</sup> So Saul stopped pursuing David, and he and his soldiers went to fight against the Philistine army. That is the reason that people call that place the Rock of Escape. <sup>29</sup> David and his men also left that place and went to places to hide safely at Engedi.

**ULB:**

<sup>28</sup> So Saul returned from pursuing David and went against the Philistines. Therefore that place was called the Rock of Escape. <sup>29</sup> David went up from there and lived in the strongholds of Engedi.

**translationNotes****pursuing**

“chasing” or “following in order to catch”

**Rock of Escape**

a memorial or marker of David’s escape from Saul

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 translationQuestions](#)

## **1 Samuel 24 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

Even though Saul tries again and again to kill David, David does not avenge himself on Saul because God had chosen Saul as king. This is meant to contrast with Saul's treatment of David, the future king. Saul represents the king the people wanted, a selfish man. David is the king God wanted, a godly man. (See: [avenge](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#), [chosen one](#), [chosen ones](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#) and [godly](#), [godliness](#))

### **Links:**

- [1 Samuel 24:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 24:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> After Saul and his soldiers returned home after fighting against the Philistine army, someone reported to Saul that David and his men had gone into the wilderness near EnGedi. <sup>2</sup> When Saul heard that, he chose three thousand men from various areas in Israel, and they went to search for David and his men at the Rocks of Wild Goats.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> When Saul returned from chasing the Philistines, he was told, “David is in the wilderness of Engedi.” <sup>2</sup> Then Saul took three thousand chosen men from all Israel and went to seek David and his men on the Rocks of the Wild Goats.

**translationNotes****he was told**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “someone told him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**wilderness of Engedi**

Engedi is a place in Israel west of the Dead Sea where there is water with dry land all around it.

**three thousand**

3,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

**chosen men**

men whom he had chosen because of their superior military abilities

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 24:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> At a place where the road was alongside some sheep pens, Saul left the road and entered a cave to relieve himself. He did not know that David and his men were hiding further inside that same cave! <sup>4</sup> David's men saw Saul and whispered to David, "Today is the day that Yahweh spoke about when he said, 'I will enable you to defeat your enemy.' You can do to him whatever you want to!" So David crept toward the entrance of the cave and cut off with his knife a small piece of Saul's robe.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> He came to sheep pens on the way, where there was a cave. Saul went inside to cover his feet. Now David and his men were sitting far back in the cave. <sup>4</sup> David's men said to him, "This is the day of which Yahweh spoke when he said to you, 'I will give your enemy into your hand, for you to do with him as you wish.'" Then David arose and quietly crept forward and cut off the corner of Saul's robe.

**translationNotes****sheep pens**

"sheep corrals" or "sheep enclosures"

**cover his feet**

This is a euphemism for "relieve himself" or "defecate" or "empty his intestines." (See: [Euphemism](#))

**cave**

generally a natural hole under the ground, often with an opening in the side of a hill or cliff

**David arose and quietly crept**

The word "arose" is an idiom for taking action. AT: "David took action; he quietly crept" (See: [Idiom](#))

**crept**

approached slowly, carefully or quietly

### translationWords

- sheep, ram, ewe
- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- cut off
- robe

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 24:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> And then he returned to his men.

But David felt guilty for having cut off a piece of Saul's robe. <sup>6</sup> He said to his men, "I should not have done that to the king! I hope that Yahweh will never allow me to attack the one whom God has appointed, because Yahweh is the one who chose him to be the king." <sup>7</sup> By saying that, David restrained his men and did not allow them to kill Saul.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Afterward David's heart afflicted him because he had cut a corner off Saul's robe. <sup>6</sup> He said to his men, "May Yahweh forbid that I should do this thing to my master, Yahweh's anointed, to put out my hand against him, seeing he is Yahweh's anointed." <sup>7</sup> So David rebuked his men with these words, and did not permit them to attack Saul. Saul stood up, left the cave, and went on his way.

**translationNotes****David's heart afflicted him**

This is an idiom. AT: "David was sad because he had done something wrong" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Yahweh's anointed**

"the one whom Yahweh has chosen to lead his people" or "the one Yahweh has made king"

**to put out my hand against him**

The hand is a metonym for the ability to cause harm. AT: "to harm him in any way" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [robe](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

- [rebuke](#)
- [word, words](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 24:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> After Saul left the cave and started to walk on the road again, David came out of the cave and shouted to Saul, “King Saul!” Saul turned around and looked, and David bowed down with his face touching the ground. <sup>9</sup> Then he said to Saul, “Why do you pay attention to people when they say ‘David wants to harm you’?”

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Afterward, David also stood up, left the cave, and called out after Saul: “My master the king.” When Saul looked behind him, David bowed with his face to the ground and showed him respect. <sup>9</sup> David said to Saul, “Why do you listen to the men who say, ‘See, David is seeking your harm?’”

### translationNotes

#### Why do you listen to the men who say, ‘See, David is seeking your harm?’

This is a rhetorical question. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “You should not listen to the men who say, ‘See, David is seeking to harm you.’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [king](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 24:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> Today you can see with your own eyes that what they say is not true. Yahweh put you in a place where I and my men could have killed you when you were in this cave. Some of my men told me that I should do that, but I did not allow them to do that. I said to them, ‘I will not harm my master, because he is the king whom Yahweh appointed.’ <sup>11</sup> Your majesty, look at this piece of your robe that is in my hand! I cut it from your robe, but I did not kill you. So now you should be able to understand that I am not planning to do anything evil to you. I have not done anything wrong to you, but you are searching for me to kill me.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> Today your eyes have seen how Yahweh put you into my hand when we were in the cave. Some told me to kill you, but I spared you. I said, ‘I will not put out my hand against my master; for he is Yahweh’s anointed.’ <sup>11</sup> See, my father, see the corner of your robe in my hand. For the fact that I cut off the corner of your robe and did not kill you, you may know and see that there is no evil or treason in my hand, and I have not sinned against you, even though you hunt my life to take it.

**translationNotes****your eyes have seen**

Here “your eyes” represent King Saul. AT: “you have seen with your own eyes” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**put you into my hand**

The word “hand” is a metonym for control. AT: “put you where I could kill you or allow you to live” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**my father**

Saul was not David’s real father. David calls him “father” to show that he respects Saul.

**there is no evil or treason in my hand**

David speaks as if evil and treason were physical objects he could hold in his hand. Here “hand” represents a person acting or doing something. AT: “I have done no evil deed against you, nor have I rebelled against you” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [robe](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 24:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> I desire that Yahweh may punish you for the wrong things that you have done to me. But I will never try to harm you. <sup>13</sup> There is a proverb that has the words, ‘Evil things are done by evil people.’ But I am not evil, so I will not do evil things to you.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> May Yahweh judge between you and me, and may Yahweh avenge me against you, but my hand shall not be against you. <sup>13</sup> As the proverb of the ancients says, ‘Out of the wicked comes wickedness.’ But my hand will not be against you.

### translationNotes

#### my hand shall not be against you

The hand is a metonym for the ability to cause harm. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 24:6](#). AT: “I will not harm you in any way” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ancients

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “people who lived long ago” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [proverb](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 24:14-15****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> You are the king of Israel. So why are you pursuing me? What is it you are chasing? I am nothing more than a dead dog or a flea. <sup>15</sup> I hope that Yahweh will decide who is right in this matter, you or I? And when he decides in my favor, I hope he will defend me and save me from your power.”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> After whom has the king of Israel come out? After whom do you pursue? After a dead dog! After a flea! <sup>15</sup> May Yahweh be judge and give judgment between you and me, and see to it, and plead my cause and permit me to escape from your hand.”

**translationNotes****After whom has the king of Israel come out? After whom do you pursue?**

These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. When David asks the questions, he knows that he will answer the questions himself. AT: “Let me tell you who the king of Israel has come out after. Let me tell you who it is that you are pursuing.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**After a dead dog**

The words “dead dog” are a metaphor for a powerless person. This sentence can be made complete. AT: “You are pursuing a person who is as powerless as a dead dog” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

**After a flea**

The word “flea” is a metaphor for a person whom others do not consider important. AT: “You are pursuing a person who is as unimportant as a flea” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

**see to it, and plead my cause**

Possible meanings are 1) “do what is right, and plead my cause” or 2) “see that my cause is right and fight for me.”

**from your hand**

The word “hand” is a metonym for power. AT: “so that you have no power over me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [king](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [plead, pleading, plea](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 24:16****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> When David finished saying that to Saul, Saul called out to him and asked, “My son David, is that your voice that I am hearing?” Then he cried loudly.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> When David had finished speaking these words to Saul, Saul said, “Is this your voice, my son David?” Saul lifted up his voice and wept.

**translationNotes****my son David**

Saul speaks as if David were his son to show David that he loves him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**lifted up his voice and wept**

The writer writes as if a voice were something a person could lift up with his hands. AT: “wept loudly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [voice](#)
- [son, sons](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 24:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> He said, "You are a better man than I am. You have done something very good to me when I tried to do something very bad to you. <sup>18</sup> When Yahweh put me in a place in that cave where you could have easily killed me, you did not do that.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> He said to David, "You are more righteous than I am. For you have repaid me good, where I have repaid you evil. <sup>18</sup> You have declared today how you have done good to me, for you did not kill me when Yahweh had put me at your mercy.

**translationNotes****you have done good to me**

Saul acknowledges that David did show that he supported King Saul and was loyal to him by not killing him.

**for you did not kill me when Yahweh had put me at your mercy**

Saul acknowledges that David chose to show mercy and demonstrated his loyalty to King Saul as Yahweh's anointed.

**translationWords**

- David
- righteous, righteousness
- good, goodness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- declare, declaration
- Yahweh
- mercy, merciful

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 24:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> No one lets his enemy go free after he finds him. But you have done this. I hope that Yahweh will reward you for your acting kindly toward me today. <sup>20</sup> I know that some day you will surely become the king, and that your kingdom will prosper as you rule the Israelite people.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely? May Yahweh reward you with good for what you have done to me today. <sup>20</sup> Now, I know that you will surely be king and that the kingdom of Israel will be established in your hand.

**translationNotes****For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely?**

A rhetorical question with the answer included in the question. AT: “For if a man finds his enemy, he will not let him go safely.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely?**

Where Saul had believed David was his enemy, he learns that even though David will be king, David will not take over the throne from Saul by force, but will wait for Yahweh’s appointed time.

**the kingdom of Israel will be established in your hand**

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) David will cause the kingdom of Israel to prosper through his power as king. AT: “the kingdom of Israel will prosper as you rule the Israelite people” or 2) Yahweh will cause David to have complete control over the kingdom of Israel. AT: “you will have complete rule over the kingdom of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in your hand**

The word “hand” is a metonym that represents power or control. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [reward](#)
- [king](#)

- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 24:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Now while Yahweh is listening, solemnly me that you will not kill my family and get rid of all my descendants.”

<sup>22</sup> David solemnly promised Saul that he would not harm Saul’s family. Then Saul went back home, and David and his men went back up into the place where they had been hiding.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Swear to me by Yahweh that you will not cut off my descendants after me, and that you will not destroy my name out of my father’s house.” <sup>22</sup> So David made an oath to Saul. Then Saul went home, but David and his men went up to the stronghold.

**translationNotes****you will not cut off my descendants after me**

“you will not kill my sons and their families.” It was common for a new king who was not from the previous family line to kill off all the children of the former king to prevent any of them from challenging him for the throne.

**you will not destroy my name out of my father’s house**

It is important for each family in Israel to have descendants from generation to generation carrying on the family name and land inheritance. AT: “you will not destroy my family and descendants” or “you will allow my family to live” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**David and his men**

“David and his army”

**translationWords**

- oath, swear, swear by
- Yahweh
- descendant, descended from
- name, names, named
- ancestor, father, forefather
- house
- David
- Saul (OT)
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 25 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Revenge

When David decides to kill all of the men in Nabal's household, Abigail convinces David not to avenge himself but to leave revenge to God. (See: [avenge](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 25:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 25:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Soon after that, Samuel died, and all the Israelite people gathered and mourned for him. They buried his body outside his home in Ramah.

Then David and his men moved to the wilderness of Paran.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Now Samuel died. All Israel gathered together and mourned for him, and they buried him in his house at Ramah. Then David rose and went down to the wilderness of Paran.

**translationNotes****All Israel gathered together and mourned for him**

This is likely a generalization. A large number of the people of Israel were probably there, but some were probably unable to attend. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

**gathered together**

“met together”

**buried him in his house at Ramah**

Possible meanings are that they buried Samuel 1) in his home town of Ramah or 2) on his family’s land in Ramah but not physically in the house or 3) in his house in Ramah.

**David rose and went down**

“David and his men moved on and they went down”

**translationWords**

- Samuel
- death, die, dead
- Israel, Israelites
- mourn, mourning
- bury, buried, burial
- Ramah
- David
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose



- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Paran](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 25:2-3

### UDB:

<sup>2</sup> In the town of Maon there was a very rich man. This man kept his property and livestock in a town nearby that is called Carmel. He had much property and livestock and he owned three thousand sheep and one thousand goats. Carmel is where he sheared his sheep. <sup>3</sup> His name was Nabal; he was a descendant of Caleb. His wife Abigail was a wise and beautiful woman, but Nabal was very cruel and treated people very unkindly.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> There was a man in Maon, whose possessions were in Carmel. The man was very wealthy. He had three thousand sheep and one thousand goats. He was shearing his sheep in Carmel. <sup>3</sup> The man's name was Nabal, and the name of his wife was Abigail. The woman was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. But the man was harsh and evil in his dealings. He was a descendant of the house of Caleb.

### translationNotes

**There was a man in Maon, whose possessions were in Carmel. The man was very wealthy. He had three thousand sheep and one thousand goats. He was shearing his sheep in Carmel. The man's name was Nabal, and the name of his wife was Abigail. The woman was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. But the man was harsh and evil in his dealings. He was a descendant of the house of Caleb.**

Some translators may need to put the ideas in these verses in a different order. AT: "There was a man whose name was Nabal, a descendant of the house of Caleb, who was very wealthy. He lived in Maon, but his possessions were in Carmel. He had three thousand sheep and one thousand goats. The man was harsh and evil in his dealings. The name of his wife was Abigail. The woman was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. Now he was shearing his sheep in Carmel." (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

### Maon

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Carmel

This is the name of a town. This is different from Mount Carmel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### three thousand

3,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

### **one thousand**

1,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

### **shearing his sheep**

“shaving the wool off his sheep”

### **Nabal**

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **Abigail**

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **He was a descendant of the house of Caleb**

Here “house” represents family. AT: “He was a descendant of the family of Caleb” or “He was a descendant of Caleb” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### **translationWords**

- [possess, possession](#)
- [Carmel, Mount Carmel](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [house](#)
- [Caleb](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> One day while David and his men were in the desert, someone told him that Nabal was cutting the wool from his sheep. <sup>5</sup> So David told ten of his men, "Go to Nabal at Carmel and greet him for me. <sup>6</sup> Then tell him this message from me: 'I wish that things may go well for you and your family and for everything that you possess.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> David heard in the wilderness that Nabal was shearing his sheep. <sup>5</sup> So David sent ten young men. David said to the young men, "Go up to Carmel, go to Nabal, and greet him in my name. <sup>6</sup> You will say to him, 'Live in prosperity. Peace to you and peace to your house, and peace be to all that you have.

**translationNotes****shearing his sheep**

"shaving the wool off his sheep"

**greet him in my name**

"greet him as I would greet him if I were there"

**Live in prosperity**

"I desire that you may live in prosperity." The abstract noun "prosperity" can be translated as a verb. AT: "I desire that you possess many good things as long as you live" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Peace to you and peace to your house, and peace be to all that you have**

"I desire that peace may come to you, your household and your possessions"

**translationWords**

- David
- desert, wilderness
- send, send out, sent
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- peace, peaceful

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:7-8****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> I heard people say that you are cutting the wool from your sheep. Previously, when your shepherds were among us, we did not harm them. All the time that your shepherds were among us at Camel, we did not steal any sheep from them. <sup>8</sup> You can ask your servants if this is true, and they will tell you that it is true. We have come here at a time when you are celebrating, so I ask you to please be kind to us and give these men whatever extra food you have, for me, David, and my men to eat.”

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> I hear that you have shearers. Your shepherds have been with us, and we did them no harm, and they missed nothing the whole time they were in Carmel. <sup>8</sup> Ask your young men, and they will tell you. Now let my young men find favor in your eyes, for we have come on a festive day. Please give whatever you have on hand to your servants and to your son David.”

**translationNotes****you have shearers**

“your shearers are working” or “your shearers have sheep to shear.” David wants his men to speak so that Nabal understands that his sheep were well because David’s men helped guard them.

**we did them no harm, and they missed nothing**

David is pointing out how he and his men offered protection to Nabal’s servants and flocks. This can be stated in positive form. AT: “we kept them and all their property from harm” (See: [Litotes](#))

**let my young men find favor in your eyes**

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “may you be pleased with my young men” or “may you consider my young men favorably” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to your servants**

David was expressing respect toward Nabal by calling his men Nabal’s servants.

**your son David**

David spoke as if he were Nabal’s son to show that he respected Nabal, who was an older man.

**translationWords**

- shepherd, to shepherd
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- servant, slave, slavery
- son, sons

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> When David's men arrived where Nabal was, they gave David's message to him, and they waited for him to reply. But Nabal spoke harshly to them. <sup>10</sup> He said to them, "Who does this man, this son of Jesse, think that he is? There are many slaves who are running away from their masters at the present time, and it seems to me that he is just one of them. <sup>11</sup> I give bread and water to the men who are cutting the wool from my sheep, and I give them meat from animals that I have slaughtered. Why should I take some of those things and give them to a group of outlaws?"

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> When David's young men arrived, they said all of this to Nabal on David's behalf and then waited. <sup>10</sup> Nabal answered David's servants, "Who is David, and who is the son of Jesse? There are many servants these days who are breaking away from their masters. <sup>11</sup> Should I take my bread and my water and my meat that I have killed for my shearers, and give it to men who come from I do not know where?"

**translationNotes****David's young men**

"David's army"

**said all of this to Nabal on David's behalf**

"gave Nabal David's complete message"

**Who is David, and who is the son of Jesse?**

Nabal probably knew who David was, but he did not want to help David. (See: [1 Samuel 18:6-7](#)). The words "servants ... breaking away from their masters" in verse 10 probably refer to David breaking away from Saul. These two rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. AT: "This David son of Jesse you speak of—I do not know him." or "I do not know who this David is, so I will not do as he says. I do not know who Jesse is, so I do not care what happens to his son." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))

**breaking away from**

"running away from" or "rebellious against"

**my bread**

Here "bread" is an idiom for any kind of food. (See: [Idiom](#))



**men who come from I do not know where**

“men when I do not know where they have come from” or “men whom I do not know”

**translationWords**

- David
- servant, slave, slavery
- son, sons
- Jesse
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- bread

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:12-13****UDB:**

<sup>12</sup> Then David's men returned and told him what Nabal had said. <sup>13</sup> When David heard this, he told his men, "We are going to kill Nabal; fasten your swords!" So he fastened on his sword, and about four hundred men fastened their swords and went with him. There were two hundred of his men who stayed with their supplies.

**ULB:**

<sup>12</sup> So David's young men turned away and came back, and told him everything that was said. <sup>13</sup> David said to his men, "Every man strap on his sword." So every man strapped on his sword. David also strapped on his sword. About four hundred men followed after David, and two hundred stayed by the baggage.

**translationNotes****that was said**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that Nabal had said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**said to his men**

"said to his army"

**"Every man strap on his sword." So every man strapped on his sword. David also strapped on his sword**

If swords are not known in your language, you can treat "strap on his sword" as a metonymy meaning to prepare for war. AT: "'Every man, prepare for war.' And every man prepared for war. David also prepared for war" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**four hundred**

400 (See: [Numbers](#))

**two hundred**

200 (See: [Numbers](#))

**stayed by the baggage**

They remained at their base camp to prevent other raiders from stealing their possessions.

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [sword](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 25:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> One of Nabal's servants found out what David and his men were planning to do, so he went to Nabal's wife Abigail and said to her, "David sent some messengers from the desert to greet our master Nabal, but Nabal only yelled at them. <sup>15</sup> All the time that we were in the fields close to them, those men of David were very kind to us. They did not harm us. They did not steal anything from us.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife; he said, "David sent messengers out of the wilderness to greet our master, and he insulted them. <sup>15</sup> Yet the men were very good to us. We were not harmed and did not miss anything as long as we went with them when we were in the fields.

### translationNotes

#### But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife

You may need to make explicit what the young man did before he spoke with Abigail. AT: "One of Nabal's servants found out what David and his men were planning to do, so he went to Nabal's wife Abigail" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### We were not harmed

This can be translated in active form. AT: "Nobody harmed us" or "We were safe" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### did not miss anything as long as we went with them

"we did not lose anything when we were with them." David's men kept wild animals and other people from stealing Nabal's flocks.

### translationWords

- David
- messenger
- desert, wilderness
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 25:16-17

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> They protected us during the daytime and during the night. They were like a wall around us to protect us while we were taking care of our sheep. <sup>17</sup> So now you should think about it and decide what you can do. If you do not do something, terrible things will happen to our master and to all his family. Nabal is an extremely wicked man, so he will not listen to anyone who tries to tell him what to do.”

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> They were a wall to us both day and night, all the while we were with them tending the sheep. <sup>17</sup> Therefore know this and consider what you will do, for evil is plotted against our master, and against his whole house. He is such a worthless fellow that one cannot reason with him.”

### translationNotes

#### They were a wall

David’s men were like a wall around a city that protects the people in the city from their enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### evil is plotted against our master

The speaker is careful not to name the one plotting the evil. This can be translated in active form. AT: “someone is plotting to do evil things to our master” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### our master

The speaker speaks of David as if David were another person to show that he respects David. AT: “you” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### translationWords

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [house](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> When Abigail heard that, she very quickly gathered two hundred loaves of bread, and also got two leather bags full of wine, the meat from five sheep, a bushel of roasted grain, a hundred packs of raisins, and two hundred packs of dried figs. She put all those things on donkeys. <sup>19</sup> Then she told her servants, “Go ahead of me. I will follow you.” But she did not tell her husband what she was going to do.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Then Abigail hurried and took two hundred loaves, two bottles of wine, five sheep already prepared, five measures of parched grain, one hundred clusters of raisins, and two hundred cakes of figs, and laid them on donkeys. <sup>19</sup> She said to her young men, “Go on before me, and I will come after you.” But she did not tell her husband Nabal.

**translationNotes****two hundred**

200 (See: [Numbers](#))

**loaves**

A loaf is like a cake. You may need to make explicit what the loaves consisted of. AT: “loaves of bread” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**already prepared**

“that someone had already cooked” or “ready for someone to cook”

**measures**

This is a generic term as none is given. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**parched grain**

“grain that someone had cooked”

**clusters of raisins**

“cakes of raisins” or “masses of raisins”

**translationWords**

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- sheep, ram, ewe
- grain
- fig
- donkey, mule

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 25:20

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> Abigail rode on her donkey and came down to the place in the hills where David and his men were staying. Suddenly David and his men met her.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> As she rode on her donkey and came down by the cover of the mountain, David and his men came down toward her, and she met them.

### translationNotes

#### David and his men

“David and his army”

#### by the cover of the mountain

Possible meanings are 1) into a low, narrow stream bed or 2) to where the men were hiding.

### translationWords

- donkey, mule
- David

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 25:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> David had been saying to his men, "It was useless for us to protect that man and all his possessions here in this wilderness. We did not steal anything that belonged to him, but he has acted badly toward me in return for our good actions toward him. <sup>22</sup> I hope that God will strike me and kill me if he or even one male person belonging to him is still alive tomorrow morning!"

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> Now David had said, "Surely in vain have I guarded all that this man has in the wilderness, so that nothing was missed of all that belonged to him, and he has returned me evil for good. <sup>22</sup> May God do so to me, David, and more also, if by the morning I leave so much as one male of all who belong to him."

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

The writer gives background information before he continues with the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

#### Now David had said, "Surely ... to him."

The reader needs to understand that David had said these things before he said, "Every man strap on his sword" in [1 Samuel 25:13](#).

#### Now David

The word "Now" shows that the writer has stopped writing about Abigail and started writing about David.

#### nothing was missed of all that belonged to him

This can be stated positively and in active form. AT: "he still has everything that was his" (See: [Litotes](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### May God do so to me, David

The Hebrew text has "May God strike the enemies of David," and some versions follow this. However, the reading of the ULB follows the main Greek tradition of the Old Testament, as some other modern versions do.

**all who belong**

“all the people who belong to him” or “those in his family”

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [vain, vanity](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [God](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 25:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> When Abigail saw David, she quickly got down from her donkey and bowed before him, with her face touching the ground. <sup>24</sup> Then she prostrated herself at David's feet and said to him, "Sir, I deserve to be punished for what my husband has done. Please listen to what I say to you.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> When Abigail saw David, she hurried and got down from her donkey and lay before David face-down and bowed herself to the ground. <sup>24</sup> She lay at his feet and said, "On me alone, my master, be the guilt. Please let your servant speak to you, and listen to the words of your servant.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

The writer has finished giving background information, so he continues the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

#### lay before David facedown and bowed herself to the ground

Abigail was being humble and showing that she would obey David because he was a powerful leader.

#### listen to

"hear"

#### my master ... your servant ... words of your servant

"you ... my words." Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two different people to show that she respects David. (See: [Pronouns](#))

### translationWords

- David
- donkey, mule
- bow, bow down
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- guilt, guilty
- servant, slave, slavery
- word, words

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Please do not pay attention to what this worthless man Nabal has said. His name means ‘fool,’ and he surely is a foolish man. But I, who am willing to be your servant, did not see the messengers whom you sent to him. <sup>26</sup> Yahweh has prevented you from getting revenge on anyone and killing anyone. I hope that just as surely as Yahweh lives and as surely as you live, your enemies will be cursed like Nabal is.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Let not my master regard this worthless fellow, Nabal, for as his name is, so is he. Nabal is his name, and folly is with him. But I your servant did not see the young men of my master, whom you sent. <sup>26</sup> Now then, my master, as Yahweh lives, and as you live, since Yahweh has restrained you from bloodshed, and from avenging yourself with your own hand, now let your enemies, and those who seek to do evil to my master, be like Nabal.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Abigail continues to advise David not to take revenge.

**Let not my master regard ... I your servant ... the young men of my master ... my master ... my master**

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two different people to show that she respects David. AT: “Do not regard ... I ... your young men ... my master ... you” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**But I ... did not see ... whom you sent**

You may need to make explicit what Abigail would have done. AT: “But if I ... had seen ... whom you sent, I would have given them food” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**bloodshed**

murder

**avenging yourself with your own hand**

The hand is a metonym for what a person does with the hand. Abigail assumes that David should allow Yahweh to take vengeance for him. AT: “taking vengeance yourself instead of letting Yahweh do it” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**let your enemies ... be like Nabal**

Abigail speaks as if Yahweh has already punished Nabal. AT: “I hope that Yahweh will punish your enemies ... as he will punish Nabal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Predictive Past](#))

**translationWords**

- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- servant, slave, slavery
- Yahweh
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:27-28****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> I have brought a gift for you and for the men who are with you. <sup>28</sup> Please forgive me if I have done anything wrong to you. Yahweh will surely reward you by allowing many of your descendants to become kings of Israel, because you are fighting the battles that Yahweh wants you to fight. And I know that throughout all your life you have not done anything wrong.

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> Now let this present that your servant has brought to my master be given to the young men who follow my master. <sup>28</sup> Please forgive the trespass of your servant, for Yahweh will certainly make my master a sure house, because my master is fighting the battles of Yahweh; and evil will not be found in you so long as you live.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Abigail continues to tell David not to be angry.

**this present**

“these gifts.” The “present” was actually many different things.

**your servant ... my master ... my master ... the trespass of your servant ... my master ... my master**

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two different people to show that she respects David. AT: “I ... you ... you ... my trespass ... you ... you” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**let this present ... be given to the young men**

Abigail uses the passive to show her respect for David. This can be translated in active form. AT: “please give it to the young men” or “please let my master give it to the young men” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Yahweh will certainly make my master a sure house**

Here “house” is an idiom used for “descendants.” AT: “Yahweh will ensure that my master always has a descendant who serves as king” (See: [Idiom](#))



**fighting the battles of Yahweh**

“fighting against Yahweh’s enemies”

**evil will not be found in you**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “no one will ever see you do any evil thing” or “you will never do anything evil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness](#)
- [trespass, trespasses, trespassed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:29****UDB:**

<sup>29</sup> Even when those who are trying to kill you pursue you, you are safe because Yahweh your God takes care of you. You will be protected like a bundle that is safely tied up. But your enemies will disappear like stones that are hurled from a sling.

**ULB:**

<sup>29</sup> Though men rise up to pursue you to take your life, yet the life of my master will be bound in the bundle of the living by Yahweh your God; and he will sling away the lives of your enemies, as from the pocket of a sling.

**translationNotes****pursue**

“chase” or “hunt”

**the life of my master will be bound in the bundle of the living by Yahweh your God**

Abigail speaks of David’s life as if it were a long and thin object that a person could put with other long and thin objects and then tie together into a bundle with a rope. This can be translated in active form. AT: “Yahweh your God will bind the life of my master in the bundle of the living” or “Yahweh your God will keep you alive with those who are alive” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**the life of my master**

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two different people to show that she respects David. AT: “your life” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**he will sling away the lives of your enemies, as from the pocket of a sling**

Abigail speaks of David’s enemies’ lives as if they were small objects like a stone that could be put in a sling and shot a long distance. AT: “he will kill your enemies as easily as a man slings a stone a long distance” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a sling**

a piece of animal skin with long cords at both ends in which a person can put a stone or other small, hard object and throw it a long distance

**translationWords**

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:30-31****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> Yahweh has promised to do good things for you, and he will do what he has promised. And he will cause you to become the ruler of the Israelite people. <sup>31</sup> When that happens, do not kill any people in his household. Then you will not think that you deserve to be punished for having punished and killed innocent people. And when Yahweh enables you to become king, please do not forget to be kind to me.”

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> Yahweh will have done for my master everything he promised you, and has appointed you leader over Israel. <sup>31</sup> This will not be a staggering burden for you—that you have poured out innocent blood, or because my master attempted to rescue himself. For when Yahweh will do good for my master, remember your servant.”

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

Abigail continues to reason with David.

**my master ... my master ... my master ... your servant**

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two different people to show that she respects David. “you ... you ... you ... me” (See: **Pronouns**)

**This will not be a staggering burden for you**

Abigail is stating that if David chooses not to take revenge he will have a clear conscience when Yahweh makes him king of Israel. This can be stated in positive form. AT: “You will always be glad you acted as you did” (See: **Litotes**)

**when Yahweh will do good for my master**

That is, when Yahweh actually makes him king after Saul’s reign is over.

**translationWords**

- **Yahweh**
- **lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs**
- **promise, promises, promised**

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [blood](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [mind](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:32-33****UDB:**

<sup>32</sup> David replied to Abigail, "I praise Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, because he sent you to talk with me. <sup>33</sup> I hope today God may help you because you have wisely kept me from killing people today, and from paying back evil for evil.

**ULB:**

<sup>32</sup> David said to Abigail, "May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be blessed, he who sent you to meet me today. <sup>33</sup> Your wisdom is blessed and you are blessed, because you have kept me today from bloodshed and from avenging myself with my own hand!

**translationNotes****General Information:**

David accepts Abigail's counsel and gifts.

**May Yahweh ... be blessed, he who**

This can be translated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "I praise Yahweh ... who" or 2) "May all people praise Yahweh ... who." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Your wisdom is blessed and you are blessed, because**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "I thank Yahweh because he has blessed you by making you wise and because" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**bloodshed**

murder. The same word appears in [1 Samuel 25:26](#).

**with my own hand**

The word "hand" here is a metonym for the action taken by the hand. AT: "by my own actions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

- Israel, Israelites
- bless, blessed, blessing
- send, send out, sent
- wise, wisdom
- guilt, guilty
- blood
- avenge, revenge, vengeance
- hand, right hand, to hand over

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:34-35****UDB:**

<sup>34</sup> Just as surely as Yahweh the God whom we Israelites worship is alive, he has prevented me from harming you. If you had not come quickly to talk to me, neither Nabal nor even one of Nabal's men or boys would be still alive tomorrow morning."

<sup>35</sup> Then David accepted the gifts that Abigail had brought to him. He said to her, "I hope that things may go well for you. I have heard what you said, and I will do what you have requested."

**ULB:**

<sup>34</sup> For in truth, as Yahweh, the God of Israel, lives, he who has kept me from hurting you, unless you had hurried to come meet me, there would certainly have not been left to Nabal so much as one male baby by morning." <sup>35</sup> So David received from her hand what she had brought him; he said to her, "Go up in peace to your house; see, I have listened to your voice and have accepted you."

**translationNotes****General Information:**

David accepts Abigail's gifts and agrees to do as she has advised him.

**there would certainly have not been left to Nabal so much as one male baby**

This can be translated in active form. AT: "I would not have left to Nabal even one male baby" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**received from her hand**

This is an idiom. Abigail did not unload all gifts from the donkeys herself. AT: "accepted all the gifts that she had brought" (See: [Idiom](#))

**have listened to your voice**

The word "voice" is a metonym for the message the person speaks and a synecdoche for the person who speaks. AT: "have listened to what you have told me" or "will do as you have advised me" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))



**translationWords**

- true, truth, truths
- Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- receive
- peace, peaceful
- house
- voice

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:36****UDB:**

<sup>36</sup> When Abigail returned to Nabal, he was in his house, having a big celebration like kings have. He was very drunk and feeling very happy. So Abigail did not say anything to him that night about her meeting with David.

**ULB:**

<sup>36</sup> Abigail went back to Nabal; behold, he was holding a feast in his house, like the feast of a king; and Nabal's heart was merry within him, for he was very drunk. So she told him nothing at all until the morning light.

**translationNotes****morning light**

dawn

**Nabal's heart was merry within him**

Nabal was very happy

**translationWords**

- [feast](#)
- [king](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [drunk, drunkard](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 25:37-38

### UDB:

<sup>37</sup> The next morning, when he was no longer drunk, she told him everything that had happened when she talked with David. Immediately, he had a stroke and could move no longer. <sup>38</sup> About ten days later Yahweh struck him again, and he died.

### ULB:

<sup>37</sup> It came about in the morning, when the wine had gone out of Nabal, that his wife told him these things; his heart died within him, and he became like a stone. <sup>38</sup> It came about ten days later that Yahweh attacked Nabal so that he died.

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

Yahweh's judgment on Nabal

#### the wine had gone out of Nabal

Nabal was no longer drunk and so was no longer feeling happy.

#### his heart died within him

Nabal was unable to move because was so afraid that he was no longer physically healthy, probably because he had suffered a stroke.

### translationWords

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- heart, hearts
- death, die, dead
- stone, stones, stoning
- Yahweh

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:39-40****UDB:**

<sup>39</sup> After David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, “I praise Yahweh! Nabal insulted me, but Yahweh has shown that I have been right. He has prevented me from doing anything wrong. And he has punished Nabal for the wrong that he did.”

Then David sent messengers to Abigail, to ask her if she would become his wife. <sup>40</sup> His servants went to Carmel and said to Abigail, “David sent us to take you to become his wife.”

**ULB:**

<sup>39</sup> When David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, “May Yahweh be blessed, who has taken up the cause of my insult from the hand of Nabal and has kept back his servant from evil. He has turned Nabal’s evil action back on his own head.” Then David sent and spoke to Abigail, to take her to himself as wife. <sup>40</sup> When David’s servants had come to Abigail at Carmel, they spoke to her and said, “David has sent us to you to take you to him as his wife.”

**translationNotes****General Information:**

David offers to protect Abigail by marrying her.

**May Yahweh be blessed**

This can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:32](#). Possible meanings are 1) AT: “I praise Yahweh” or 2) AT: “May all people praise Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**has taken up the cause of my insult from the hand of Nabal**

This is an idiom. AT: “has defended me after Nabal insulted me” (See: [Idiom](#))

**has taken up the cause of my insult**

The abstract nouns “cause” and “insult” can be translated as verbs. Possible meanings are 1) AT: “has shown that what I was doing was right by punishing Nabal for insulting me” or 2) AT: “has acted, when Nabal insulted me, as if Nabal had insulted him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**has kept back his servant from evil**

David speaks as if he were another person to show his respect for Yahweh. AT: “has kept me back from doing evil deeds” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**has turned Nabal's evil action back on his own head**

The abstract noun “action” can be translated as a verb. AT: “has done to Nabal what Nabal planned to do to me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**on his own head**

The head is a synecdoche for the person. AT: “on him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**sent and spoke to Abigail, to take her to himself as wife**

You may make clear the understood information. AT: “sent men to speak to Abigail and tell her that David wanted to take her to be his wife” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [head](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Carmel, Mount Carmel](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 25:41-42****UDB:**

<sup>41</sup> Abigail bowed down with her face touching the ground. Then she told the messengers to tell David, “I am happy to become your wife. I will be your servant. And I am willing to wash the feet of your servants.” <sup>42</sup> Abigail quickly got on her donkey and went with David’s messengers. Five of her female servants went with her. When she arrived where David was, she became his wife.

**ULB:**

<sup>41</sup> She arose, bowed herself with her face to the ground, and said, “See, your female servant is a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my master.” <sup>42</sup> Abigail hurried and arose, and rode on a donkey with five servant girls of hers who followed her; and she followed David’s messengers and became his wife.

**translationNotes****She arose, bowed herself**

Abigail responded by bowing. The reader should understand that she was probably already standing when the men were talking to her in [1 Samuel 25:40](#), and so the word “arose” is a metonym for deciding to bow down. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**See, your female servant is a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my master**

Abigail speaks as if she were another person to show that she is humble. She shows that she desires to be David’s new wife by offering to wash the feet of David’s servants. AT: “See, I will serve you, the servants of my master David, by washing your feet” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**hurried and arose, and rode**

You may need to make explicit what Abigail did after she arose and before she rode. AT: “quickly did what she needed to do to prepare for the journey, and then she rode” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**five servant girls of hers who followed her**

Abigail was riding a donkey, but the servant girls were walking.

**translationWords**

- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)

- [bow, bow down](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [messenger](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 25:43-44

### UDB:

<sup>43</sup> David had previously married Ahinoam, a woman from Jezreel near Carmel. So both Abigail and Ahinoam were now David's wives. <sup>44</sup> King Saul's daughter Michal was also David's wife, but Saul had given her to Laish's son Paltiel, who was in the town of Gallim.

### ULB:

<sup>43</sup> Now David had also taken Ahinoam of Jezreel as a wife; both of them became his wives. <sup>44</sup> Also, Saul had given Michal his daughter, David's wife, to Paltiel son of Laish, who was of Gallim.

### translationNotes

#### Now David had also taken Ahinoam ... Saul had given Michal

These events took place before David married Abigail. (See: [Background Information](#))

#### Ahinoam ... Michal

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Paltiel ... Laish

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Gallim

This is a town north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Jezreel](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 25 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 26 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Vengeance

David has another opportunity to kill Saul but he refuses to kill the one God had chosen as king. This contrasts with Saul, who tried to find David and kill him. Saul came to admit that David was more righteous than he was because he did not kill his enemy. (See: [chosen one](#), [chosen ones](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical question

David put his reason for not killing Saul in a rhetorical question: “Do not destroy him; for who can extend his hand against Yahweh’s anointed one and be guiltless?” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 26:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 26:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> One day some of the people of Ziph town went to Saul while he was at Gibeah, and they said to him, “David is hiding in a cave on the hill of Hakilah, east of the town of Jeshimon.”

<sup>2</sup> So Saul chose three thousand of the best Israelite soldiers and went with them to the wilderness of Ziph to search for David.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> The Ziphites came to Saul at Gibeah and said, “Is not David hiding in the hill of Hakilah, which is before Jeshimon?” <sup>2</sup> Then Saul arose and went down to the wilderness of Ziph, having three thousand chosen men of Israel with him, to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph.

**translationNotes****Is not David hiding ... Jeshimon?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as an exclamation. AT: “David is hiding ... Jeshimon!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**before Jeshimon**

“from which we can see Jeshimon”

**Jeshimon**

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as “the Judean Wilderness” or “the wasteland.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Then Saul arose and went**

The word “arose” is an idiom for taking action. AT: “Then Saul took action and he went” (See: [Idiom](#))

**three thousand**

3,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

**chosen men**

men whom he had chosen because of their superior military abilities

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 26:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Saul and his men set up their tents close to the road on the hill of Hakilah, east of the town of Jeshimon, but David and his men stayed in the wilderness. When David heard that Saul was searching for him, <sup>4</sup> he sent some spies to find out if it was true that Saul had come to Hakilah.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Saul camped on the hill of Hakilah, which is before Jeshimon, by the road. But David was staying in the wilderness, and he saw that Saul was coming after him into the wilderness. <sup>4</sup> So David sent out spies and learned that Saul had indeed come.

### translationNotes

#### before Jeshimon

“from which they could see Jeshimon”

#### Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as “the Judean Wilderness” or “the wasteland.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [David](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 26:5

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Then that evening David went to the place where Saul had set up his tent. From a distance he saw where Saul and his army commander, Abner, were sleeping. Saul was sleeping with all his army sleeping around him.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> David arose and went to the place where Saul had camped; he saw the place where Saul lay, and Abner son of Ner, the general of his army; Saul lay in the camp, and the people were camped around him, all asleep.

### translationNotes

#### David arose and went

“David took action and he went”

#### Abner ... Ner

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 26:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> David went back to where his men were and talked to Ahimelech, who was from the Heth people group, and Joab's brother Abishai, whose mother was David's older sister Zeruiah. He asked them, "Who will go with me down into the camp where Saul is?"

Abishai replied, "I will go with you." <sup>7</sup> So that night David and Abishai crept into Saul's camp. They saw that Saul was asleep. His spear was stuck in the ground near his head. Saul was asleep in the middle of the camp. Abner and the other soldiers were sleeping around Saul.

<sup>8</sup> Abishai whispered to David, "Today Yahweh has enabled us to kill your enemy! Allow me to fasten Saul to the ground by thrusting my spear into him. It will be necessary for me to strike him only once. I will not need to strike him twice."

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then David said to Ahimelech the Hittite, and to Abishai son of Zeruiah, the brother of Joab, "Who will go down with me to Saul in the camp?" Abishai said, "I! I will go down with you." <sup>7</sup> So David and Abishai went to the army by night. Saul was there sleeping inside the camp with his spear stuck in the ground beside his head. Abner and his soldiers lay around him. <sup>8</sup> Then Abishai said to David, "Today God has put your enemy into your hand. Now please let me pin him to the ground with the spear with just one blow. I will not strike him a second time."

**translationNotes****Ahimelech ... Abishai**

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Zeruiah**

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**go down ... to**

David and his men were probably on higher ground than Saul.

**I! I will go down**

"I want to be the one who goes down"

**God has put your enemy into your hand**

Abishai speaks as if the enemy were a small object that God had put into David's hand. The word "hand" is a metonym for the power the hand can wield. AT: "God has given you complete control over your enemy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**pin him to the ground with the spear**

This is a metonym that refers to "kill with a spear" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I will not strike him a second time**

"I will kill him the first time I strike him" or "I will not need to strike him a second time"

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [spear](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 26:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> But David whispered to Abishai, "No, do not kill Saul. Yahweh has appointed him to be king, so Yahweh will surely punish anyone who kills him. <sup>10</sup> Just as surely as Yahweh is alive, he himself will punish Saul. Perhaps Yahweh will strike him when it is Saul's time to die, or perhaps Saul will be killed in a battle.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> David said to Abishai, "Do not destroy him; for who can extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless?" <sup>10</sup> David said, "As Yahweh lives, Yahweh will kill him, or his day will come to die, or he will go into battle and perish.

**translationNotes****who can extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. This can also be stated in positive form. AT: "No one can strike Yahweh's anointed one and be without guilt." or "Anyone who strikes Yahweh's anointed one will be guilty of murder." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Litotes](#))

**As Yahweh lives**

"as certainly as Yahweh lives" or "as surely as Yahweh lives"

**his day will come to die**

"he will die a natural death"

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [perish, perished, perishing, perishable](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 26:11-12****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> But I hope that Yahweh will prevent me from harming the king whom he has appointed. Let us take Saul's spear and water jug that are near his head. Then let us get out of here!"

<sup>12</sup> So David took the spear and the jug, and he and Abishai left. No one saw them or knew what they were doing, and no one woke up, because Yahweh had caused them to be sound asleep.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> May Yahweh forbid that I should extend my hand against his anointed one; but now, I beg you, take the spear that is at his head and the jar of water, and let us go." <sup>12</sup> So David took the spear and the jar of water from Saul's head, and they got away. No one saw them or knew about it, nor did anyone wake up, for they were all asleep, because a deep sleep from Yahweh had fallen on them.

**translationNotes****extend my hand against**

The hand is a metonym for the harm a hand can do. AT: "do anything to harm" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**let us go**

David includes Abishai, so the "us" here is inclusive. (See: [Inclusive "We"](#))

**a deep sleep from Yahweh had fallen on them**

Yahweh had caused them to sleep deeply.

**translationWords**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [spear](#)
- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [sleep, asleep, fall asleep](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 26:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> David and Abishai went across the valley and climbed to the top of the hill, a long way from Saul's camp.

<sup>14</sup> Then David shouted to Abner, "Abner, can you hear me?"

Abner replied "Who are you, waking up the king by calling out to him?"

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> Then David went over to the other side and stood on the top of the mountain far off; a great distance was between them. <sup>14</sup> David shouted out to the people and to Abner son of Ner; he said, "Do you not answer, Abner?" Then Abner answered and said, "Who are you who is shouting to the king?"

### translationNotes

#### Do you not answer, Abner?

David uses a question to shame Abner into answering. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "Answer me, Abner!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### shouted

"spoke as loudly as he could" so Saul and his men could hear him

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [king](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 26:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> David replied, "I am sure that you are the greatest man in Israel ! So why did you not guard your master, the king? Someone came into your camp in order to kill your master, the king. <sup>16</sup> You have done a very poor job of guarding Saul. So just as surely as Yahweh is alive, you and your men should be executed! You have not guarded your master whom Yahweh appointed to be the king. Where are the king's spear and the water jug that were close to his head?"

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> David said to Abner, "Are not you a courageous man? Who is like you in Israel? Why then have you not kept watch over your master the king? For someone came in to kill the king your master. <sup>16</sup> This thing you have done is not good. As Yahweh lives, you deserve to die because you have not kept watch over your master, Yahweh's anointed one. Now see where the king's spear is and the jar of water that was near his head!"

**translationNotes****Are not you a courageous man?**

David uses a question to rebuke Abner for not guarding Saul. AT: "You are a very brave man." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Who is like you in Israel?**

David uses a question to rebuke Abner for not guarding Saul. AT: "You are the greatest soldier in Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Why then have you not kept watch over your master the king?**

Possible meanings are 1) this is a real question and David wants Abner to answer him or 2) this is a rhetorical question and David is rebuking Abner. AT: "Therefore you should have kept watch over your master the king!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- David
- Israel, Israelites
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- king
- Yahweh

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [spear](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 26:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Saul woke up and recognized that it was David's voice. He called out, saying, "My son David, is that your voice?"

David replied, "Yes, your majesty it is my voice."

<sup>18</sup> Then David added, "Sir, why are you pursuing me? I have done nothing wrong!"

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Saul recognized David's voice and said, "Is that your voice, my son David?" David said, "It is my voice, my master, king." <sup>18</sup> He said, "Why does my master pursue his servant? What have I done? What evil is in my hand?"

**translationNotes****my son**

Saul was not David's true father. Saul speaks as if he were David's father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Why does my master pursue his servant?**

Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "My master has no reason to pursue his servant." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Why does my master pursue his servant?**

Here David speaks of Saul in third person calling him "my master," and he speaks of himself in third person calling himself "his servant." David speaks this way to show respect to Saul. AT: "Why are you, my master, pursuing me, your servant?" or "Why are you pursuing me?" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

**What have I done?**

Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You know that I have done nothing to harm you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**What evil is in my hand?**

This speaks of evil as if it were an object that is held in the hand. Here “hand” represents a person acting or doing something. Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question. AT: “What have I done wrong?” or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “I have done nothing wrong!” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [David](#)
- [voice](#)
- [son, sons](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [king](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)



**1 Samuel 26:19-20****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> Your majesty, listen to me! If Yahweh has caused you to be angry with me, I want him to accept a sacrifice from me. But if it is people who have caused you to be angry with me, I hope that Yahweh will curse them. They have forced me to leave the land that Yahweh gave to me. They have told me, ‘Go somewhere else and worship other gods!’ <sup>20</sup> Now do not force me to die away from the land and presence of Yahweh. You, the king, are looking for me, but I am as good as a flea or a wild bird that someone hunts in the hills.”

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Now therefore, I beg you, let my master the king listen to the words of his servant. If it is Yahweh who has stirred you up against me, let him accept an offering; but if it is human beings, may they be cursed in the sight of Yahweh, for they have today driven me out, that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh; they have said to me, ‘Go worship other gods.’ <sup>20</sup> Now therefore, do not let my blood fall to the earth away from Yahweh’s presence; for the king of Israel has come out to look for the one flea as when one hunts a partridge in the mountains.”

**translationNotes****you, let my master the king listen to the words of his servant ... the king of Israel**

David speaks as if he and the king were other people to show respect to Saul. AT: “you my king, listen to my words ... you” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**stirred you up against me**

“caused you to be angry with me”

**let him accept an offering**

You may need to make explicit the reason he will give an offering. AT: “I will give him an offering so he will no longer cause you to be angry with me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**may they be cursed in the sight of Yahweh**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “may Yahweh decide to punish them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for they have today driven me out, that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh; they have said to me, 'Go worship other gods.'**

“for they have today driven me out. It is as if they want me to stop clinging to the inheritance of Yahweh. It is as if they have said to me, ‘Go worship other gods.’”

**that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh**

“so that I will no longer trust that Yahweh will give me what he has promised me”

**do not let my blood fall to the earth**

This is a polite way of saying “do not kill me.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**the one flea**

David uses the word “flea” as a metaphor for a person, himself, who cannot do any great harm. AT: “this single flea” or “me, and I cannot harm you any more than one flea can” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**as when one hunts a partridge in the mountains**

Saul is chasing David as if he were hunting a valuable wild bird. (See: [Simile](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

**translationWords**

- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [king](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [curse, cursed, curses, cursing](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [worship](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 26:21****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Then Saul said, “David, my son, I have sinned by trying to kill you. So come back home. Today you have considered my life to be very valuable and so you have not killed me. So I will not try to harm you. I have made a big mistake and have acted foolishly.”

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Then Saul said, “I have sinned. Return, David, my son; for I will harm you no more, because my life was precious in your eyes today. See, I have played the fool and have made a very bad mistake.”

**translationNotes****Return**

Possible meanings are 1) “Return to serve me in my palace” or “Return to your home.”

**my son**

Saul was not David’s true father. Saul speaks as if he were David’s father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**my life was precious in your eyes today**

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “today you have considered my life to be very valuable” or “today you showed me that you really do respect me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**played the fool**

“been very foolish”

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [David](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [fool, fools, foolish, folly](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 26:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> David replied, "I will leave your spear here. Send one of your young men here to get it. <sup>23</sup> Yahweh rewards us for the things that we do that are right and for being loyal to him. Even when Yahweh placed me where I could easily have killed you, I refused to do that, because you are the one whom Yahweh has appointed to be the king.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> David answered and said, "See, your spear is here, king! Let one of the young men come over and get it and bring it to you. <sup>23</sup> May Yahweh pay each man for his righteousness and his faithfulness; because Yahweh put you into my hand today, but I would not strike his anointed.

**translationNotes****Yahweh put you into my hand today**

The word "hand" is a metonym for the person's power. "Yahweh gave me an opportunity to attack you today" or "Yahweh placed me where I could easily have killed you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**pay**

"honor" or "reward"

**his anointed**

David speaks as if Saul were another person to show that he respects Saul because Saul is king. AT: "the one he has chosen to be king" (See: [Pronouns](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 26:24-25****UDB:**

<sup>24</sup> Just as I considered your life to be valuable and spared your life today, I hope that Yahweh will consider my life to be valuable and spare my life and save me from all my troubles.”

<sup>25</sup> Then Saul said to David, “My son David, I pray that Yahweh may bless you. May you do great things very successfully.”

Then David returned to his men, and Saul went back home.

**ULB:**

<sup>24</sup> See, as your life was precious in my eyes today, so may my life be much valued in the eyes of Yahweh, and may he rescue me out of all trouble.” <sup>25</sup> Then Saul said to David, “May you be blessed, David my son! You will certainly do great things and you will succeed in them.” So David went his way, and Saul returned to his place.

**translationNotes****your life was precious in my eyes today**

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 26:21](#). AT: “I have considered your life to be very valuable” or “I showed you today that I really do respect you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**so may my life be much valued in the eyes of Yahweh**

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “so may Yahweh consider my life very valuable as well” or “so may Yahweh value my life as much as I have valued your life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**May you be blessed**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “May Yahweh bless you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**my son**

Saul was not David’s true father. Saul speaks as if he were David’s father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### translationWords

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- precious
- Yahweh
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- Saul (OT)
- David
- bless, blessed, blessing

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 27 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This begins a section about David living with the Philistines.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David's move

David is afraid Saul will someday catch him and kill him, so he moves to the Philistine city of Gath. This is a type of exile David creates for himself out of fear. It is caused by his lack of trust in God. This is the same reason his descendants would come to be exiled. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

#### Links: ###=

- [1 Samuel 27:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 27:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> But David thought, “Some day Saul will capture me if I stay around here. So the best thing that I can do is to escape and go to the region of Philistia. If I do that, Saul will stop searching for me here in Israel, and I will be safe.”

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> David said in his heart, “I will now perish one day by Saul’s hand; there is nothing better for me than to escape into the land of the Philistines; Saul will give up looking for me any more within all the borders of Israel; in this way I will escape out of his hand.”

### translationNotes

#### David said in his heart

Here “his heart” is a metonymy that means to himself. AT: “David thought to himself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### escape out of his hand

The word “hand” is a synecdoche for the person. AT: “escape from him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### translationWords

- David
- heart, hearts
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- Saul (OT)
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Philistines
- Israel, Israelites

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 27:2-4****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> So David and his six hundred men left Israel and went to see Maok's son Achish, who was king of the city of Gath in the region of Philistia. <sup>3</sup> David and his men and their families started to live there in Gath, the city where King Achish lived. David's two wives were with him—Ahinoam from Jezreel, and Nabal's widow Abigail, from Carmel. <sup>4</sup> When Saul heard that David had run away and was living in Gath, he stopped searching for David.

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> David arose and passed over, he and the six hundred men who were with him, to Achish son of Maok, the king of Gath. <sup>3</sup> David lived with Achish at Gath, he and his men, each man with his own household, and David with his two wives, Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman, and Abigail the Carmelite woman, Nabal's wife. <sup>4</sup> Saul was told that David had fled to Gath, so he looked for him no longer.

**translationNotes****David arose and passed over**

“David took action; he passed over”

**passed over**

“passed over the border between Israel and Philistia”

**six hundred men**

600 (See: [Numbers](#))

**Achish**

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Maok**

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Ahinoam**

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 14:50](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Abigail**

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Nabal**

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Saul was told**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Someone told Saul” or “Saul heard” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**translationWords**

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- king
- Gath
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- household
- Jezreel
- Carmel, Mount Carmel

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 27:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> One day David said to Achish, “If you are pleased with us, give us a place in one of the small villages where we can stay. There is no need for us to stay in the city where you are the king.”

<sup>6</sup> Achish liked what David suggested. So that day Achish gave to David the town of Ziklag. As a result, Ziklag has belonged to the kings of Judah since that time.

<sup>7</sup> David and his men lived in the region of Philistia for sixteen months.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> David said to Achish, “If I have found favor in your eyes, let them give me a place in one of the cities in the country, that I may live there. Why should your servant live in the royal city with you?”

<sup>6</sup> So that day Achish gave him Ziklag; that is why Ziklag belongs to the kings of Judah to this very day. <sup>7</sup> The number of days that David lived in the land of the Philistines was a full year and four months.

**translationNotes****If I have found favor in your eyes**

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 20:3](#). AT: “If I have pleased you” or “If you consider me favorably” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**let them give me a place**

Since Achish was the one who would “give,” this is a metonym for “please give me a place.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**one of the cities in the country**

“one of the outlying towns” or “one of the towns outside the city”

**Why should your servant live in the royal city with you?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “I do not need to live in the city with you.” or “I am not important enough to live here with you in the royal city.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**your servant**

David speaks as if he were another person to show that he respected Achish. (See: [Pronouns](#))

## Ziklag

This is the name of a city in the southwest part of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- servant, slave, slavery
- royal
- king
- Judah
- day
- year
- month

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 27:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> During that time, David and his men raided the people who lived in the areas where the Geshur, Girzi, and Amalek people groups lived. Those people had lived there from long before. That area extended south to Shur and to the border of Egypt. <sup>9</sup> Whenever David's men attacked them, they killed all the men and women, and they took all the people's sheep and cattle and donkeys and camels, and even their clothes. Then they would bring those things back home, and David would go to talk to Achish.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> David and his men attacked various places, making raids on the Geshurites, the Girzites, and the Amalekites; for those nations were the inhabitants of the land, as you go to Shur, as far as the land of Egypt. They had been living there in the land from ancient times. <sup>[1]</sup> found in the Hebrew text, some modern versions have which is found in the margin of the Hebrew text. <sup>9</sup> David attacked the land and saved neither man nor woman alive; he took away the sheep, the oxen, the donkeys, the camels, and the clothing; he would return and come again to Achish.

---

27:8 <sup>[1]</sup>Instead of *the Gizrites*

**translationNotes****making raids on**

attacking and taking property many times (See: [Idiom](#))

**Girzites**

A people group who apparently lived somewhere between Philistia and Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**as you go to Shur**

Here “you” is being used as an indefinite pronoun that refers to anyone. AT: “on the way most people travel to Shur” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**Shur**

region on the northeast border of Egypt (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Achish

the king of Gath (See: [Pronouns](#))

## translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Geshur](#)
- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)
- [nation](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [camel](#)

## Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 27:10

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Each time Achish would ask David, “Where did you go raiding today?” Sometimes David would say that they had gone to the southern part of Judah, and sometimes he would say that they had gone to where the Jerahmeelites lived in the south, or that he had fought against the Kenites who lived in the south.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> Achish would say, “Against whom have you made a raid today?” David would answer, “Against the south of Judah,” or “Against the south of the Jerahmeelites,” or “Against the south of the Kenites.”

### translationNotes

#### Achish

the king of Gath (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Jerahmeelites

a clan from the tribe of Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Kenites

a people group who lived in the land of Midian (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [David](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 27:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> David's men never brought back to Gath any man or woman who was still alive. David thought, "If we do not kill everyone, some of them who are still alive they will go and tell Achish the truth about what we really did." David did that all the time that he and his men lived in the region of Philistia. <sup>12</sup> So Achish believed what David told him; he thought, "Because of what David has done, his own people, the Israelites, must now hate him very much. So he will have to stay here and serve me forever."

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> David would keep neither man nor woman alive to bring them to Gath, saying, "So that they cannot say about us, 'David did such and such.'" This was what he did all the while he was living in the country of the Philistines. <sup>12</sup> Achish believed David, saying, "He has made his people Israel utterly abhor him; he will therefore be my servant forever."

### translationNotes

#### Gath

one of five Philistine city-states. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Achish

the king of Gath (See: [Pronouns](#))

### translationWords

- David
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- forever

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 28 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Talking to the dead

Talking to the dead was against the law of Moses. God or the Holy Spirit left Saul because of his sin and would not help him. (See: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Spirit](#) and [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical question

Samuel uses a rhetorical question to say it was useless to ask his advice since there was no way Saul could be successful with God against him: "What then do you ask me, since Yahweh has left you, and he has become your enemy?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 28:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 28:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Some time later, the people of Philistia gathered their army to attack the Israelites again. King Achish told David, “I am expecting that you and your men will join with my men to attack the Israelites.”

<sup>2</sup> David replied, “We will go with you, and then you will see for yourself what we can do!”

Achish said, “Very well, I will appoint you to be my permanent bodyguard.”

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> It came about in those days that the Philistines gathered their armies together for battle to fight with Israel. Achish said to David, “Know for certain that you will go out with me in the host, you and your men.” <sup>2</sup> David said to Achish, “So you will know what your servant can do.” Achish said to David, “So I will make you my bodyguard all your days.”

**translationNotes****host**

large assembly of armies

**So you will know ... So I will**

The word “so” shows that the speaker agrees with what the other person has just said. AT: “Yes, I will go with you so that you will know ... Very well, I will” (See: [Connecting Words](#))

**you will know what your servant can do**

David probably wanted Achish to think that David would kill many Israelites, but “what your servant can do” could also mean that David was planning to kill Philistines instead. Try to translate so that the reader can see both of these possible meanings.

**your servant**

David speaks as if he is another person so that Achish will think David respects him. AT: “I” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**make you**

The word “you” refers to David and so is singular. (See: [Pronouns](#))

### **bodyguard**

a person who protects another person

### **translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 28:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Now while Samuel was still alive, Saul did some things that pleased Yahweh. One of the good things that Saul did was to expel from Israel all the people who were fortune tellers or who talked to the spirits of dead people. But Samuel had died, and all the Israelite people had mourned for him. Then they had buried him in Ramah, his hometown.

<sup>4</sup> The army of Philistia gathered and set up their tents at the city of Shunem, in the north of Israel. Saul gathered the Israelite army and set up their tents at Gilboa in the eastern part of the same valley.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Now Samuel had died, and all Israel had lamented him and buried him in Ramah, in his own city. Also, Saul had banned from the land those who talked with the dead or with spirits. <sup>4</sup> Then the Philistines gathered themselves together and came and camped at Shunem; and Saul gathered all Israel together, and they camped at Gilboa.

## translationNotes

### Now Samuel ... with spirits

The writer provides background information to prepare the reader for the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

### banned from the land

officially removed from the country or region, or prevented from entering AT: “expel from Israel”

### those who talked with the dead or with spirits

The words “those who talked with the dead” translate as one word in the original language, and the words “those who ... talked with spirits” also translate as one word in the original language. If your language has one word for those who talk with the dead and one word for those who talk with spirits, or if your language has only one word for those who talk with the dead and with spirits, you should use those words here.

### Then the Philistines gathered

after David and Achish spoke ([1 Samuel 28:02](#))

**gathered all Israel together**

“gathered all his armies in Israel together”

**Shunem ... Gilboa**

these are names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**translationWords**

- Samuel
- death, die, dead
- Israel, Israelites
- lament, laments, lamentation
- bury, buried, burial
- Ramah
- Saul (OT)
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- Philistines

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 28:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> When Saul saw the army of Philistia, he became so afraid that his heart pounded. <sup>6</sup> He prayed to Yahweh, but Yahweh did not answer him. Yahweh did not tell Saul what he should do by giving him a dream, or by having the priest throw the marked stones in his sacred pouch, or by giving a message about Saul to any prophet. <sup>7</sup> Then Saul said to his servants, “Find for me a woman who talks to the spirits of dead people, in order that I can ask her what will happen.” His servants replied, “There is a woman in the town of Endor who does that.”

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> When Saul saw the army of the Philistines, he was afraid, and his heart trembled very much. <sup>6</sup> Saul prayed to Yahweh for help, but Yahweh did not answer him—neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets. <sup>7</sup> Then Saul said to his servants, “Find me a woman who talks with the dead, so that I may go to her and seek her advice.” His servants said to him, “See, there is a woman in Endor who claims to talk with the dead.”

**translationNotes****he was afraid, and his heart trembled very much**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his fear. Here Saul is referred to by his “heart.” AT: “he was terrified” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Parallelism](#))

**Urim**

The high priest carried the sacred lots called Urim and Thummin in his breastplate, in a marked pouch, next to his heart.

**who talks with the dead**

These words translate as one word in the original language. If your language has one word for a person who talks to the dead, you should use it here. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 28:3](#).

**Endor**

place name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))



**translationWords**

- Saul (OT)
- Philistines
- fear, fears, afraid
- heart, hearts
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- Yahweh
- dream
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 28:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> So Saul took off the clothes that showed that he was the king, and he put on ordinary clothes to disguise himself. Then he and two of his men went during the night to talk to that woman. Saul said to her, “I want you to talk to a spirit of someone who has died. Cause to appear the person whose name I will give to you.”

<sup>9</sup> But the woman replied, “You surely know what Saul has done. He expelled from this land all the people who talk to spirits of dead people and all fortune tellers. I think that you are trying to trap me, in order that I will be executed for doing something that is not permitted.”

<sup>10</sup> Saul replied, solemnly asking Yahweh to listen to what he was saying, “Just as surely as Yahweh is alive, you will not be punished for doing this.”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> Saul disguised himself, put on other clothing, and went, he and two men with him; they went to the woman by night. He said, “Divine for me, I beg you, with a spirit, and bring me up whomever I name to you.” <sup>9</sup> The woman said to him, “See, you know what Saul has done, how he has banned from the land those who talk with the dead or with spirits. So why are you setting a trap for my life, to make me die?” <sup>10</sup> Saul swore to her by Yahweh and said, “As Yahweh lives, no punishment will happen to you for this thing.”

**translationNotes****Saul disguised himself ... and went ... to the woman by night**

Saul disguised himself because the way from Gilboa ([1 Samuel 28:4](#)) to Endor ([1 Samuel 28:7](#)) was through land that the Philistines were living in. He traveled all day and reached the woman after the sun had gone down.

**disguised**

changed his usual appearance no one would know who he was

**Divine for me ... with a spirit**

“Talk to the dead for me”

**those who talk with the dead or with spirits**

The words “those who talk with the dead” translate as one word in the original language, and the words “those who ... talk with spirits” also translate as one word in the original language. If your

language has one word for those who talk with the dead and one word for those who talk with spirits, or if your language has only one word for those who talk with the dead and with spirits, you should use those words here. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 28:3](#).

**my life**

The word “life” represents the person. AT: “me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 28:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Saul said to her, “Do not be afraid. What do you see?”

The woman said, “I see a god coming up out of the ground.” <sup>14</sup> Saul said, “What does he look like?”

The woman replied, “An old man wearing a robe is appearing.”

Then Saul knew that it was Samuel. So he bowed down with his face touching the ground.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> The king said to her, “Do not be afraid. What do you see?” The woman said to Saul, “I see a god coming up out of the earth.” <sup>14</sup> He said to her, “What does he look like?” She said, “An old man is coming up; he is clothed with a robe.” Saul perceived that it was Samuel, and he bowed with his face to the ground and showed respect.

**translationNotes****a god**

Other possible meanings are 1) “one like God” or 2) “a judge” (See: [1 Samuel 7:15](#)).

**translationWords**

- [king](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [clothe, clothed](#)
- [robe](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 28:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Samuel said, "Yahweh has abandoned you and has become your enemy. So why do you ask me what you should do? <sup>17</sup> He has done what he told me previously that he would do to you. He has torn the kingdom away from you, and he is giving it to someone who is another Israelite—David.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Samuel said, "What then do you ask me, since Yahweh has left you, and he has become your enemy? <sup>17</sup> Yahweh has done to you what he said he would. Yahweh has torn the kingdom out of your hand and he has given it to someone else—to David.

**translationNotes****torn the kingdom out of your hand**

Samuel speaks as if the kingdom were a physical object that could be held in the hand and grabbed out by another person. AT: "made you so you are no longer king" or "made another person king in your place" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [Samuel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [David](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 28:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> You did not obey Yahweh. Yahweh was very angry with the Amalek people group. You did not kill all of their animals, with the result that you did not show that he was very angry with them. That is the reason that he is refusing to answer you today. <sup>19</sup> Yahweh will enable the Philistine army to defeat you and all the other Israelite soldiers. And tomorrow you and your sons will be with me in the place where spirits of dead people are. Yahweh will cause the whole Israelite army to be defeated by the Philistine army.” After Samuel said that, he disappeared.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Because you did not obey the voice of Yahweh and did not carry out his fierce wrath on Amalek, he has therefore done this today to you. <sup>19</sup> Moreover, Yahweh will hand over Israel and you into the hand of the Philistines. Tomorrow you and your sons will be with me. Yahweh will also hand over the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines.”

**translationNotes****Yahweh will hand over Israel and you into the hand of the Philistines**

Samuel speaks as if the people of Israel were a small object that Yahweh would give to the Philistines, whom he speaks of as if they were one person. AT: “Yahweh will allow the Philistines to do whatever they want to do to you and the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will be with me**

This is a polite way to say that Saul will die. AT: “will be dead” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**Yahweh will also hand over the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines**

Samuel speaks as if the army of Israel were a small object that Yahweh would give to the Philistines, whom he speaks of as if they were one person. AT: “Yahweh will allow the Philistines to do whatever they want to do to the army of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**translationWords**

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [son, sons](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 28:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Saul immediately fell flat on the ground. He was so afraid because of what Samuel had said that he lost all his strength. He was also very weak because he had not eaten anything all that day and night.

<sup>21</sup> The woman saw that he was very worried. She said to him, "Listen to me! I have done what you requested me to do. I could be executed for doing that.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Then Saul immediately fell his full length on the ground and was very afraid because of the words of Samuel. There was no strength in him, for he had eaten no food all that day, neither that whole night. <sup>21</sup> The woman came to Saul and saw that he was very troubled, She said to him, "See, your woman servant has listened to your voice; I have put my life in my hand and have listened to the words that you said to me.

**translationNotes****he had eaten no food all that day, neither that whole night**

Saul had not eaten during the night before he traveled from Gilboa (1 Samuel 28:4) to Endor (1 Samuel 28:7), nor during the day as he journeyed, nor during the night on which he visited the woman.

**I have put my life in my hand and have listened**

This is an idiom. "I could die because I listened" or "Someone could kill me because I listened" (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- Saul (OT)
- fear, fears, afraid
- word, words
- Samuel
- strength, strengthen
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- servant, slave, slavery
- voice
- hand, right hand, to hand over



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 28:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> So now please pay attention to what I say. Allow me to give you some food, in order that you will eat it and get enough strength to go back to your army.”

<sup>23</sup> But Saul refused. He said, “No, I will not eat anything.” Then Saul’s servants also urged him to eat something, and finally he listened to them. He got up from the ground and sat on the bed.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Now therefore, I beg you, listen also to the voice of your woman servant, and let me set a little food in front of you. Eat so that you may gain strength for when you go on your way.” <sup>23</sup> But Saul refused and said, “I will not eat.” But his servants, together with the woman, compelled him, and he listened to their voice. So he rose from the ground and sat on the bed.

**translationNotes****the voice of your woman servant**

The woman speaks as if she is another person to show that she respects Saul. She refers to herself by her “voice” to emphasize what she says. AT: “my voice” or “me speak to you” (See: [Pronouns](#) or [Synecdoche](#))

**refused**

“did not accept” or “would not do what they asked”

**compelled**

“forced”

**translationWords**

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [strength, strengthen](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [voice](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 28:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> The woman had a fat calf close to her house. She quickly slaughtered it and cooked it. She took some flour and mixed it with olive oil, and baked it without putting in any yeast. <sup>25</sup> She placed the food in front of Saul and his servants, and they ate some of it. Then that same night they got up and left.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> The woman had a fatted calf in the house; she hurried and killed it; she took flour, kneaded it, and baked unleavened bread with it. <sup>25</sup> She brought it before Saul and his servants, and they ate. Then they got up and left that night.

### translationNotes

#### fatted calf

a calf that has been grown and fed to be available for a special feast

#### she ... kneaded it

She mixed flour and oil, working and rolling the mixture thoroughly with her hands to produce dough for baking.

### translationWords

- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 29 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Many translations set apart quotations, prayers, or songs. 1 Samuel 29:5 is a song praising David. It has been set apart in the ULB through the use of indentation.

### Other possible translation difficulties

It is unclear whether David wanted to go into battle with the Philistines. He would have been fighting against Saul, but he also would have been fighting against Israel's soldiers. It is probably best to see that David is conflicted over this issue, but some scholars believe that David planned on turning against the Philistines in the battle.

### Links:

- [1 Samuel 29:01 Notes](#)

**1 Samuel 29:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> The Philistine army gathered at the Valley of Aphek. The Israelites set up their tents at the city of Jezreel, which was in the same valley. <sup>2</sup> The kings of Philistia divided their men into groups; some groups had one hundred soldiers and some groups had one thousand soldiers. David and his men were marching behind, with King Achish.

**ULB:**

<sup>1</sup> Now the Philistines gathered together all their army at Aphek; the Israelites camped by the spring that is in Jezreel. <sup>2</sup> The princes of the Philistines passed on by hundreds and by thousands; David and his men passed on in the rear guard with Achish.

**translationNotes****spring**

a small stream of water flowing naturally from the Earth

**passed on by hundreds and by thousands**

“divided their men into groups; some groups had one hundred soldiers and some groups had one thousand soldiers”

**hundreds ... thousands**

100s ... 1,000s (See: [Numbers](#))

**David and his men passed on in the rear guard with Achish**

The groups of hundreds and thousands passed on first, then Achish and his helpers, and then David, his men, and the other Philistine soldiers, who were guarding Achish.

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jezreel](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [David](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 29:3****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> But the Philistine commanders asked, “What are these Hebrews doing here, marching with us to battle?”

Achish replied, “Their leader is David. He previously worked for King Saul of Israel, but now he has been living near me for more than a year. During all the time since he left Saul, I have not seen that he has any faults.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Then the princes of the Philistines said, “What are these Hebrews doing here?” Achish said to the other princes of the Philistines, “Is not this David, the servant of Saul, the king of Israel, who has been with me these days, or rather these years, and I have found no fault with him since he came away to me to this day?”

**translationNotes****What are these Hebrews doing here?**

Possible ways to translate this rhetorical question as a statement are AT: 1) “You should not have allowed these Hebrews, our enemies, to be here with us.” or 2) “Tell us who these Hebrews are.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Is not this David ... these years, and I have found ... this day?**

Another possible translation is “Is not this David, ... these years? I have found ... this day.” The rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “You should know that this is David ... these years. I have found ... this day.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**I have found no fault with him**

This can be stated in positive form. AT: “I know of nothing that he has done wrong” or “I am very pleased with him” (See: [Litotes](#))

**translationWords**

- [prince, princess](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)



- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [king](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 29:4

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> But the Philistine army commanders were angry with Achish for allowing David's army to be going with them. They said to him, "Send David and his men back to the city that you gave to him! We do not want him to go with us into the battle. If he goes with us, we will have an enemy in our own midst! He would please Saul by killing our own soldiers!"

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> But the princes of the Philistines were angry with him; they said to him, "Make that man go away, that he may go back to his place that you have given him; do not let him go with us into battle, so that he does not become an enemy to us in the battle. For how else could this fellow make peace with his master? Would it not be with the heads of our men?"

### translationNotes

#### do not let him go with us into battle

"do not let his army join with our army against our enemies"

#### For how else could this fellow make peace with his master? Would it not be with the heads of our men?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "The best way for David to make peace with his master would be by killing our soldiers!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### translationWords

- prince, princess
- Philistines
- angry, anger
- adversary, enemy
- peace, peaceful
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- head

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 29:5****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> Have you forgotten that David is the one about whom the Israelites dance and sing, saying, 'Saul has killed a thousand of our enemies, but David has killed ten thousand of them'?"

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Is this not David of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, 'Saul has slain his thousands, and David his ten thousands'?"

**translationNotes**

**Is this not David of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, 'Saul ... ten thousands'?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not trust David—he is the one of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, 'Saul ... ten thousands!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**thousands ... ten thousands**

"1,000s ... 10,000s" (See: [Numbers](#))

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 29:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> So Achish summoned David, and said to him, "Just as surely as Yahweh is alive, you have been loyal to me. I would like very much for you to fight along with my army. Since the day that you came to me, I have not found that you have any faults. But the other kings do not trust you. <sup>7</sup> So all of you go back home, and I hope to do anything that the other kings of Philistia will not be pleased with."

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then Achish called David and said to him, "As Yahweh lives, you have been good, and your going out and your coming in with me in the army is good in my view; for I have found nothing wrong with you since the day of your coming to me to this very day. Nevertheless, the princes are not favorable to you. <sup>7</sup> So now return and go in peace, so that you do not displease the princes of the Philistines."

**translationNotes****As Yahweh lives**

This is an idiom. "As certainly as Yahweh lives" or "This is a true statement" (See: [Idiom](#))

**your going out and your coming in with me in the army is good**

"I am happy to have you go out and come in with me and my army" or "It is good that you go everywhere with me and my army"

**translationWords**

- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)

- [1 Samuel 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 29:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> David replied, “What wrong have I done? Since the day that I first came to you until today, have I done anything that you think is evil? Your majesty, why will you not allow me to go and fight against your enemies?”

<sup>9</sup> Achish replied, “I know I can trust you as much as I could trust an angel from God. But the commanders of my army have said, ‘We will not allow David and his men to go with us into the battle.’

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> David said to Achish, “But what have I done? What have you found in your servant as long as I have been before you to this day, that I may not go and fight against the enemies of my master the king?” <sup>9</sup> Achish answered and said to David, “I know that you are as blameless in my sight as an angel of God; nevertheless, the princes of the Philistines have said, ‘He must not go up with us to the battle.’

**translationNotes****my master the king**

David speaks as if Achish were another person so that Achish will think David respects him. AT: “you, my master and king” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**nevertheless, the princes**

“even though that is true, this is more important: the princes” or “however, the princes”

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [king](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [God](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [Philistines](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 29:10-11****UDB:**

<sup>10</sup> So early tomorrow morning you and your men must leave. Get up as soon as it gets light and leave.”

<sup>11</sup> So David and his men got up early the following morning and returned to the area where the Philistine people lived. But the Philistine army went up to the city of Jezreel.

**ULB:**

<sup>10</sup> So now rise up early in the morning with the servants of your master who have come with you; as soon as you are up early in the morning and have light, go away.” <sup>11</sup> So David rose up early, he and his men, to leave in the morning, to return into the land of the Philistines. But the Philistines went up to Jezreel.

**translationNotes****your master**

The reader should understand that Achish is speaking of Saul.

**have light**

“can see with the morning sun”

**translationWords**

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- servant, slave, slavery
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs
- light
- Philistines
- Jezreel

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 29 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 30 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David fights the Amalekites

When David and his men arrive home, they find the Amalekites have raided Ziklag and taken everything. They catch and destroy them and bring back all of their goods and families. Then David sends gifts to all the cities in Judah through which they had traveled.

#### Links: ###=

- [1 Samuel 30:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Samuel 30:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Three days later, when David and his men arrived at Ziklag, they discovered that men of the Amalek people group had raided Ziklag and some towns in the southern Judean wilderness. They had destroyed Ziklag and burned down all the buildings. <sup>2</sup> They had captured the women and the children and everyone else, and had taken them away. But they had not killed anyone.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> It came about, when David and his men had come to Ziklag on the third day, that the Amalekites had made a raid upon the Negev and on Ziklag. They attacked Ziklag, burned it, <sup>2</sup> and captured the women and everyone who was in it, both small and great. They killed no one, but carried them off as they went on their way.

### translationNotes

#### Ziklag

Ziklag is a city in the southern part of Judah. This was where David and his men kept their families.

#### they

the Amalekites

#### both small and great

Possible meanings are 1) “both unimportant people and important people” or 2) “both physically small and physically large.”

### translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)
- [Negev](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> When David and his men came to Ziklag, they saw that the town had been burned, and that their wives and sons and daughters had been captured and taken away. <sup>4</sup> David and his men cried loudly, until they were so weak that they could not cry anymore.

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> When David and his men came to the city, it was burned, and their wives, their sons, and their daughters were taken captive. <sup>4</sup> Then David and the people that were with him raised their voices and wept until they had no more power to weep.

**translationNotes****their wives ... sons ... daughters**

belonging to David and his men

**it was burned, and their wives ... daughters were taken captive**

This can be translated in active form. AT: “they saw that someone had burned it and taken their wives ... captive” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the people that were with him**

These were mainly his army of men.

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [voice](#)
- [power, powers](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> David's two wives, Ahinoam and Abigail, had also been taken away. <sup>6</sup> David's men were threatening to kill him by throwing stones at him, because they were very angry because their sons and daughters had been taken away. David was very distressed, but Yahweh his God gave him strength.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> David's two wives were taken captive, Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman, and Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite. <sup>6</sup> David was greatly distressed, for the people were talking about stoning him, for all the people were bitter in spirit, each man for his sons and daughters; but David strengthened himself in Yahweh, his God.

**translationNotes****General Information:**

David finds strength in Yahweh after the raid.

**Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman**

"Ahinoam from Jezreel"

**Nabal the Carmelite**

"Nabal the man from Carmel"

**Ahinoam ... Abigail**

women's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**distressed**

suffering

**all the people were bitter in spirit**

The word "bitter" is a metaphor for the desire to rebel. The word "spirit" is a synecdoche for the person. AT: "all the people were ready to rebel against David" or "all the people were very unhappy" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### **David strengthened himself in Yahweh, his God**

Possible meanings are 1) “David took courage because he knew Yahweh his God would help him” or 2) “Yahweh his God made David strong.”

#### **translationWords**

- David
- captive, captivity
- Jezreel
- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- stone, stones, stoning
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- Yahweh
- God

#### **Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 30:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Then David did not know what to do, so he said to Abiathar the priest, “Bring to me the sacred apron and the sacred vest.” So Abiathar brought them, <sup>8</sup> and David asked Yahweh, “Should I and my men pursue the men who took our families? Will we be able to catch up to them?”

Yahweh answered by means of the stones in the sacred vest: “Yes, pursue them. You will catch up to them, and you will be able to rescue your families.”

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> David said to Abiathar son of Ahimelech, the priest, “I beg you, bring the ephod here for me.” Abiathar brought the ephod to David. <sup>8</sup> David prayed to Yahweh for direction, saying, “If I pursue after this troop, will I overtake them?” Yahweh answered him, “Pursue, for you will certainly overtake them, and you will surely recover everything.”

### translationNotes

#### General Information:

David seeks Yahweh’s direction in dealing with the raid on his people.

#### David prayed to Yahweh for direction

The abstract noun “direction” can be translated as a clause. AT: “David prayed that Yahweh would tell David what David should do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### pursue

“chase” or “follow”

### translationWords

- David
- Abiathar
- priest, priests, priesthood
- ephod
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- Yahweh

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> So David and the six hundred men who were with him left, and they came to the ravine of Besor. Some of his men stayed there with some of their supplies. <sup>10</sup> David and four hundred men continued to pursue the men who captured their families. The other two hundred men stayed there at the ravine, because they were so exhausted that they could not cross the ravine.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> So David went, he and the six hundred men who were with him; they came to the brook Besor, where those who were left behind stayed. <sup>10</sup> But David kept pursuing, he and four hundred men; for two hundred had stayed behind, who were so weak that they could not go over the brook Besor.

**translationNotes****six hundred men**

600 men (See: [Numbers](#))

**brook**

small stream

**pursuing**

“chasing” or “following”

**four hundred men**

400 men (See: [Numbers](#))

**two hundred**

200 men (See: [Numbers](#))

**who were so weak**

They were tired from their own raids and now in pursuit of the Amalekites. They no longer had the strength to continue.

**translationWords**

- [David](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 30:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> As David and the four hundred men were going, they saw a man from Egypt in a field; so they took him to David. They gave the man some water to drink and some food to eat. <sup>12</sup> They also gave him a piece of fig cake and two clusters of raisins. The man had not had anything to eat or drink for three days and nights, but after he ate and drank he felt refreshed.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> They found an Egyptian in a field and brought him to David; they gave him bread, and he ate; they gave him water to drink; <sup>12</sup> and they gave him a piece of a cake of figs and two clusters of raisins. When he had eaten, he gained strength again, for he had eaten no bread nor drunk any water for three days and three nights.

### translationNotes

#### an Egyptian in a field

He was left there to die from the Amalekite raiding party.

#### clusters of raisins

“clusters of dried grapes”

### translationWords

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [David](#)
- [bread](#)
- [fig](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:13-14****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> David asked him, “Who is your master? And where do you come from?”

He replied, “I am from Egypt. I am a slave of a man from the Amalek people group. Three days ago my master left me here, because I was sick and I was not able to go with them. <sup>14</sup> We had raided the southern Judean wilderness of the Kerethites, and some other towns in Judah, and the southern Judean wilderness of the Calebites. We also burned Ziklag.”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> David said to him, “To whom do you belong? Where do you come from?” He said, “I am a young man of Egypt, servant to an Amalekite; my master left me because three days ago I fell sick. <sup>14</sup> We made a raid on the Negev of the Kerethites, and what belongs to Judah, and the Negev of Caleb, and we burned Ziklag.”

**translationNotes****David said to him**

David questioned the Egyptian slave.

**three days ago**

“three days in the past”

**three days**

3 days (See: [Numbers](#))

**a raid**

an attack on a town to take property

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Caleb](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 30:15

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> David asked him, “Can you lead us to this group of raiders?”

He replied, “Yes, I will do that if you ask God to listen while you promise that you will not kill me or give me back to my master. If you promise that, I will take you to them.”

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> David said to him, “Will you bring me down to this raiding party?” The Egyptian said, “Swear to me by God that you will not kill me or betray me up into the hands of my master, and I will bring you down to this raiding party.”

### translationNotes

#### raiding party

a group of armed warriors who attack people or places unexpectedly

#### you will not ... betray me up into the hands of my master

Here “hands” refers to control. AT: “you will not ... violate the trust I have in you by allowing my master to control me again” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### translationWords

- David
- Egypt, Egyptian
- oath, swear, swear by
- God
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> David agreed to do that, so the man from Egypt led David and his men to where the men from the Amalek people group were. Those men were lying on the ground, eating and drinking and celebrating because they had captured many things from the regions of Philistia and Judah. <sup>17</sup> David and his men fought against them from sunset that day until the evening of the following day. Four hundred of them escaped and rode away on camels, but none of the others escaped.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> When the Egyptian had brought David down, the raiders were spread out over all the ground, eating and drinking and dancing because of all the booty they had taken out of the land of the Philistines and from the land of Judah. <sup>17</sup> David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. Not a man escaped except for four hundred young men, who rode on camels and fled.

**translationNotes****booty**

the goods they had stolen in the raid

**twilight**

the time just after the sun goes down until the sky is dark

**four hundred**

400 (See: [Numbers](#))

**translationWords**

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [camel](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:18-20****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> David rescued his two wives, and he and his men got back everything else that the men of the Amalek people group had taken. <sup>19</sup> Nothing was missing. They took all their people back to Ziklag— young people and old people, their wives, their sons and their daughters. They also recovered all the other things that the men of the Amalek people group had taken from Ziklag. <sup>20</sup> They took with them the sheep and cattle that had been captured, and his men caused these animals to go in front of the rest of the cattle; they said, “These are animals that we captured in the battle; they belong to David!”

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> David recovered all that the Amalekites had taken; and David rescued his two wives. <sup>19</sup> Nothing was missing, neither small nor great, neither sons nor daughters, neither booty, nor anything that the raiders had taken for themselves. David brought back everything. <sup>20</sup> David took all the flocks and the herds, which the men drove ahead of the other cattle. They said, “This is David’s booty.”

**translationNotes****rescued**

“saved” or “freed”

**Nothing was missing**

“None of the items the Amalekites had stolen were lost”

**neither small nor great**

Possible meanings are 1) “neither unimportant people nor important people” or 2) “neither physically small nor physically large.” See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 30:2](#).

**booty**

goods that the Amalekites had stolen. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:16](#).

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> David and his men got back to where the other two hundred men were waiting, the men who did not go with David because they were very exhausted. They had stayed at the ravine of Besor. When they saw David and his men coming, they went out to greet them. And David greeted them also.

<sup>22</sup> But some of the men who had gone with David, men who were evil and troublemakers, said, “These two hundred men did not go with us. So we should not give to them any of the things that we recovered. Each of them should take only his wife and children and go back to their homes.”

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> David came to the two hundred men who had been too weak to follow him, the ones the others had made to stay at the brook Besor. These men went ahead to meet David and the people who were with him. When David came to these people, he greeted them. <sup>22</sup> Then all the wicked men and worthless fellows among those who had gone with David said, “Because these men did not go with us, we will not give them any of the booty that we have recovered. Except that each man may take his wife and children, lead them away, and go.”

**translationNotes****two hundred**

200 (See: [Numbers](#))

**brook**

small stream or creek

**Besor**

This is the name of a small stream. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**greeted**

“welcomed” or “sent a message of friendship”

**booty**

goods they had taken from the enemy in battle. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:16](#).

**recovered**

“regained” or “got back”

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:23-25****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> David replied, "No, my fellow Israelites, that would not be right. Yahweh has protected us and enabled us to defeat the enemies who attacked our town. <sup>24</sup> Who will pay attention to you if you say things like that? The men who stayed here with our supplies will get the same amount that the men who went into the battle will get. They will all receive the same amount." <sup>25</sup> David made that to be a law for the Israelite people, and that is still a law in Israel.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> Then David said, "You must not act like this, my brothers, with what Yahweh has given to us. He has preserved us and given into our hand the raiders who came against us. <sup>24</sup> Who will listen to you in this matter? For as the share is for anyone who goes into battle, so also will the share be for anyone who waits by the baggage; they will share and share alike." <sup>25</sup> It has been so from that day to this day, for David made it a statute and a decree for Israel.

**translationNotes****Who will listen to you in this matter?**

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement: AT: "No one will listen to you in this matter." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**as the share is for anyone who goes**

The abstract noun "share" can be translated as a verb. AT: "as what belongs to anyone who goes" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**anyone who goes into battle**

the warriors who actually fought the enemy in war

**will share and share alike**

"will make sure that all receive the same amount"

**anyone who waits by the baggage**

the people who supported the warriors by managing and guarding their supplies

**baggage**

belongings that the soldiers left behind when they went into battle

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 30:26-28****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> When David and all the others arrived in Ziklag, David sent to his friends who were leaders in Judah some of the things that they had captured from the Amalek people group. He said to them, “Here is a present for you. These are things that we took from Yahweh’s enemies.”

<sup>27</sup> Here is a list of the cities and towns to whose leaders David sent gifts: Bethel, Ramoth in the southern part of Judah, Jattir, <sup>28</sup> Aroer, Siphmoth, Eshtemoa.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> When David came to Ziklag, he sent some of the booty to the elders of Judah, to his friends, saying, “See, here is a present for you from the booty from Yahweh’s enemies.” <sup>27</sup> He also sent some to the elders who were in Bethuel, and to those who were in Ramoth of the South, and to those who were in Jattir, <sup>28</sup> and to those who were in Aroer, and to those who were in Siphmoth, and to those who were in Eshtemoa.

**translationNotes****Connecting Statement:**

The writer begins a list of cities whose elders received gifts from David.

**Ziklag ... Bethuel ... Jattir ... Aroer ... Siphmoth ... Eshtemoa**

names of towns (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**booty**

goods that David had taken from the Amalekites after the battle. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:16](#).

**a present**

“a gift”

**translationWords**

- [David](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [elder](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ramoth](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 30:29-31

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> Also Rakal, the cities where the descendants of Jehrameel and the cities where the Kenite people group live, <sup>30</sup> Hormah, Bor Ashan, Athak, <sup>31</sup> Hebron, and all the other places where David and his men had often gone.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> He also sent some to the elders who were in Rakal, and to those who were in the cities of the Jerahmeelites, and to those who were in the cities of the Kenites, <sup>30</sup> and to those who were in Hormah, and to those who were in Bor Ashan, and to those who were in Athak, <sup>31</sup> and to those who were in Hebron, and to all the places where David himself and his men habitually went.

### translationNotes

#### Connecting Statement:

The writer ends the list of cities whose elders received gifts from David that began in [1 Samuel 30:27](#). You may be able to combine the list items from [1 Samuel 30:27-31](#) into one list.

#### Rakal ... Hormah ... Bor Ashan ... Athak

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Jerahmeelites ... Kenites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- [Hebron](#)
- [David](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 30 translationQuestions](#)



## 1 Samuel 31 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the end of the section on Saul, but the book continues in 2 Samuel 1.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Saul's punishment

Saul receives his punishment from God: death for his disobedience and resisting the will of God.  
(See: [will of God](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Samuel 31:1](#)

## 1 Samuel 31:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Later, the Philistines again fought against the Israelites. The Israelites ran away from them, and many Israelites were killed on Mount Gilboa. <sup>2</sup> The Philistines caught up with Saul and his three sons, and they killed three of his sons, Jonathan and Abinadab and Malki-Shua. <sup>3</sup> The fighting was very fierce around Saul. When the Philistine archers caught up with Saul, they wounded him badly with their arrows.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> Now the Philistines fought against Israel. The men of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down dead on Mount Gilboa. <sup>2</sup> The Philistines closely pursued Saul and his sons. The Philistines killed Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malki-Shua, his sons. <sup>3</sup> The battle went heavily against Saul, and the archers overtook him. He was in severe pain because of them.

### translationNotes

#### Now the Philistines fought against Israel

This battle was the result of the conflict between David and the Philistines in [1 Samuel 29:11](#). The writer has finished telling the story of David in [1 Samuel 30:1-30](#), and now he tells about the battle between the Israelites and the Philistines.

#### against Israel

“Israel” refers to the people who live there. AT: “against the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Mount Gilboa

This is the name of a mountain (See: [How to Translate Names](#)).

#### closely pursued Saul and his sons

“chased Saul and three of his sons”

#### Abinadab, and Malki-Shua

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#)).

#### The battle went heavily against Saul

This is an idiom. “Saul’s army began to lose the battle” (See: [Idiom](#))

**translationWords**

- [Philistines](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [archer](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 31:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Saul said to the man who was carrying his weapons, “Take out your sword and kill me with it, in order that these heathen Philistines will not be able to thrust their swords into me and make fun of me while I am dying.”

But the man who was carrying Saul’s weapons was terrified, and refused to do that. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it. The sword pierced his body, and he died. <sup>5</sup> When the man carrying his weapons saw that Saul was dead, he also threw himself on his own sword and died. <sup>6</sup> So Saul, three of his sons, and the man who carried Saul’s weapons, all died on that same day.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then Saul said to his armor bearer, “Draw your sword and thrust me through with it. Otherwise, these uncircumcised will come and abuse me.” But his armor bearer would not, for he was very afraid. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it. <sup>5</sup> When his armor bearer saw that Saul was dead, he likewise fell on his sword and died with him. <sup>6</sup> So Saul died, his three sons, and his armor bearer—these men all died together that same day.

**translationNotes****armor bearer**

The armor bearer carried the large shield of his commanding officer and other weapons. He protected the commanding officer during a battle.

**these uncircumcised**

The nominal adjective “uncircumcised” can be translated as an adjective. Not being circumcised is a metonym for being foreigners. AT: “these men who have not been circumcised” or “these non-Israelite men” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**would not**

The ellipsis can be filled in. AT: “would not do what Saul had told him to do” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**took his own sword and fell on it**

“killed himself with his own sword”

**that same day**

“on that one day”

**translationWords**

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [armor](#)
- [sword](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 31:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> When the Israelite people on the north side of the Valley of Jezreel and on the east side of the Jordan River heard that the Israelite army had run away and that Saul and his sons had died, they left their towns and ran away. Then the Philistines came and occupied their cities.

<sup>8</sup> The next day, when the Philistines came to take away the weapons of the dead Israelite soldiers, they found the bodies of Saul and his three sons on Mount Gilboa.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> When the men of Israel who were on the other side of the valley, and those beyond the Jordan, saw that the men of Israel had fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they abandoned their cities and fled, and the Philistines came and lived in them. <sup>8</sup> It came about on the next day, when the Philistines came to strip the dead, that they found Saul and his three sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.

### translationNotes

#### lived in them

lived in the cities the men of Israel had left

#### strip the dead

take the armor and weapons off the dead Israelites' bodies

#### Mount Gilboa

a mountain range overlooking the Valley of Jezreel in northern Israel, south of Nazareth (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Saul (OT)
- death, die, dead
- Philistines
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 translationQuestions](#)

**1 Samuel 31:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> They cut off Saul's head and took his weapons. Then they sent messengers throughout their land to proclaim the news in the temples, where they kept their idols, and to the other people, that their army had defeated the Israelites. <sup>10</sup> They put Saul's weapons in the temple of their goddess Asherah. They also fastened the bodies of Saul and his sons to the wall that surrounded the city of Beth Shan.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> They cut off his head and stripped off his armor, and sent messengers into the land of the Philistines throughout to carry the news to their idols' temples and to the people. <sup>10</sup> They put his armor in the temple of the Ashtoreths, and they fastened his body to the city wall of Beth Shan.

**translationNotes****the land of the Philistines throughout**

“all areas of the land of the Philistines”

**to carry the news to their idols' temples and to the people**

“to speak the news inside the temples and to the people”

**their idols' temples**

the buildings where they worshiped their idols

**Ashtoreths**

ancient false goddesses and idols, also called “Asherah” or “Astarte”

**fastened**

“attached” (probably with a large spike or nail)

**Beth Shan**

the name of a city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))



**translationWords**

- armor
- send, send out, sent
- messenger
- Philistines
- idol, idolatrous
- body, bodies

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 translationQuestions](#)

## 1 Samuel 31:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> When the people who lived in Jabesh in the region of Gilead heard what the Philistines had done to Saul's corpse, <sup>12</sup> all their bravest soldiers walked all night to Beth Shan. They took the corpses of Saul and his sons down from the city wall, and they took them back to Jabesh and burned the corpses there. <sup>13</sup> They took the bones and buried them under a big tamarisk tree. Then they fasted for seven days.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> When the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead heard of what the Philistines had done to Saul, <sup>12</sup> all the fighting men arose and went all night and took the body of Saul and the bodies of his sons from the wall of Beth Shan. They went to Jabesh and burned them there. <sup>13</sup> Then they took their bones and buried them under a tamarisk tree in Jabesh, and fasted for seven days.

### translationNotes

#### Jabesh

the name of a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 11:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### what the Philistines had done to Saul

“how the Philistines had dishonored Saul”

#### all night

“throughout the whole night”

#### a tamarisk tree

This is a type of tree. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 22:6](#). AT: “a large shade tree” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### translationWords

- [Gilead](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [fast](#)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 translationQuestions](#)

## translationQuestions

### 1 Samuel 1

**Who were the two wives of Elkanah?**

The wives of Elkanah were Hannah and Peninnah. [1:1]

**Who were the two wives of Elkanah?**

The wives of Elkanah were Hannah and Peninnah. [1:2]

**How many children did Hannah have?**

Hannah had no children. [1:2]

**Why did Elkanah give a double portion to Hannah?**

He gave a double portion to Hannah because he loved her. [1:5]

**Why did Hannah's rival provoke her?**

She provoked Hannah in order to irritate her, because Yahweh had closed her womb. [1:6]

**What did Hannah do because she was so deeply distressed about not having children?**

She went to the house of Yahweh and prayed and wept bitterly. [1:9]

**What did Hannah do because she was so deeply distressed about not having children?**

She went to the house of Yahweh and prayed and wept bitterly. [1:10]

**What did Hannah vow to Yahweh?**

Hannah vowed that if Yahweh would give her a son, she would give him to Yahweh and no razor would touch his head. [1:11]

**Because Hannah was speaking to Yahweh from her heart, what did Eli, the priest, think about her actions?**

Eli saw Hannah's lips moving but didn't hear her voice, so he thought she was drunk from wine. [1:12]

**Because Hannah was speaking to Yahweh from her heart, what did Eli, the priest, think about her actions?**

Eli saw Hannah's lips moving but didn't hear her voice, so he thought she was drunk from wine. [1:13]

**Because Hannah was speaking to Yahweh from her heart, what did Eli, the priest, think about her actions?**

Eli saw Hannah's lips moving but didn't hear her voice, so he thought she was drunk from wine. [1:14]

**What did Hannah assure Eli she was doing?**

Hannah assured Eli that she was not drunk but was speaking to Yahweh from her heart. [1:15]

**What did Hannah assure Eli she was doing?**

Hannah assured Eli that she was not drunk but was speaking to Yahweh from her heart. [1:16]

**What did Eli say to Hannah that caused her to go on her way, eat and no longer feel sad?**

Eli told her to go in peace and asked the God of Israel to grant her the request she was asking him. [1:17]

**What did Eli say to Hannah that caused her to go on her way, eat and no longer feel sad?**

Eli told her to go in peace and asked the God of Israel to grant her the request she was asking him. [1:18]

**When Hannah conceived and gave birth to a son, what did she name him?**

Hannah named her son Samuel because she asked for him from Yahweh. [1:20]

**Why did Hannah not go with her husband to the temple for the yearly sacrifice?**

Because she was still nursing her son. [1:21]

**Why did Hannah not go with her husband to the temple for the yearly sacrifice?**

Because she was still nursing her son. [1:22]

**Why did Hannah not go with her husband to the temple for the yearly sacrifice?**

Because she was still nursing her son. [1:23]

**What did Hannah take with her, along with her son, to the house of Yahweh to give to Eli the priest?**

Hannah took a sacrifice of a three year old bull, one ephah of meal, and a bottle of wine to give to the priest. [1:24]

**What did Hannah take with her, along with her son, to the house of Yahweh to give to Eli the priest?**

Hannah took a sacrifice of a three year old bull, one ephah of meal, and a bottle of wine to give to the priest. [1:25]

**What did Hannah give Yahweh?**

Hannah gave her son to Yahweh for as long as he would live. [1:26]

**What did Hannah give Yahweh?**

Hannah gave her son to Yahweh for as long as he would live. [1:27]

**What did Hannah give Yahweh?**

Hannah gave her son to Yahweh for as long as he would live. [1:28]

## 1 Samuel 2

### **Why did Hannah speak boldly over her enemies?**

Hannah spoke boldly because she rejoices in Yahweh's salvation. [2:1]

### **Why does Hannah say that we should not boast or speak arrogantly?**

We should not boast or speak arrogantly because Yahweh is a God of knowledge and by him all actions are weighed. [2:3]

### **In Hannah's song, who is the one who is filled with sorrow?**

The woman who has many children is filled with sorrow. [2:5]

### **Who decides death and life, if one goes down to Sheol or is raised up?**

Yahweh is the one who decides death and life, and Sheol or raised up. [2:6]

### **Who makes the poor and the rich?**

Yahweh makes the poor, and he makes the rich. [2:7]

### **Who raises up the poor and lifts the needy to sit in the seat of honor?**

Yahweh raises them up to sit at the seat of honor. [2:8]

### **Who does Hannah say will guard the feet of his faithful people and silence the wicked in darkness?**

Yahweh will guard their feet and silence the wicked. [2:9]

### **Who judges the ends of the earth and gives strength to his king?**

Yahweh judges the ends of the earth and gives strength to his king. [2:10]

### **What child served Yahweh in the presence of Eli the priest?**

Samuel served Yahweh in the presence of Eli the priest. [2:11]

**Whose sons were evil men?**

Eli the priest's sons were evil men. [2:12]

**What was the custom of the priests with the people at the time of sacrifice?**

Their custom was for the priests' servant come with a three pronged fork to get the meat for the priest to take for himself. [2:13]

**What was the custom of the priests with the people at the time of sacrifice?**

Their custom was for the priests' servant come with a three pronged fork to get the meat for the priest to take for himself. [2:14]

**What evil thing did the priest's sons instruct their servants?**

Instead of eating the boiled meat, Eli's sons instructed their servants tell the people they only ate raw meat. [2:15]

**What evil thing did the priest's sons instruct their servants?**

Instead of eating the boiled meat, Eli's sons instructed their servants tell the people they only ate raw meat. [2:16]

**Why was the sin of Eli's sons so great?**

Their sin was great before Yahweh because they despised Yahweh's offering. [2:17]

**What would Samuel's mother make for him form year to year to cloth him?**

She world make him a linen ephod robe. [2:18]

**What would Samuel's mother make for him form year to year to cloth him?**

She world make him a linen ephod robe. [2:19]

**How would Eli bless Elkanah and his wife?**

Eli blessed Elkanah and his wife by praying for them to have more children by Hannah. [2:20]



**What was Yahweh's response to Eli's prayer for Samuel's parents to have more children?**

Yahweh once more helped Hannah and she bore three more sons and two daughters. [2:21]

**What did Eli say to his sons as he was getting very old?**

Eli told his sons that they were doing evil things and they caused Yahweh's people to disobey. [2:23]

**What did Eli say to his sons as he was getting very old?**

Eli told his sons that they were doing evil things and they caused Yahweh's people to disobey. [2:24]

**Why did Eli's sons not listen to his voice?**

Eli's sons did not listen to his voice because Yahweh intended to kill them. [2:25]

**Who grew up and increased in favor with Yahweh and also with men?**

Samuel grew up and increased in favor with Yahweh and with men. [2:26]

**Who told Eli that Yahweh chose Eli's ancestors out of all the tribes of Israel to be Yahweh's priest?**

A man of God told Eli that Yahweh chose Eli's ancestors. [2:27]

**Who told Eli that Yahweh chose Eli's ancestors out of all the tribes of Israel to be Yahweh's priest?**

A man of God told Eli that Yahweh chose Eli's ancestors. [2:28]

**How had Eli scorned Yahweh's sacrifices and offerings?**

He scorned the sacrifices and offerings by honoring his sons above Yahweh. [2:29]

**What did Yahweh tell Eli would happen to the men in his family?**

Yahweh told Eli that all the men born in Eli's family would die. [2:33]

**What did Yahweh say would be a sign that all the men in Eli's family would die?**

Both of Eli's sons would die on the same day. [2:34]

**Who will walk before Yahweh's anointed king forever?**

A faithful priest who Yahweh raises up will walk before Yahweh's anointed king forever. [2:35]

**Why will everyone in Eli's family come and bow down to the faithful priest?**

They will ask him for a position as a priest so that they can have food to eat. [2:35]

## 1 Samuel 3

**What was Samuel's reply when he heard Yahweh call to him as he was lying down in his bed?**

Samuel replied, "Here I am." [3:2]

**What was Samuel's reply when he heard Yahweh call to him as he was lying down in his bed?**

Samuel replied, "Here I am." [3:3]

**What was Samuel's reply when he heard Yahweh call to him as he was lying down in his bed?**

Samuel replied, "Here I am." [3:4]

**What did Eli tell Samuel to do when Samuel ran to him?**

Eli said that he did not call Samuel, and told him to go lie down again. [3:5]

**What had never been revealed to Samuel?**

A message from Yahweh had never been revealed to Samuel. [3:7]

**What did Eli realize after the third time that Samuel came to him?**

Eli realized that Yahweh had called the boy. [3:8]

**What did Eli tell Samuel to say if Yahweh called him again?**

Eli told Samuel to say, "Speak, for your servant is listening." [3:9]

**What did Yahweh say would happen to the ears of everyone when they heard what Yahweh was going to do?**

Yahweh said the ears of everyone that hears what he is about to do will shake. [3:11]

**What did Eli's sons bring upon themselves?**

Eli's sons brought a curse upon themselves.. [3:13]

**What would never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering?**

The sins of Eli's house would never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering. [3:14]

**What was Samuel afraid to do in the morning after he opened the doors of the house of Yahweh?**

He was afraid to tell Eli about the vision from Yahweh. [3:15]

**What did Samuel do after Eli told him that he must not hide from him the words that Yahweh had spoken?**

Samuel told him everything and hid nothing from Eli. [3:17]

**What did all Israel from Dan to Beersheba know about Samuel?**

All Israel knew that Samuel was appointed to be a prophet of Yahweh. [3:20]

## 1 Samuel 4

**What was the result of the battle between Israel and the Philistines?**

Israel was defeated by the Philistines. [4:1]

**What was the result of the battle between Israel and the Philistines?**

Israel was defeated by the Philistines. [4:2]

**What did the elders of Israel decide to do so that they could be kept safe from the power of their enemies?**

The elders decided that they should bring the ark of the testimony of Yahweh to be with them. [4:3]

**Who was with the ark of the testimony of Yahweh of hosts?**

The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas were there with the ark. [4:4]

**What did the Philistines wonder when they heard the great shout of all the people of Israel?**

The Philistines wondered what the loud shouting in the camp of the Hebrews meant. [4:5]

**What did the Philistines wonder when they heard the great shout of all the people of Israel?**

The Philistines wondered what the loud shouting in the camp of the Hebrews meant. [4:6]

**Who did the Philistines say had come into the camp of the Hebrews?**

The Philistines said that God had come into the camp of the Hebrews. [4:7]

**With what did the Philistines say that God had attacked the Egyptians in the wilderness?**

They said that God had attacked the Egyptians with many different kinds of plagues. [4:8]

**What happened to the two sons of Eli when the Philistines fought and defeated Israel?**

The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, died. [4:10]

**What happened to the two sons of Eli when the Philistines fought and defeated Israel?**

The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, died. [4:11]

**What did the whole city do when the man from the battle line entered the city and told the news?**

When the man told the news, the whole city cried out. [4:12]

**What did the whole city do when the man from the battle line entered the city and told the news?**

When the man told the news, the whole city cried out. [4:13]

**What question did Eli ask when he heard the noise of the outcry of the city?**

Eli asked what was the meaning of the uproar. [4:14]

**What did the man tell Eli had happened to his sons and to the ark of God when Israel was defeated by the Philistines?**

The man told Eli that this two sons were dead and the ark of God had been taken. [4:16]

**What did the man tell Eli had happened to his sons and to the ark of God when Israel was defeated by the Philistines?**

The man told Eli that this two sons were dead and the ark of God had been taken. [4:17]

**What was the injury that took Eli's life when he fell over backward from his seat by the side of the gate?**

Eli's neck was broken and he died. [4:18]

**What happened when Phinehas' pregnant wife heard that the ark was captured and her father-in-law and husband were dead?**

Phinehas' wife knelt down and gave birth, but her labor pains overwhelmed her. [4:19]

**What name did Phinehas' wife give to the baby and why did she give him that name?**

She named the baby Ichabod because the glory had gone away from Israel. [4:21]

**What name did Phinehas' wife give to the baby and why did she give him that name?**

She named the baby Ichabod because the glory had gone away from Israel. [4:22]

## 1 Samuel 5

**In what position did the people find the idol Dagon the next day after the Philistines brought the ark of God into the house of Dagon?**

Dagon was found fallen face down on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. [5:1]

**In what position did the people find the idol Dagon the next day after the Philistines brought the ark of God into the house of Dagon?**

Dagon was found fallen face down on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. [5:2]

**In what position did the people find the idol Dagon the next day after the Philistines brought the ark of God into the house of Dagon?**

Dagon was found fallen face down on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. [5:3]

**What remained of the idol Dagon the next morning after they had set him back in his place before the ark?**

Only the trunk of Dagon remained and his head and hands were lying cut off in the doorway. [5:4]

**Why did the men of Ashdod say that the ark should not stay with them?**

The hand of the God of Israel was hard against them and against Dagon their god. [5:6]

**Why did the men of Ashdod say that the ark should not stay with them?**

The hand of the God of Israel was hard against them and against Dagon their god. [5:7]

**To what place did the Philistines move the ark of the God of Israel?**

The Philistines moved the ark to Gath. [5:8]

**With what did Yahweh afflict the men of the city of Gath?**

Yahweh afflicted them with tumors. [5:9]

**What did the people of Ekron say that the God of Israel would do to them because the ark was sent to their city?**

They said that the God of Israel would kill them and their people. [5:10]



**To what place did the people of Ekron request the rulers to send the ark?**

They requested that the ark be sent to its own place. [5:11]

**To what place did the cry of the men of the city go?**

The cry of the men of the city went up to the heavens. [5:12]

## 1 Samuel 6

**For what period of time was the ark of Yahweh in the Philistine's country?**

The ark was in the country of the Philistines for seven months. [6:1]

**Who did the Philistines call to ask advice on how the ark of Yahweh should be sent back to its own country?**

They called for the priests and the diviners to tell them how to send the ark back to its own country. [6:2]

**What did the priests and diviners tell the Philistine people to send as a gift to the God of Israel as a guilt offering?**

They told the Philistines to send five golden tumors and five golden mice. [6:3]

**What did the priests and diviners tell the Philistine people to send as a gift to the God of Israel as a guilt offering?**

They told the Philistines to send five golden tumors and five golden mice. [6:4]

**Why did the priests and diviners say God had dealt severely with the Egyptians and Pharaoh?**

God had dealt severely with the Egyptians and Pharaoh because they had hardened their hearts. [6:6]

**What animals did the priests and diviners tell the Philistines to tie to the cart on which they were to place the ark of Yahweh?**

They told the Philistines to tie two nursing cows to the cart. [6:7]

**How would the Philistines know that it was Yahweh who had executed the great disaster on them?**

The Philistines would know it if the cows pulling the cart went on their own to Beth Shemesh. [6:9]

**Where did the nursing cows go with the cart carrying the ark and the box containing the golden mice and castings of tumors?**

The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh. [6:10]

**Where did the nursing cows go with the cart carrying the ark and the box containing the golden mice and castings of tumors?**

The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh. [6:11]

**Where did the nursing cows go with the cart carrying the ark and the box containing the golden mice and castings of tumors?**

The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh. [6:12]

**What were the people of Beth Shemesh doing when they lifted up their eyes and saw the ark?**

They were harvesting their wheat in the valley. [6:13]

**What did the people of Beth Shemesh do with the cows that had pulled the cart?**

They offered the cows as a burnt offering to Yahweh. [6:14]

**Who took down the ark of Yahweh and the box that was with it?**

The Levites took down the ark of Yahweh and the box that was with it. [6:15]

**What did the five rulers of the Philistines do when they saw what the men of Beth Shemesh had done?**

They returned that day to Ekron. [6:16]

**What was the significance of the number of five golden tumors and the number of five golden mice?**

The number of the golden tumors and the golden mice were the same as the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five rulers. [6:17]

**What was the significance of the number of five golden tumors and the number of five golden mice?**

The number of the golden tumors and the golden mice were the same as the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five rulers. [6:18]

**Why did Yahweh kill seventy of the men of Beth Shemesh?**

Yahweh killed them because they had looked into his ark. [6:19]

**What did the messengers ask the inhabitants of Kiriath Jearim to do about the ark that the Philistines had brought back?**

The messengers asked the inhabitants of Kiriath Jearim to come down and take the ark back with them. [6:21]

## 1 Samuel 7

**What did the men of Kiriath Jearim do to Abinadab's son Eleazar so that he could keep the ark of Yahweh?**

They consecrated him to keep the ark of Yahweh. [7:1]

**What did all the house of Israel do during the twenty years that the ark remained in Kiriath Jearim?**

They lamented during that time and wished to turn to Yahweh. [7:2]

**What did the people of Israel need to remove from among them in order for Yahweh to rescue them from the hand of the Philistines?**

They needed to remove the foreign gods and Ashtaroth from among them and worship Yahweh only. [7:3]

**What did the people of Israel need to remove from among them in order for Yahweh to rescue them from the hand of the Philistines?**

They needed to remove the foreign gods and Ashtaroth from among them and worship Yahweh only. [7:4]

**What did the people of Israel admit that they had done when they gathered together at Mitzpah and poured water out before Yahweh?**

They admitted that they had sinned against Yahweh. [7:5]

**What did the people of Israel admit that they had done when they gathered together at Mitzpah and poured water out before Yahweh?**

They admitted that they had sinned against Yahweh. [7:6]

**What did the people of Israel hear about the Philistines that made them afraid and made them ask Samuel to call out to Yahweh for them?**

They heard that the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel. [7:7]

**What did the people of Israel hear about the Philistines that made them afraid and made them ask Samuel to call out to Yahweh for them?**

They heard that the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel. [7:8]

**What did Yahweh do when Samuel took a nursing lamb, offered it as a whole burnt offering to Yahweh and cried out to Yahweh?**

He answered Samuel. [7:9]

**What was it that Yahweh did that threw the Philistines into confusion as they drew near to attack Israel?**

Yahweh thundered with a loud sound that day against the Philistines. [7:10]

**What did Samuel set up between Mizpah and Shen as a remembrance that Yahweh had helped them?**

Samuel took a stone and set it up. [7:12]

**What happened to the towns that the Philistines had taken from Israel?**

They were restored to Israel. [7:14]

**What did Samuel do as he went on a circuit to Bethel, Gilgal, Mizpah and back to Ramathaim?**

Samuel decided disputes for Israel in all these places. [7:15]

**What did Samuel do as he went on a circuit to Bethel, Gilgal, Mizpah and back to Ramathaim?**

Samuel decided disputes for Israel in all these places. [7:16]

**What did Samuel do as he went on a circuit to Bethel, Gilgal, Mizpah and back to Ramathaim?**

Samuel decided disputes for Israel in all these places. [7:17]

**1 Samuel 8**

**In what ways did the two sons of Samuel, who were judges, not walk in the ways of their father?**

They chased after dishonest gain, taking bribes and perverting justice. [8:1]

**In what ways did the two sons of Samuel, who were judges, not walk in the ways of their father?**

They chased after dishonest gain, taking bribes and perverting justice. [8:2]

**In what ways did the two sons of Samuel, who were judges, not walk in the ways of their father?**

They chased after dishonest gain, taking bribes and perverting justice. [8:3]

**What the request did the elders of Israel make of Samuel?**

They asked Samuel to appoint for them a king to judge them like all the nations, since he was old and his sons did not walk in his ways. [8:4]

**What the request did the elders of Israel make of Samuel?**

They asked Samuel to appoint for them a king to judge them like all the nations, since he was old and his sons did not walk in his ways. [8:5]

**What did Samuel do when he was displeased by the request from the elders of Israel to give them a king?**

Samuel prayed to Yahweh. [8:6]

**Why did Yahweh tell Samuel to obey the voice of the people in everything they would say to him?**

Yahweh told Samuel to obey their voice because they were not rejecting Samuel, but they were rejected Yahweh from being king over them. [8:7]

**What was the warning which Yahweh told Samuel to give to the people of Israel?**

Yahweh told Samuel to solemnly warn the people of Israel about the way in which the king would rule over them. [8:8]

**What was the warning which Yahweh told Samuel to give to the people of Israel?**

Yahweh told Samuel to solemnly warn the people of Israel about the way in which the king would rule over them. [8:9]

**What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about the way in which the king would take their sons from them?**

Samuel warned the people that the king would take their sons to be horsemen and soldiers, make them plow the ground and reap the harvest, and use others to make weapons and implements of war. [8:10]

**What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about the way in which the king would take their sons from them?**

Samuel warned the people that the king would take their sons to be horsemen and soldiers, make them plow the ground and reap the harvest, and use others to make weapons and implements of war. [8:11]

**What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about the way in which the king would take their sons from them?**

Samuel warned the people that the king would take their sons to be horsemen and soldiers, make them plow the ground and reap the harvest, and use others to make weapons and implements of war. [8:12]

**What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their daughters?**

Samuel warned them that the king would take their daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers. [8:13]

**What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their daughters?**

Samuel warned them that the king would take their daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers. [8:14]



**What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their daughters?**

Samuel warned them that the king would take their daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers. [8:15]

**What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their servants, young men, and animals?**

Samuel warned them that the king would take their servants, the best of their young men and donkeys, a tenth of their flocks, and make them slaves. [8:16]

**What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their servants, young men, and animals?**

Samuel warned them that the king would take their servants, the best of their young men and donkeys, a tenth of their flocks, and make them slaves. [8:17]

**What did Samuel warn the people of Israel would happen when they would cry out because of the king which they had chosen for themselves?**

Samuel said that when they would cry out to Yahweh, Yahweh would not answer them. [8:18]

**How did the people of Israel respond to the warnings from Samuel?**

The people insisted that they still wanted a king over them so they could be like the other nations and have a king to judge them and fight their battles. [8:19]

**How did the people of Israel respond to the warnings from Samuel?**

The people insisted that they still wanted a king over them so they could be like the other nations and have a king to judge them and fight their battles. [8:20]

**What was the response of Yahweh when Samuel repeated the words of the people into his ears?**

Yahweh still told Samuel to obey the voice of the people and give them a king. [8:21]

**What was the response of Yahweh when Samuel repeated the words of the people into his ears?**

Yahweh still told Samuel to obey the voice of the people and give them a king. [8:22]

## 1 Samuel 9

### **What were the outstanding physical features of Saul, the son of Kish?**

Saul was a handsome young man who was taller from his shoulders upward than any of the other people. [9:1]

### **What were the outstanding physical features of Saul, the son of Kish?**

Saul was a handsome young man who was taller from his shoulders upward than any of the other people. [9:2]

### **What was the outcome when Kish asked his son Saul to go and look for their lost donkeys?**

Saul took one of the servants and passed through many places without finding the lost donkeys. [9:3]

### **What was the outcome when Kish asked his son Saul to go and look for their lost donkeys?**

Saul took one of the servants and passed through many places without finding the lost donkeys. [9:4]

### **What did Saul tell his servant they should do when they came to the land of Zuph?**

Saul told his servant that they should go back or his father would worry more about them than the donkeys. [9:5]

### **What different idea did the servant present to Saul?**

The servant told Saul that they should seek after a man of God in the city who might be able to tell them where they should go on their journey. [9:6]

### **What did the servant have in his possession to give to the man of God so he would tell them which way to go?**

The servant had with him a fourth of a shekel of silver to give to the man of God. [9:7]

### **What did the servant have in his possession to give to the man of God so he would tell them which way to go?**

The servant had with him a fourth of a shekel of silver to give to the man of God. [9:8]

**What did Saul and his servant inquire of the young women who were coming out to draw water?**

Saul and his servant asked if the seer was in the city so they could seek the knowledge of God's will. [9:9]

**What did Saul and his servant inquire of the young women who were coming out to draw water?**

Saul and his servant asked if the seer was in the city so they could seek the knowledge of God's will. [9:10]

**What did Saul and his servant inquire of the young women who were coming out to draw water?**

Saul and his servant asked if the seer was in the city so they could seek the knowledge of God's will. [9:11]

**Why was the seer coming to the city on that day?**

The seer was coming to the city on that day because the people were sacrificing at the high place and the seer would bless the sacrifice. [9:12]

**Why was the seer coming to the city on that day?**

The seer was coming to the city on that day because the people were sacrificing at the high place and the seer would bless the sacrifice. [9:13]

**What did Yahweh reveal to Samuel about Saul's role in Israel?**

Yahweh told Samuel that he would be anointed prince over Israel and he would save Yahweh's people from the hand of the Philistines. [9:15]

**What did Yahweh reveal to Samuel about Saul's role in Israel?**

Yahweh told Samuel that he would be anointed prince over Israel and he would save Yahweh's people from the hand of the Philistines. [9:16]

**What invitation did Samuel give to Saul after he revealed that he was the seer Saul was seeking?**

Samuel invited Saul to go up and eat with him at the high place. [9:17]

**What invitation did Samuel give to Saul after he revealed that he was the seer Saul was seeking?**

Samuel invited Saul to go up and eat with him at the high place. [9:18]

**What invitation did Samuel give to Saul after he revealed that he was the seer Saul was seeking?**

Samuel invited Saul to go up and eat with him at the high place. [9:19]

**How did Samuel surprise Saul by what he told him?**

Even though Saul was from a clan which was the least of the tribe of Benjamin, all the desires of Israel were on him and his father's house. [9:20]

**How did Samuel surprise Saul by what he told him?**

Even though Saul was from a clan which was the least of the tribe of Benjamin, all the desires of Israel were on him and his father's house. [9:21]

**What did Samuel tell Saul about the thigh that had been raised in sacrifice?**

He told Saul that it had been kept until the appointed time for him. [9:23]

**What did Samuel tell Saul about the thigh that had been raised in sacrifice?**

He told Saul that it had been kept until the appointed time for him. [9:24]

**What did Samuel say to Saul after they had come down from the high place into the city?**

Samuel told Saul to get up so he could send him on his way. [9:25]

**What did Samuel say to Saul after they had come down from the high place into the city?**

Samuel told Saul to get up so he could send him on his way. [9:26]

**Why did Samuel tell Saul he must stay on the outskirts of the city for awhile?**

Samuel told Saul to stay so Samuel could announce the message of God to him. [9:27]

## 1 Samuel 10

### Why did Samuel pour a flask of oil on Saul's head and kiss him?

He poured oil on Saul's head because Yahweh had anointed him to be a ruler over his inheritance. [10:1]

### What future event did Samuel share with Saul?

Samuel told Saul that he would find two men near Rachel's tomb who would tell him that the donkeys had been found. [10:2]

### What did Samuel tell Saul would happen when he would come to the oak of Tabor?

Three men would meet him carrying three young goats, three loaves of bread, and a skin of wine and they would give him two loaves of bread, which he should take. [10:3]

### What did Samuel tell Saul would happen when he would come to the oak of Tabor?

Three men would meet him carrying three young goats, three loaves of bread, and a skin of wine and they would give him two loaves of bread, which he should take. [10:4]

### What did Samuel tell Saul would happen when he came to the garrison of the Philistines?

The spirit of Yahweh would rush upon him so that he would be changed into a different man and he would prophesy with a group of prophets from the city. [10:5]

### What did Samuel tell Saul would happen when he came to the garrison of the Philistines?

The spirit of Yahweh would rush upon him so that he would be changed into a different man and he would prophesy with a group of prophets from the city. [10:6]

### What instructions did Samuel give to Saul?

Samuel told Saul to go down to Gilgal and Samuel would come to sacrifice burnt offerings and peace offerings. [10:7]

### What instructions did Samuel give to Saul?

Samuel told Saul to go down to Gilgal and Samuel would come to sacrifice burnt offerings and peace offerings. [10:8]

**What happened when Saul turned his back to leave Samuel?**

When Saul turned to leave, God gave him another heart. [10:9]

**Why did people wonder if Saul was one of the prophets?**

The people wondered if he was now one of the prophets because they saw him prophesying with one of the prophets. [10:11]

**Why did people wonder if Saul was one of the prophets?**

The people wondered if he was now one of the prophets because they saw him prophesying with one of the prophets. [10:12]

**Why did people wonder if Saul was one of the prophets?**

The people wondered if he was now one of the prophets because they saw him prophesying with one of the prophets. [10:13]

**What did Saul tell his uncle when he was asked where he had gone?**

Saul told his uncle that when he and his servant could not find the donkeys, they went to see Samuel. [10:14]

**What did Saul not tell his uncle about what Samuel said to him?**

Samuel did not tell his uncle about the matter of the kingdom. [10:15]

**What did Saul not tell his uncle about what Samuel said to him?**

Samuel did not tell his uncle about the matter of the kingdom. [10:16]

**Why did Yahweh say that Israel had rejected him?**

Israel had rejected Yahweh because they had demanded that he set a king over them. [10:17]

**Why did Yahweh say that Israel had rejected him?**

Israel had rejected Yahweh because they had demanded that he set a king over them. [10:18]

**Why did Yahweh say that Israel had rejected him?**

Israel had rejected Yahweh because they had demanded that he set a king over them. [10:19]

**What happened when Saul was chosen as the next king?**

They looked for Saul, but he could not be found. [10:20]

**What happened when Saul was chosen as the next king?**

They looked for Saul, but he could not be found. [10:21]

**Why couldn't they find Saul when he was chosen as the next king?**

Saul had hidden himself among the baggage. [10:22]

**How did Samuel feel about the man whom Yahweh had chosen?**

Samuel said that there was no one like Saul among all the people. [10:24]

**How were the customs and rules of kingship established and preserved?**

Samuel told the people the customs and rules of kingship, wrote them down in a book, and placed it before Yahweh. [10:25]

**How did some worthless men show their dislike for Saul?**

Some worthless men despised Saul by not bringing him any gifts and questioning how he could save them. [10:27]

## 1 Samuel 11

**What was the response of Nahash the Ammonite to the request for a treaty from the men of Jabesh?**

He said he would make a treaty with them if he could bring disgrace on all Israel by gouging out all their right eyes. [11:1]

**What was the response of Nahash the Ammonite to the request for a treaty from the men of Jabesh?**

He said he would make a treaty with them if he could bring disgrace on all Israel by gouging out all their right eyes. [11:2]

**How did the elders of Jabesh respond to Nahash's proposal?**

They asked to be left alone for seven days to see if there was anyone in all the territory of Israel who would save them. [11:3]

**Why did Saul wonder what was wrong with the people in his town of Gibeah?**

Saul heard them crying after they had heard what might happen to the town of Jabesh. [11:4]

**Why did Saul wonder what was wrong with the people in his town of Gibeah?**

Saul heard them crying after they had heard what might happen to the town of Jabesh. [11:5]

**How did Saul respond to the threat against Jabesh?**

He became very angry and rallied all the men of Israel to follow him and fight against the enemies of Jabesh. [11:6]

**How did Saul respond to the threat against Jabesh?**

He became very angry and rallied all the men of Israel to follow him and fight against the enemies of Jabesh. [11:7]

**How did Saul respond to the threat against Jabesh?**

He became very angry and rallied all the men of Israel to follow him and fight against the enemies of Jabesh. [11:8]



**What did the messengers tell the men of Jabesh?**

They told the men of Jabesh that they would be rescued on the next day by the time the sun was hot. [11:9]

**What did the men of Jabesh say to deceive Nahash?**

They told Nahash that they would surrender to him the next day and he could do to them whatever he wanted. [11:10]

**What was the outcome of the battle between the people of Israel and Nahash the Ammonite?**

The people of Israel attacked and defeated the Ammonites and those who survived were scattered. [11:11]

**Why did Saul say that none of his opposition would be put to death?**

Saul said no one would be put to death because Yahweh had rescued Israel. [11:12]

**Why did Saul say that none of his opposition would be put to death?**

Saul said no one would be put to death because Yahweh had rescued Israel. [11:13]

**Why did Samuel, Saul and all the people of Israel go to Gilgal?**

They went to Gilgal to sacrifice peace offerings and to renew the monarchy by making Saul king before Yahweh. [11:14]

**Why did Samuel, Saul and all the people of Israel go to Gilgal?**

They went to Gilgal to sacrifice peace offerings and to renew the monarchy by making Saul king before Yahweh. [11:15]

## 1 Samuel 12

### **Had Samuel every done anything evil against the people of Israel?**

The people of Israel told Samuel he had not cheated or oppressed them or stolen anything from them. [12:4]

### **Had Samuel every done anything evil against the people of Israel?**

The people of Israel told Samuel he had not cheated or oppressed them or stolen anything from them. [12:5]

### **Why did Samuel tell the people of Israel to present themselves before Yahweh?**

He told the people of Israel to present themselves so he could remind them of all the righteous deeds of Yahweh in the past. [12:6]

### **Why did Samuel tell the people of Israel to present themselves before Yahweh?**

He told the people of Israel to present themselves so he could remind them of all the righteous deeds of Yahweh in the past. [12:7]

### **What did God do to the ancestors of the people of Israel after they forgot Yahweh their God after Moses and Aaron brought them up out of Egypt?**

Yahweh sold them into the hand of Sisera, into the hand of the Philistines and into the hand of the king of Moab. [12:8]

### **What did God do to the ancestors of the people of Israel after they forgot Yahweh their God after Moses and Aaron brought them up out of Egypt?**

Yahweh sold them into the hand of Sisera, into the hand of the Philistines and into the hand of the king of Moab. [12:9]

### **What did Yahweh do after Israel's ancestors cried out to Yahweh and asked him to rescue them from the hand of their enemies?**

Yahweh sent Jerub Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel to rescue them from their enemies. [12:10]

**What did Yahweh do after Israel's ancestors cried out to Yahweh and asked him to rescue them from the hand of their enemies?**

Yahweh sent Jerub Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel to rescue them from their enemies. [12:11]

**What truth did Samuel want the people of Israel to remember?**

Samuel reminded the people of Israel that they had wanted a king to reign over them. [12:12]

**What truth did Samuel want the people of Israel to remember?**

Samuel reminded the people of Israel that they had wanted a king to reign over them. [12:13]

**What choice did Samuel bring before the people of Israel?**

They could obey the command of Yahweh and be followers of Yahweh, or they could rebel against Yahweh's commands and experience his hand against them. [12:14]

**What choice did Samuel bring before the people of Israel?**

They could obey the command of Yahweh and be followers of Yahweh, or they could rebel against Yahweh's commands and experience his hand against them. [12:15]

**What challenge did Samuel lay before the people of Israel?**

Samuel challenged the people to present themselves before Yahweh and see the great thing he would do before their eyes. [12:16]

**What did Samuel ask Yahweh to send so that the people of Israel would know the extent of their wickedness?**

He asked Yahweh to send thunder and rain. [12:17]

**What did Samuel ask Yahweh to send so that the people of Israel would know the extent of their wickedness?**

He asked Yahweh to send thunder and rain. [12:18]

**How did Samuel respond when the people of Israel realized the serious nature of their sin?**

Samuel told the people to not be afraid, but to serve Yahweh with all their heart. [12:19]

**How did Samuel respond when the people of Israel realized the serious nature of their sin?**

Samuel told the people to not be afraid, but to serve Yahweh with all their heart. [12:20]

**What message of comfort did Samuel give to the people of Israel?**

Samuel comforted the people of Israel by telling them that Yahweh would not reject them. [12:22]

**What did Samuel decide to do for Israel?**

He decided teach the people the way that was good and right, and not to cease to pray for them. [12:23]

**What challenge did Samuel give to the people of Israel?**

Samuel told them to consider the great things Yahweh had done for them so they would fear him and serve him in truth with all their heart. [12:24]

## 1 Samuel 13

**What did Saul do with the soldiers he did not choose to be with him?**

Saul sent the rest of the soldiers home to their own tents. [13:2]

**Why did Israel become a rotten smell to the Philistines?**

They became a rotten smell because Saul had defeated the garrison of the Philistines. [13:3]

**Why did Israel become a rotten smell to the Philistines?**

They became a rotten smell because Saul had defeated the garrison of the Philistines. [13:4]

**How did the Philistines respond to the the defeat by the people of Israel?**

They gathered numerous chariots and men to fight against Israel. [13:5]

**How did the people of Israel react to the forces of the Philistines?**

They were distressed so they hid in caves, in the underbrush, in rocks, in wells, and in pits, and some fled over the Jordan. [13:6]

**How did the people of Israel react to the forces of the Philistines?**

They were distressed so they hid in caves, in the underbrush, in rocks, in wells, and in pits, and some fled over the Jordan. [13:7]

**What did Saul do when Samuel failed to come to Gilgal in seven days?**

Saul offered the burnt offering and the peace offerings himself. [13:8]

**What did Saul do when Samuel failed to come to Gilgal in seven days?**

Saul offered the burnt offering and the peace offerings himself. [13:9]

**What did Saul do when Samuel failed to come to Gilgal in seven days?**

Saul offered the burnt offering and the peace offerings himself. [13:10]

**What excuse did Saul give Samuel for not waiting for him to offer the sacrifices?**

He said he saw the people leaving, so he forced himself to offer the burnt offering to Yahweh. [13:11]

**What excuse did Saul give Samuel for not waiting for him to offer the sacrifices?**

He said he saw the people leaving, so he forced himself to offer the burnt offering to Yahweh. [13:12]

**What did Samuel say to rebuke Saul?**

Samuel said Saul had acted foolishly for not keeping the command that Yahweh gave him. [13:13]

**What did Samuel say would be the consequences for Saul's actions?**

Because Saul did not obey Yahweh's command, his rule over Israel would not continue forever, but instead Yahweh had appointed a man after his own heart to be prince over his people. [13:13]

**What did Samuel say would be the consequences for Saul's actions?**

Because Saul did not obey Yahweh's command, his rule over Israel would not continue forever, but instead Yahweh had appointed a man after his own heart to be prince over his people. [13:14]

**What strategy did the Philistines use against the people of Israel?**

The Philistines sent raiders from their camp to three different areas in Israel. [13:17]

**What limitations did the soldiers of Israel face in their fight against the Philistines?**

The Philistines did not allow the Israelites to have any blacksmiths who could make swords or spears. [13:19]

**How were the soldiers of Israel hindered in their fight against the Philistines?**

The soldiers of Israel did not have any swords or spears in their hands. [13:22]

## 1 Samuel 14

**What secret did Jonathan, the son of Saul, keep from his father?**

Jonathan and his armor bearer were going to the Philistines' garrison on the other side of the pass. [14:1]

**What was unknown to the six hundred men who were with Saul?**

They did not know that Jonathan had gone over to the Philistines' garrison. [14:2]

**What was unknown to the six hundred men who were with Saul?**

They did not know that Jonathan had gone over to the Philistines' garrison. [14:3]

**What proposal did Jonathan present to his young armor bearer?**

Jonathan told him that Yahweh would work on their behalf to save many people if they would cross over to the garrison of the Philistines. [14:6]

**What was the armor bearer's response to the proposal?**

Jonathan's armor bearer was ready to obey all his commands, so he encouraged him to do everything that was in his heart. [14:7]

**What would be the sign to Jonathan and his armor bearer that Yahweh had given the Philistines into their hand?**

If the Philistines said that they should come over to them, this would be the sign that Yahweh had given them into their hand. [14:8]

**What would be the sign to Jonathan and his armor bearer that Yahweh had given the Philistines into their hand?**

If the Philistines said that they should come over to them, this would be the sign that Yahweh had given them into their hand. [14:9]

**What would be the sign to Jonathan and his armor bearer that Yahweh had given the Philistines into their hand?**

If the Philistines said that they should come over to them, this would be the sign that Yahweh had given them into their hand. [14:10]

**What did Jonathan say to his armor bearer after the men of the Philistines' garrison had told them, "Come up to us and we will show you something"?**

He told his armor bearer to follow him because Yahweh had given them into the hand of Israel. [14:11]

**What did Jonathan say to his armor bearer after the men of the Philistines' garrison had told them, "Come up to us and we will show you something"?**

He told his armor bearer to follow him because Yahweh had given them into the hand of Israel. [14:12]

**What was the result of the attack that Jonathan and his armor bearer made on the Philistines' garrison?**

Jonathan and his armor bearer put to death about twenty men. [14:13]

**What was the result of the attack that Jonathan and his armor bearer made on the Philistines' garrison?**

Jonathan and his armor bearer put to death about twenty men. [14:14]

**What did Saul do when his watchmen in Gibeah of Benjamin saw the crowd of Philistine soldiers dispersing and going here and there?**

Saul had the people count to see who was missing from them, and they discovered it was Jonathan and his armor bearer. [14:16]

**What did Saul do when his watchmen in Gibeah of Benjamin saw the crowd of Philistine soldiers dispersing and going here and there?**

Saul had the people count to see who was missing from them, and they discovered it was Jonathan and his armor bearer. [14:17]

**Why did Saul command Ahijah the priest to bring the ephod of God to him?**

Saul commanded Ahijah the priest to bring the ephod of God so they could determine the will of God. [14:18]



**Why did Saul command Ahijah the priest to bring the ephod of God to him?**

Saul commanded Ahijah the priest to bring the ephod of God so they could determine the will of God. [14:19]

**Who joined with the Israelites that were with Saul and Jonathan?**

Those Hebrews who had previously been with the Philistines, and who had gone with them into the camp joined the Israelites that were with Saul and Jonathan. [14:21]

**Who saved Israel that day?**

Yahweh saved Israel that day. [14:23]

**What caused the hungry men of Israel to be distressed?**

Saul had put the people under an oath that any man that ate food until evening would be cursed. [14:24]

**What did Jonathan do to unknowingly break the oath?**

Jonathan ate of the honey from the forest. [14:27]

**How was Jonathan critical of the oath his father had made?**

Jonathan said that if the people had been able to freely eat of the honey and from the plunder of their enemies, there would have been a greater slaughter among the Philistines. [14:29]

**How was Jonathan critical of the oath his father had made?**

Jonathan said that if the people had been able to freely eat of the honey and from the plunder of their enemies, there would have been a greater slaughter among the Philistines. [14:30]

**How did the people of Israel sin against Yahweh after their battle against the Philistines?**

The people of Israel ate the blood of the animals they killed from the plunder. [14:33]

**How did the people of Israel sin against Yahweh after their battle against the Philistines?**

The people of Israel ate the blood of the animals they killed from the plunder. [14:34]

**What caused Saul to not chase after the Philistines even though he was eager to do so?**

He did not receive any answers from God that day. [14:37]

**How did Saul say he would deal with this sin in Israel?**

He said that the man who committed this sin would surely die, even if it was Jonathan his son. [14:38]

**How did Saul say he would deal with this sin in Israel?**

He said that the man who committed this sin would surely die, even if it was Jonathan his son. [14:39]

**How was it determined that Jonathan was the person who had sinned?**

It was determined by lots. [14:42]

**How was Jonathan saved from death?**

The people of Israel who would not allow Jonathan to die because he had accomplished a great victory. [14:45]

**How did Saul lead the people of Israel as their king?**

Saul acted with great courage and rescued Israel out of the hands of those who plundered them. [14:47]

**How did Saul lead the people of Israel as their king?**

Saul acted with great courage and rescued Israel out of the hands of those who plundered them. [14:48]

## 1 Samuel 15

**Why did Yahweh want Saul to attack and completely destroy Amalek?**

Amalek opposed Israel on the way when they came up from Egypt. [15:2]

**Why did Yahweh want Saul to attack and completely destroy Amalek?**

Amalek opposed Israel on the way when they came up from Egypt. [15:3]

**Why did Saul tell the Kenites to depart from the Amalekites?**

The Kenites showed kindness to the people of Israel when they came up from Egypt. [15:6]

**Why did Saul tell the Kenites to depart from the Amalekites?**

The Kenites showed kindness to the people of Israel when they came up from Egypt. [15:7]

**How did Saul disobey the directions which Yahweh had given to him?**

Saul spared the life of King Agag as well as the best of the animals of the Amalekites. [15:8]

**How did Saul disobey the directions which Yahweh had given to him?**

Saul spared the life of King Agag as well as the best of the animals of the Amalekites. [15:9]

**Why was Yahweh grieved that he had made Saul king?**

Saul had turned back from following Yahweh's commandments. [15:10]

**Why was Yahweh grieved that he had made Saul king?**

Saul had turned back from following Yahweh's commandments. [15:11]

**What was the lie that Saul told to Samuel?**

He said he had fulfilled the command of Yahweh. [15:12]

**What was the lie that Saul told to Samuel?**

He said he had fulfilled the command of Yahweh. [15:13]

**How did Samuel respond to the lie which Saul had told him?**

Samuel asked about the bleating of sheep and the lowing of oxen he was hearing. [15:14]

**What excuse did Saul give to Samuel to try to explain his disobedience?**

He said the people spared the best of the sheep and oxen so they could sacrifice them to Yahweh. [15:15]

**What did Samuel say to rebuke Saul?**

He told Saul that Yahweh had anointed him king over Israel and told him to completely destroy the Amalekites, but instead he had seized the booty and done evil in the sight of Yahweh. [15:17]

**What did Samuel say to rebuke Saul?**

He told Saul that Yahweh had anointed him king over Israel and told him to completely destroy the Amalekites, but instead he had seized the booty and done evil in the sight of Yahweh. [15:18]

**What did Samuel say to rebuke Saul?**

He told Saul that Yahweh had anointed him king over Israel and told him to completely destroy the Amalekites, but instead he had seized the booty and done evil in the sight of Yahweh. [15:19]

**What was the same excuse that Saul gave to Samuel?**

Saul insisted it was the people who took the best of the booty to sacrifice to Yahweh. [15:20]

**What was the same excuse that Saul gave to Samuel?**

Saul insisted it was the people who took the best of the booty to sacrifice to Yahweh. [15:21]

**What was Samuel's response to Saul?**

Obedience to Yahweh is better than sacrifice and rebellion and stubbornness are sin to Yahweh. [15:22]

**What was Samuel's response to Saul?**

Obedience to Yahweh is better than sacrifice and rebellion and stubbornness are sin to Yahweh. [15:23]

**What was the reason Saul told Samuel he had sinned?**

Saul said he had broken Yahweh's commandment because he was afraid of the people. [15:24]

**What was the declaration which Samuel gave to Saul from Yahweh?**

Yahweh had rejected Saul from being the king of Israel. [15:26]

**Who was Yahweh going to give the kingdom of Israel to?**

Samuel told Saul that Yahweh was going to give the kingdom of Israel to one of Saul's neighbors, one who was better than Saul. [15:28]

**What did Samuel do to finish the task that Saul had not done?**

Samuel used his sword to kill Agag before Yahweh. [15:32]

**What did Samuel do to finish the task that Saul had not done?**

Samuel used his sword to kill Agag before Yahweh. [15:33]

## 1 Samuel 16

**From what did Yahweh tell Samuel he had rejected Saul?**

Yahweh had rejected Saul from being king over Israel. [16:1]

**What did Samuel fear if Saul heard of his travel to Bethlehem?**

He feared that Saul would kill him. [16:2]

**How did Yahweh say that Samuel would know who to anoint?**

He told Samuel that he would anoint the one whom Yahweh told him. [16:3]

**How did the elders of Bethlehem act when Samuel arrived at their city?**

They were trembling as they came to meet him. [16:4]

**What did Samuel say to himself when he looked at Eliab?**

He said to himself that Yahweh's anointed was certainly standing before him. [16:6]

**How did Yahweh explain to Samuel that he does not see as man sees?**

Yahweh said that man looks on the outward appearance, but Yahweh looks on the heart. [16:7]

**What did Samuel say to Jesse after he made seven sons pass before him?**

Samuel said that Yahweh had not chosen any of them. [16:10]

**Where was the youngest son before Samuel called for him?**

The youngest son was tending the sheep. [16:11]

**When did the Spirit of Yahweh rush on David?**

The Spirit of Yahweh rushed on David from that day forward. [16:13]

**What spirit troubled Saul instead of the Spirit of Yahweh?**

A harmful spirit from Yahweh troubled Saul. [16:14]

**What did Saul's servants say that a skillful player could do when the harmful spirit was on Saul?**

The player of the harp would play it and Saul would be well. [16:16]

**How did Saul say which of Jesse's sons he wanted sent to him?**

Saul sent messengers to Jesse, saying to send him Jesse's son David, who was with the sheep. [16:19]

**What assignment did Saul give David since he loved him greatly?**

Saul made David his armor bearer. [16:21]

**What would depart from Saul so he would be refreshed and well, when David played the harp?**

The harmful spirit would depart from Saul. [16:23]

## 1 Samuel 17

**Why had Saul and the men of Israel encamped in the valley of Elah?**

They encamped in the valley of Elah to draw up their battle line to meet the Philistines. [17:2]

**What was on Goliath's head?**

He had a helmet of bronze on his head. [17:5]

**What did Goliath carry between his shoulders?**

He had a javelin of bronze between his shoulders. [17:6]

**Whom did Goliath say the ranks of Israel served?**

Goliath said they were servants of Saul. [17:8]

**What did Goliath say would happen to the ranks of Israel if their man killed him?**

He said the Philistines would be their servants. [17:9]

**When Saul and all Israel heard what the Philistine said, how did they feel?**

They were discouraged and greatly afraid. [17:11]

**Which of Jesse's sons had followed Saul to the battle?**

The three oldest sons of Jesse had followed Saul to the battle. [17:13]

**For how long and how often did the Philistine strong man come near to present himself for battle?**

For forty days he came near morning and evening to present himself for battle. [17:16]

**What was the army doing as David arrived at the camp?**

The army was going out to the battlefield shouting the war cry. [17:20]



**As David talked with his brothers who came out of the ranks of the Philistines?**

The strong man, Goliath, came out of the ranks of the Philistines. [17:23]

**What would the king do for the father's house of the man who killed Goliath?**

The king would give the man great riches and make his father's house free from taxation in Israel. [17:25]

**What did David say the man who killed the Philistine would take away from Israel?**

The man who killed the Philistine would take away the disgrace from Israel. [17:26]

**What did Eliab say was the mischief in David's heart?**

He said that he knew David's pride, and that he came down so that he might see the battle. [17:28]

**What did David tell Saul he would do so no man's heart needed to fail because of the Philistine?**

David told Saul that he would go and fight with the Philistine. [17:32]

**What did David do to the lion or bear that rose up against him?**

He caught him by his beard, struck him, and killed him. [17:35]

**Why did David say this uncircumcised Philistine will be like the lion or the bear he had killed earlier?**

The Philistine had challenged the armies of the living God. [17:36]

**Why was David not able to walk in the armor the king provided?**

He had not trained with it. [17:39]

**Why did the Philistine despise David when he saw him?**

David was only a boy, and ruddy, with a handsome appearance. [17:42]

**When the Philistine came with sword, spear and javelin, in what did David say he came?**

David said that he came in the name of Yahweh of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom the Philistine had defied. [17:45]

**What did David say the earth would know because the dead bodies of the Philistines would be given to the birds and wild beasts?**

All the earth would know that there is a God in Israel. [17:46]

**What did David do when Goliath drew near to meet him?**

David ran quickly toward the enemy to meet him. [17:48]

**What did the Philistines do when they saw that their strong man was dead?**

The Philistines fled. [17:51]

**What did the people of Israel do as they returned from chasing the Philistines?**

The people of Israel plundered the Philistine camp. [17:53]

**What did David have in his hand when Abner brought him before Saul?**

David had the head of the Philistine in his hand. [17:57]

## 1 Samuel 18

**How strongly was the soul of Jonathan bound to the soul of David?**

Jonathan loved David as his own soul. [18:1]

**What did Jonathan take off and give to David with his armor?**

Jonathan took off the robe that he was wearing and gave it to David. [18:4]

**Over whom did Saul set David?**

Saul set him over the men of war. [18:5]

**What had the singers' song ascribed to David, which displeased Saul?**

They ascribed to David ten thousands, but they had ascribed only thousands to Saul. [18:8]

**What did Saul think as he threw the spear at David?**

Saul thought that he would pin David to the wall. [18:11]

**Why did David prosper in all his ways?**

David prospered for Yahweh was with him. [18:14]

**Why did Saul think his hand would not need to be against David?**

Saul thought the hand of the Philistines be against David. [18:17]

**What did Saul think his daughter Michal would be for David if Saul gave her to him?**

Saul thought she could be a trap for David. [18:20]

**Where did Saul command his servants to speak with David about becoming the king's son-in-law?**

He commanded his servants to speak with David in private. [18:22]

**Why did David think he was not worthy to be the king's son-in-law?**

He was a poor man, and lightly esteemed. [18:23]

**What was the only dowry the king desired from David?**

The king desired only one hundred foreskins of the Philistines. [18:25]

**What did David and his men do that exceeded the king's dowry request?**

David killed two hundred Philistines and brought their foreskins. [18:27]

**How great was David's success, so his name was highly regarded?**

David succeeded more than all the servants of Saul. [18:30]

## 1 Samuel 19

**Why did Jonathan tell David to be on his guard and hide himself?**

Saul was seeking to kill David. [19:2]

**What did Jonathan tell Saul that David's deeds brought to him?**

Jonathan told Saul that David's deeds had brought Saul good. [19:4]

**What did Saul swear after listening to Jonathan?**

Saul swore that he would not put David to death. [19:6]

**What happened when David again went out and fought with the Philistines?**

David defeated the Philistines with a great slaughter. [19:8]

**Why did Saul send messengers to David's house to watch him?**

Saul wanted to kill him in the morning. [19:11]

**How did Michal help David to flee and escape?**

Michal let David down through the window. [19:12]

**What did Saul plan to do when he ordered for David to be brought to him in the bed?**

Saul planned to kill him. [19:15]

**What did Michal use at the head of the household idol in the bed to make it look like David?**

She put a pillow of goats' hair at the idol's head. [19:16]

**When David fled and escaped, who did he go to see in Ramah?**

David went to Samuel. [19:18]

**What happened to the messengers of Saul that caused them to prophesy?**

The Spirit of God came on them. [19:20]

**After sending messengers for a third time what did Saul do?**

Saul also went to Ramah. [19:21]

**After sending messengers for a third time what did Saul do?**

Saul also went to Ramah. [19:22]

**How long did Saul lay naked before Samuel?**

He lay naked all that day and all that night. [19:24]

## 1 Samuel 20

**What did Jonathan say his father did not do without telling him?**

He said that his father did nothing either great or small without telling it to him. [20:2]

**How close did David say he was to death?**

He said that there was but a step between him and death. [20:3]

**What did David ask to do until the third day at evening?**

David asked to hide in the field until the third day at evening. [20:5]

**What reason did David tell Jonathan to give Saul if Saul missed him?**

He said to tell Saul that he went to Bethlehem his city, because it is the yearly sacrifice there for the whole family. [20:6]

**Why did David ask Jonathan to deal kindly with him as his servant?**

Jonathan had brought David, his servant, into a covenant of Yahweh with him. [20:8]

**Where did Jonathan say to go to continue their discussion?**

He told David to go with him out into the field. [20:11]

**Why did Jonathan want to make his father's response known to David and send him away?**

Jonathan promises to make it known to David so that David could go in peace. [20:13]

**Why did Jonathan make David vow again to him?**

He made David vow again because of the love that he had for him. [20:17]

**Who does Jonathan say he would send to find the arrows he shot?**

He said he would send a young man to find the arrows. [20:21]

**When the new moon came, what did the king sit down to do?**

The king sat down to eat food. [20:24]

**What did Saul think could have happened to David to make him absent from the feast?**

Saul thought David was not clean. [20:26]

**Why does Jonathan say David had to attend his family's sacrifice?**

He said David's brother had ordered him to be there. [20:29]

**How does Saul describe Jonathan's mother in his burning anger?**

He called him the son of a wicked and rebellious woman. [20:30]

**Why was Jonathan grieved over David?**

He was grieved over David because his father had dishonored him. [20:34]

**Where did Jonathan shoot the arrow as the young man ran?**

Jonathan shot an arrow beyond the young man. [20:36]

**What did Jonathan do when David stood up and left?**

Jonathan returned to the city. [20:42]



## 1 Samuel 21

### **About what did David say the king told him to let no one know?**

He said the king told him to let no one know anything about the business he was sending him, and what he had commanded him. [21:2]

### **What did the priest answer David about the bread on hand?**

The priest said that there was no ordinary bread on hand, but there was holy bread. [21:4]

### **From where had the bread of the presence been removed?**

The bread of the presence had been removed from before Yahweh. [21:6]

### **What was the work Doeg the Edomite did for Saul?**

Doeg the Edomite was the chief of Saul's herdsman. [21:7]

### **Why did David say he had no weapons with him?**

He said that he had brought no weapons because the king's business was urgent. [21:8]

### **From whom was David fleeing when he went to Achish?**

He was fleeing that day from Saul. [21:10]

### **What did David pretend when he changed his behavior before Achish?**

He pretended to be insane in their hands. [21:13]

### **What did Achish ask his servants when he saw David was mad?**

He asked them why they brought this madman to him. [21:14]

## 1 Samuel 22

**Who besides David's father's house gathered to him at the cave of Adullam?**

Everyone who was in distress, every one who was in debt, and every one who was discontented, gathered to him. [22:2]

**How long did David's father and mother stay with the king of Moab?**

They stayed with the king the whole time that David was in his stronghold. [22:4]

**Who had been discovered along with David?**

The men who were with David were also discovered. [22:6]

**What does Saul accuse his servants of not revealing to him?**

Saul said that none of his servants revealed to him that his son had incited his servant David against him. [22:8]

**What two things does Doeg the Edomite tell Saul that Ahimelech gave to David?**

Ahimelech gave David provisions and the sword of Goliath the Philistine. [22:10]

**What did Saul say Ahimelech did for the son of Jesse besides giving him bread and a sword?**

Saul said that Ahimelech prayed to God that he might help him. [22:13]

**What were the servants of King Saul not willing to put out their hand to do?**

They would not kill the priests of Yahweh. [22:17]

**Who did Doeg kill with the edge of the sword in Nob, the city of the priests?**

He killed both men and women, children and infants, and oxen and donkeys and sheep. [22:19]

**Where did Abiathar go when he escaped the killing?**

Abiathar fled after David. [22:20]

**For what did David tell Abiathar he was responsible?**

David said that he was responsible for every death in his father's family. [22:22]

## 1 Samuel 23

**From whom did David seek help when the Philistines fought against Keilah and robbed the threshing floors?**

David prayed to Yahweh for help. [23:1]

**From whom did David seek help when the Philistines fought against Keilah and robbed the threshing floors?**

David prayed to Yahweh for help. [23:2]

**Why did David pray to Yahweh again about the Philistines?**

David's men told him they were afraid in Judah and were also afraid to attack the Philistines. [23:3]

**Why did David pray to Yahweh again about the Philistines?**

David's men told him they were afraid in Judah and were also afraid to attack the Philistines. [23:4]

**What was the outcome when David and his men fought with the Philistines as Yahweh had told David to do?**

Yahweh gave them victory over the Philistines, so David saved the inhabitants of Keilah. [23:5]

**Why did Saul think he could attack David and his men?**

David and his men were shut in in a city that had gates and bars. [23:7]

**Why did Saul think he could attack David and his men?**

David and his men were shut in in a city that had gates and bars. [23:8]

**After David knew that Saul was plotting harm against him, what did David say to Abiathar the priest?**

David said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring the ephod here." [23:9]

**What did David ask Yahweh concerning Saul and the men of Keilah?**

David wanted to know if Saul would come down to Keilah and if the men of Keilah would surrender him into Saul's hand. [23:10]

**What did David ask Yahweh concerning Saul and the men of Keilah?**

David wanted to know if Saul would come down to Keilah and if the men of Keilah would surrender him into Saul's hand. [23:11]

**What was Yahweh's reply to David concerning the men of Keilah?**

Yahweh told David that the men of Keilah would surrender David into the hand of Saul. [23:12]

**Why did Saul stop his pursuit of David at Keilah and search for him elsewhere?**

Saul was told that David had escaped from Keilah. [23:13]

**Why did Saul stop his pursuit of David at Keilah and search for him elsewhere?**

Saul was told that David had escaped from Keilah. [23:14]

**How was Jonathan, Saul's son, a help to David in the wilderness?**

He went to David and strengthened his hand in God. [23:15]

**Before Jonathan went home, what did he and David do in Horesh?**

They made a covenant before Yahweh. [23:18]

**Why was David not safe in Horesh and what did he do?**

He was going to be betrayed by the people and given over to Saul, so he and his men went to another wilderness. [23:25]

**What happened as Saul and his men were surrounding David and his men?**

A messenger came to Saul and told him that the Philistines had made a raid against the land. [23:26]

**What happened as Saul and his men were surrounding David and his men?**

A messenger came to Saul and told him that the Philistines had made a raid against the land. [23:27]

**What was Saul's response to this news?**

Saul returned to fight the Philistines. [23:28]

**1 Samuel 24**

**What did Saul do when he heard that David was in the wilderness of Engedi?**

He took three thousand chosen men and went to find David and his men. [24:1]

**What did Saul do when he heard that David was in the wilderness of Engedi?**

He took three thousand chosen men and went to find David and his men. [24:2]

**What did David do to Saul in the cave instead of killing him?**

David cut off a corner of Saul's robe without being noticed. [24:4]

**Why would David not allow his men to attack Saul, but let him leave the cave in safety?**

David's heart afflicted him and he felt that Yahweh would not want him to harm Yahweh's anointed. [24:5]

**Why would David not allow his men to attack Saul, but let him leave the cave in safety?**

David's heart afflicted him and he felt that Yahweh would not want him to harm Yahweh's anointed. [24:6]

**Why would David not allow his men to attack Saul, but let him leave the cave in safety?**

David's heart afflicted him and he felt that Yahweh would not want him to harm Yahweh's anointed. [24:7]

**When David left the cave after Saul, how did he show respect to Saul?**

David called Saul his master, the king, and then bowed his face to the ground. [24:8]

**How did David show Saul that he did not want to bring harm to him?**

David showed him the corner of his robe that David had been close enough to cut off. [24:10]

**How did David show Saul that he did not want to bring harm to him?**

David showed him the corner of his robe that David had been close enough to cut off. [24:11]

**What was Saul's response to David?**

He called David his son, then Saul lifted up his voice and wept. [24:16]

**Why did Saul say that David was more righteous than himself?**

David had repaid Saul with good even though Saul had done evil to David. [24:17]

**Why did Saul say that David was more righteous than himself?**

David had repaid Saul with good even though Saul had done evil to David. [24:18]

**What did Saul come to know about David at this time?**

Saul knew that David would be king and the kingdom of Israel would be established with David. [24:20]

**Before Saul went home, what oath did David make to him at Saul's request?**

David promised he would not cut off Saul's descendants, and he would not destroy Saul's name out of his father's house. [24:21]

**Before Saul went home, what oath did David make to him at Saul's request?**

David promised he would not cut off Saul's descendants, and he would not destroy Saul's name out of his father's house. [24:22]

## 1 Samuel 25

**What kind of man was Nabal in his dealings?**

He was harsh and evil. [25:3]

**What was Nabal's wife Abigail like?**

She was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. [25:3]

**Who did David send to greet Nabal while he was shearing his sheep?**

David sent ten young men to greet Nabal. [25:4]

**Why did David think that Nabal would help him and his ten young men?**

David's group had protected Nabal's shepherds when they were with David's group. [25:7]

**What did David's young men ask Nabal to give them?**

They asked Nabal to give them and David whatever he has in hand for a festive day. [25:8]

**What was Nabal's response to David's young men?**

Nabal said that he did not know David and he needed all he had for his shearers. [25:9]

**What was Nabal's response to David's young men?**

Nabal said that he did not know David and he needed all he had for his shearers. [25:10]

**What was Nabal's response to David's young men?**

Nabal said that he did not know David and he needed all he had for his shearers. [25:11]

**What did David tell his men to do when he heard about Nabal's response?**

David ordered his men to strap on their swords. [25:13]



**When the young man spoke to Abigail, how did he say that David and his men treated them in the fields?**

He said they were good to Nabal's shepherds while they were with them in the field. [25:14]

**When the young man spoke to Abigail, how did he say that David and his men treated them in the fields?**

He said they were good to Nabal's shepherds while they were with them in the field. [25:15]

**Why did the young man go to Abigail instead of to Nabal?**

Nabal was such a worthless fellow that no one could reason with him. [25:17]

**What did Abigail do after hearing about her husband's response.**

Abigail hurriedly gathered provisions and told her young men to go before her, but she did not tell Nabal. [25:18]

**What did Abigail do after hearing about her husband's response.**

Abigail hurriedly gathered provisions and told her young men to go before her, but she did not tell Nabal. [25:19]

**Who came toward Abigail as she rode her donkey bringing the provisions?**

David and his men came toward Abigail and she met them. [25:20]

**What had David said that he planned to do after guarding Nabal's possessions in vain?**

David planned to kill all the men who belonged to Nabal. [25:21]

**What had David said that he planned to do after guarding Nabal's possessions in vain?**

David planned to kill all the men who belonged to Nabal. [25:22]

**What did Abigail do when when she met David?**

Abigail hurriedly got down from her donkey, lay before David face down and asked to speak to David as his servant. [25:23]

**What did Abigail do when when she met David?**

Abigail hurriedly got down from her donkey, lay before David face down and asked to speak to David as his servant. [25:24]

**What did Abigail hope to prevent by talking to David?**

She hoped to stop the bloodshed of those with Nabal. [25:25]

**What did Abigail hope to prevent by talking to David?**

She hoped to stop the bloodshed of those with Nabal. [25:26]

**What does Abigail hope to accomplish by giving David and his young men the provisions?**

Abigail hoped that David would forgive Nabal's sins. [25:27]

**What does Abigail hope to accomplish by giving David and his young men the provisions?**

Abigail hoped that David would forgive Nabal's sins. [25:28]

**Who does Abigail tell David will make his home sure and without evil?**

Abigail says that Yahweh will make David's home sure. [25:28]

**Who will sling away the lives of David's enemies, as from the pocket of a sling?**

Yahweh will protect David even though men rise up to take his life. [25:29]

**Who does David say sent Abigail to meet him?**

David said that Yahweh sent Abigail. [25:32]

**Why does David say that Abigail and her wisdom are blessed?**

Because of Abigail's quick action, David kept from shedding blood and avenging himself. [25:33]

**Who has kept David from killing all the males in Nabal's household by sending Abigail quickly?**

Yahweh, the God of Israel, kept David from killing the males in Nabal's household. [25:34]

**Why did Abigail not talk to Nabal when she returned from seeing David?**

Nabal was holding a feast and was very drunk. [25:36]

**What happened to Nabal in the morning when Abigail talked to him?**

His heart died and he became like stone, and ten days later Yahweh attacked Nabal and he died. [25:37]

**What happened to Nabal in the morning when Abigail talked to him?**

His heart died and he became like stone, and ten days later Yahweh attacked Nabal and he died. [25:38]

**What did David do when he heard that Nabal was dead?**

David sent his servants to ask Abigail to become his wife. [25:39]

**What did David do when he heard that Nabal was dead?**

David sent his servants to ask Abigail to become his wife. [25:40]

**What did Abigail do when she heard David wanted to marry her?**

Abigail hurriedly arose and went by donkey following David's messengers to become his wife. [25:42]

**What happened to David's wife, Michal?**

Saul gave her to another man as his wife. [25:44]

## 1 Samuel 26

**Who did Saul take with him to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph?**

Saul took three thousand chosen men of Israel. [26:2]

**How did David know that Saul was coming after him into the wilderness?**

David had sent out spies and learned from them that Saul was coming. [26:4]

**Where did David go after learning that Saul had come?**

David arose and went to the place where Saul camped. [26:5]

**What did Joab's brother want to do when he and David saw Saul sleeping inside the camp?**

Joab's brother wanted to kill Saul with his spear. [26:6]

**What did Joab's brother want to do when he and David saw Saul sleeping inside the camp?**

Joab's brother wanted to kill Saul with his spear. [26:7]

**Why did David not want Joab's brother to kill Saul?**

David said no one could extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless. [26:9]

**How does David say Saul must die?**

Yahweh will kill Saul, or he will die on his own, or he will die in battle. [26:10]

**What did David take from Saul?**

David took the spear and the jar of water from near Saul's head. [26:11]

**What did David take from Saul?**

David took the spear and the jar of water from near Saul's head. [26:12]

**What did David go after left Saul's camp?**

He went over to the other side and stood on the top to the mountain far off. [26:13]

**Why did David say Abner, the man who was to watch over Saul, deserved to die?**

He did not keep watch after his master Saul when someone came to kill him. [26:15]

**Why did David say Abner, the man who was to watch over Saul, deserved to die?**

He did not keep watch after his master Saul when someone came to kill him. [26:16]

**What question did David ask Saul?**

David asked why Saul was pursuing David and what evil David had done. [26:17]

**What question did David ask Saul?**

David asked why Saul was pursuing David and what evil David had done. [26:18]

**What did David want to happen to human beings that stirred Saul up against David?**

David wants them to be cursed in the sight of Yahweh. [26:19]

**What did Saul say to David?**

Saul said that he had sinned and would harm David no more. [26:21]

**What did David tell Saul to do about his spear?**

He told Saul to send one of his young men over to get it. [26:22]

**What value did David show that he had for Saul's life?**

Saul's life was precious in David's eyes. [26:24]

## 1 Samuel 27

### **Why did David think that he needed to escape into the land of the Philistines?**

David felt that was the only way he could escape Saul. [27:1]

### **What made Saul no longer look for David?**

Saul heard that David and those with him had fled to Gath. [27:4]

### **What did David ask and get from Achish the Philistine?**

David asked for a place in one of the cities in the country, and Achish gave him Ziklag. [27:5]

### **What did David ask and get from Achish the Philistine?**

David asked for a place in one of the cities in the country, and Achish gave him Ziklag. [27:6]

### **What did David and his men do with the men and women, animals and clothing from their raids?**

They killed the people and took the animals and clothing and then returned to Achish. [27:8]

### **What did David and his men do with the men and women, animals and clothing from their raids?**

They killed the people and took the animals and clothing and then returned to Achish. [27:9]

### **How did David tell Achish he had been when he returned from raids?**

David said that he raided the south of Judah, so Achish thought he attacked Israel. [27:10]

### **Why did David keep no one alive and bring them to Gath?**

David killed everyone so that they would be unable to tell what David had done. [27:11]

### **Why did Achish think that David has made his people of Israel utterly hate David?**

Achish believed David's lies that he had raided the people of Israel. [27:12]

## 1 Samuel 28

**What did Achish want David to do when the Philistines gathered to fight Israel?**

Achish wanted David to permanently be his bodyguard. [28:1]

**What did Achish want David to do when the Philistines gathered to fight Israel?**

Achish wanted David to permanently be his bodyguard. [28:2]

**Who did Saul ban from the land after Samuel's death?**

Saul banned all those who talked with the dead or with spirits. [28:3]

**Which two countries gathered to fight?**

The Philistines and Israel gathered. [28:4]

**Why did Saul search for a woman who claimed to talk to the dead?**

Saul was afraid of the Philistine army and did not hear from Yahweh. [28:5]

**Why did Saul search for a woman who claimed to talk to the dead?**

Saul was afraid of the Philistine army and did not hear from Yahweh. [28:6]

**Why did Saul search for a woman who claimed to talk to the dead?**

Saul was afraid of the Philistine army and did not hear from Yahweh. [28:7]

**What was the women afraid of when the disguised Saul and two of his men went to talk to her?**

She was afraid because Saul killed everyone who talked to the dead after Samuel's death. [28:8]

**What was the women afraid of when the disguised Saul and two of his men went to talk to her?**

She was afraid because Saul killed everyone who talked to the dead after Samuel's death. [28:9]

**What did Saul promise to the woman?**

Saul promised that she would not be punished if she helped Saul. [28:10]

**How did the woman know that Saul was the man who asked for her to bring up Samuel?**

She knew that she was deceived when she saw Samuel. [28:11]

**How did the woman know that Saul was the man who asked for her to bring up Samuel?**

She knew that she was deceived when she saw Samuel. [28:12]

**What did the woman say Samuel looked like?**

The woman saw a god coming out of the earth, an old man clothed with a robe. [28:13]

**What did the woman say Samuel looked like?**

The woman saw a god coming out of the earth, an old man clothed with a robe. [28:14]

**Why did Saul bring up Samuel?**

Saul was distressed because the Philistines are going to war with him and God has left Saul. [28:15]

**What did Samuel say Yahweh had done with Saul's kingdom?**

Yahweh had torn Saul's kingdom from him and given it to David. [28:16]

**What did Samuel say Yahweh had done with Saul's kingdom?**

Yahweh had torn Saul's kingdom from him and given it to David. [28:17]

**How soon were Saul and his sons going to be dead with Samuel?**

They would die the next day. [28:19]

**What did the woman and Saul's servants urged him to do?**

They urged him to eat and gain his strength. [28:22]

**What did the woman bring to Saul and his servants to eat?**

She killed a fatted calf and baked unleavened bread for them to eat. [28:24]



**What did the woman bring to Saul and his servants to eat?**

She killed a fatted calf and baked unleavened bread for them to eat. [28:25]

## 1 Samuel 29

**What did Achish say he had not found in David?**

Achish said he had found no fault with David since he came to him. [29:3]

**What were the princes of the Philistines afraid that David would do during the battle?**

They feared that David would become an enemy to them in the battle. [29:4]

**What did Achish tell David to do because the princes of the Philistines did not want David there?**

He told David to peacefully return to his home. [29:6]

**What did Achish tell David to do because the princes of the Philistines did not want David there?**

He told David to peacefully return to his home. [29:7]

**What was the final decision about David that Achish told David?**

They said David must not go up with them to the battle. [29:9]

**What did Achish tell David to do in the morning?**

He told David to rise early, take the men that had come with him, and go away. [29:10]

## 1 Samuel 30

**What did David and his men find had happened to Ziklag while they were away?**

The Amalekites had raided, attacked, burned it, and captured all the women and others and took them away. [30:1]

**What did David and his men find had happened to Ziklag while they were away?**

The Amalekites had raided, attacked, burned it, and captured all the women and others and took them away. [30:2]

**How did David and his men react to what they found in Ziklag?**

They raised their voices and wept until they could weep no more. [30:3]

**How did David and his men react to what they found in Ziklag?**

They raised their voices and wept until they could weep no more. [30:4]

**Why was David distressed?**

His two wives were taken captive, and the grieving people were talking about stoning him. [30:5]

**Why was David distressed?**

His two wives were taken captive, and the grieving people were talking about stoning him. [30:6]

**What did David want to know when he prayed to Yahweh?**

David wanted to know, if he pursued after the Amalekites, would he overtake them. [30:8]

**What was Yahweh's answer to David?**

Yahweh told him to pursue the troop, be successful, and recover everything that had been taken. [30:8]

**What happened to two hundred of David's men at the brook Besor?**

They so weak that they had to stay behind. [30:10]

**What was wrong with the Egyptian man that David and his men found as they were pursuing the Amalekites?**

He had not eaten bread or drunk any water for three days and three nights. [30:12]

**Why had the Egyptian's master left him?**

He said he fell sick three days ago. [30:13]

**What was the Egyptian's requirement before he would show David where the raiding party was?**

He told David to swear that he would not kill him or betray him to his master. [30:15]

**What were the raiders doing when David attacked them?**

They were celebrating because of all the booty they had taken from the land of the Philistines and Judah. [30:16]

**What were the raiders doing when David attacked them?**

They were celebrating because of all the booty they had taken from the land of the Philistines and Judah. [30:17]

**What did David recover after his attack on the raiders?**

He recovered everything the Amalekites and raiders had taken. [30:18]

**Why didn't the wicked men think that the recovered booty should be shared with those men that were left behind?**

They said those left behind did not go and fight with them. [30:22]

**Why did David tell the wicked men they should all share and share alike?**

He said Yahweh had preserved them and had given them victory over the raiders that had come against them. [30:23]

**Why did David tell the wicked men they should all share and share alike?**

He said Yahweh had preserved them and had given them victory over the raiders that had come against them. [30:24]

**What did David do with the booty from Yahweh's enemies when he came back to Ziklag?**

David shared the booty with many elders of Judah and other places that he and his men frequently went. [30:26]

## 1 Samuel 31

**What happened to the men of Israel when they fought the Philistines?**

The men of Israel fled from the Philistines and fell dead. [31:1]

**What happened to Saul's sons?**

The Philistines killed his sons. [31:2]

**What happened to Saul in the battle?**

He was overtaken by the archers and was in severe pain. [31:3]

**What did Saul ask his armor bearer to do because Saul was in severe pain and he was afraid his enemy would come and abuse him?**

Saul asked him to draw his sword and kill him. [31:4]

**What did Saul do when his armor bearer was afraid and would not kill him?**

Saul took his own sword and fell on it. [31:4]

**What did the armor bearer do after he saw that Saul was dead?**

He fell on his own sword and died. [31:5]

**Why did the men of Israel from the other side of the valley and beyond the Jordan abandon their cities and flee?**

They fled because they saw that the other men of Israel had fled and that Saul and his sons were dead. [31:7]

**What did the Philistines do with Saul's body that they found when they came to strip the dead?**

The Philistines cut off Saul's head and fastened his body to the city wall of Beth Shan. [31:9]

**What did the fighting men of Jabesh Gilead do after its inhabitants heard what happened to Saul?**

They went to Bethshan and took the bodies of Saul and his sons to Jabesh and burned them. [31:11]

**What did the fighting men of Jabesh Gilead do after its inhabitants heard what happened to Saul?**

They went to Bethshan and took the bodies of Saul and his sons to Jabesh and burned them. [31:12]

**What did the inhabitants of Jabesh do with the bones of Saul and his sons?**

They buried their bones under a terebinth tree in Jabesh and fasted for seven days. [31:13]

## translationWords

### Aaron

#### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the **priest** priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

#### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 23:12-14](#)
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- Exodus 28:1-3
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- Numbers 16:44-46

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

#### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 12:6-7](#)



## Abiathar

### Definition:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: Zadok, [Saul \(OT\)](#), [David](#), Solomon, Adonijah)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 27:32-34](#)
- [1 Kings 01:7-8](#)
- [1 Kings 02:22-23](#)
- [2 Samuel 17:15-16](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H54, G8

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 23:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:7-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:7-8](#)

## Abijah

### Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 15:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 08:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:19-22](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H29, G7

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:1-3](#)

## Abner

### Definition:

Abner was a cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

- Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
- After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
- Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 26:26-28](#)
- [1 Kings 02:5-6](#)
- [1 Kings 02:32-33](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:55-56](#)
- [2 Samuel 03:22-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H74

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:49-51](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:55-56](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:57-58](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:24-25](#)

## Absalom

### Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Geshur](#), Amnon)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Kings 01:5-6](#)
- [2 Samuel 15:1-2](#)
- [2 Samuel 17:1-4](#)
- [2 Samuel 18:18](#)
- [Psalm 003:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H53

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:14-16](#)
- [Isaiah 09:11-12](#)
- [Job 06:21-23](#)
- [Lamentations 04:12-13](#)
- [Luke 12:57-59](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:47-48](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:25-26](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:14-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:19-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 29:4](#)

## afflict, affliction

### Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, [plague](#), suffer)

### Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Amos 05:12-13](#)
- [Colossians 01:24-27](#)
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804,

G4777, G4778, G5003

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:11
- 1 Samuel 5:6-7
- 1 Samuel 6:3-4
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7

## Ahab

### Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 18:1-2](#)
- [1 Kings 20:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:6-7](#)
- [2 Kings 09:7-8](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:03** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H256



## Ahaziah

### Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Joash](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 22:39-40](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:23-24](#)
- [2 Kings 11:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H274

## Ahijah

### Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), [Shiloh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 15:27-28](#)
- [1 Kings 21:21-22](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H281

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:2-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:18-19](#)

## altar, altars

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Luke 11:49-51](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 23:18-19](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:15-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:35](#)

## Amalek, Amalekite

### Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term “Amalek” is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Arabia, [David](#), Esau, [Negev](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 04:42-43](#)
- [2 Samuel 01:8-10](#)
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Numbers 14:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:47-48](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:18-19](#)

- [1 Samuel 30:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:18-20](#)

## Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess

### Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), Lot)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 19:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 19:36-38](#)
- [Joshua 12:1-2](#)
- [Judges 11:26-28](#)
- [Zephaniah 02:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 11:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:11](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:47-48](#)

## Amorite

### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

### Bible References:

- [Amos 02:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 10:15-18](#)
- [Genesis 15:14-16](#)
- [Joshua 09:9-10](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon. **\*15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them. **\*15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**. **\*15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 7:13-14](#)

## ancestor, father, forefather

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:31-32](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [Acts 22:3-5](#)
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Genesis 31:41-42
- Genesis 31:51-53
- [Hebrews 07:4-6](#)
- [John 04:11-12](#)
- Joshua 24:3-4
- [Malachi 03:6-7](#)
- [Mark 10:7-9](#)



- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 1 Samuel 9:20-21
- 1 Samuel 10:11-13
- 1 Samuel 12:6-7
- 1 Samuel 17:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:25
- 1 Samuel 22:1-2
- 1 Samuel 22:3-5
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 24:21-22

## angel, angels, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 24:15-16](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 12:22-23](#)

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God!
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

#### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 29:8-9

## angry, anger

### Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 32:9-11](#)
- [Isaiah 57:16-17](#)
- [John 06:52-53](#)
- [Mark 10:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 26:6-9](#)
- [Psalms 018:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 11:6-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:28-30](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:30-31](#)
- [1 Samuel 29:4](#)

## **anoint, anointed, anointing**

### **Definition:**

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#) )

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 02:20-21](#)
- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)
- [Acts 04:27-28](#)
- [Amos 06:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [James 05:13-15](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

**Uses:**

- Introduction to 1 Samuel
- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 10:1-2
- 1 Samuel 12:3
- 1 Samuel 12:4-5
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:11-12
- 1 Samuel 16:13
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 26:9-10
- 1 Samuel 26:11-12
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:22-23

## **appoint, appoints, appointed**

### **Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Samuel 08:10-12](#)
- [Acts 03:19-20](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Acts 13:48-49](#)
- [Genesis 41:33-34](#)
- [Numbers 03:9-10](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 3:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:10-12](#)

- 1 Samuel 9:23-24
- 1 Samuel 12:6-7
- 1 Samuel 12:12-13
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 18:13-14



## Arabah

### Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [Sea of Reeds](#), [Jordan River](#), [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 23:24-25](#)
- [2 Kings 25:4-5](#)
- [2 Samuel 02:28-29](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:4-6](#)
- [Job 24:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 14:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1026, H6160

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 23:24-25](#)

## Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

### Definition:

“Aram” was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 01:17-19](#)
- [2 Samuel 08:5-6](#)
- [Amos 01:5](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)
- [Genesis 31:19-21](#)
- [Hosea 12:11-12](#)
- [Psalm 060:1](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H758, H763, G689

## archer

### Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this, such as “bow-man.”

(See also: Assyria)

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 31:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:23-24](#)
- [Genesis 21:19-21](#)
- [Isaiah 21:16-17](#)
- [Job 16:13-14](#)
- [Proverbs 26:9-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1167, H1869, H2671, H2686, H3384, H7198, H7199, H7228

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 31:1-3](#)

## ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

### Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), [atonement](#), holy place, [testimony](#), [witness](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 06:14-15](#)
- [Exodus 25:10-11](#)
- [Hebrews 09:3-5](#)
- [Judges 20:27-28](#)
- [Numbers 07:89](#)
- [Revelation 11:19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 3:1-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:18](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:19-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:21-22](#)

- 1 Samuel 5:6-7
- 1 Samuel 5:11-12
- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- 1 Samuel 6:7-9
- 1 Samuel 6:14
- 1 Samuel 7:1-2
- 1 Samuel 14:18-19

## armor

### Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), [salvation](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 31:9-10](#)
- [2 Samuel 20:8](#)
- [Ephesians 06:10-11](#)
- [Jeremiah 51:3-4](#)
- [Luke 11:21-23](#)
- [Nehemiah 04:15-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2185, H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:37-38](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:39-40](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:52-54](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 31:4-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 31:9-10](#)

## arrogant

### Definition:

The term “arrogant” means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- Being arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: acknowledge, **boast**, **proud**)

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Peter 02:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:49-50](#)
- [Proverbs 16:5-6](#)
- [Psalm 056:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1346, H1347, H6277

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:3-4](#)

## Asa

### Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 09:14-16](#)
- [1 Kings 15:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 41:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 01:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H609



## Ashdod, Azotus

### Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Joppa](#), [Philip](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 08:39-40](#)
- [Amos 01:8](#)
- [Joshua 15:45-47](#)
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H795, G108

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 5:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:17-18](#)

## Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

### Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [idol](#), [Baal](#), Gideon, image, Solomon)

### Bible References:

- [2 Kings 18:4-5](#)
- [2 Kings 21:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 27:9](#)
- [Judges 03:7-8](#)
- [Micah 05:12-15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H842, H6252, H6253

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 7:3-4](#)

## Ashkelon

### Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

- Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
- Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Canaan](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Philistines](#), [Mediterranean](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 06:17-18](#)
- [Amos 01:8](#)
- [Jeremiah 25:19-21](#)
- [Joshua 13:2-3](#)
- [Judges 01:18-19](#)
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H831

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:17-18](#)

## atonement, atone, atones, atoned

### Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, [forgive](#), propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Numbers 05:8-10
- Numbers 28:19-22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G2643

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 3:12-14](#)

## authority, authorities

### Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:10-12](#)
- [Esther 09:29](#)
- [Genesis 41:35-36](#)
- [Jonah 03:6-7](#)
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Luke 20:1-2](#)
- [Mark 01:21-22](#)
- [Matthew 08:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 28:18-19](#)
- [Titus 03:1-2](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

## avenge, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “to avenge” could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 24:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:15-17](#)
- [Isaiah 47:3-5](#)
- [Leviticus 19:17-18](#)
- [Psalms 018:46-47](#)
- [Romans 12:19-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H6544, H6546, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G1558, G2917, G3709

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 24 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 1 Samuel 25 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33



**awe, awesome****Definition:**

The term “awe” refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term “awesome” describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were “awesome” or “awe-inspiring.”
- Typical human responses showing awe of God’s presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: [fear](#), [glory](#))

**Bible References:**

- [1 Chronicles 17:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 28:16-17](#)
- [Hebrews 12:27-29](#)
- [Psalm 022:22-23](#)
- [Psalms 147:4-5](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H366, H1481, H3372, H6206, H7227, G2124

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 18:15-16](#)

**ax****Definition:**

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate “ax.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include “tree-cutting tool” or “wooden tool with blade” or “long-handled wood-chopping tool.”
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

**Bible References:**

- [1 Kings 06:7-8](#)
- [2 Kings 06:4-5](#)
- [Judges 09:48-49](#)
- [Luke 03:9](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Psalm 035:1-3](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1631, H4621, H7134, G513

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 13:19-21](#)

## Baal

### Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), prostitute, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 16:31-33](#)
- [1 Samuel 07:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:7-8](#)
- [Judges 02:11-13](#)
- [Numbers 22:41](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- **19:07** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1120, G896

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- 1 Samuel 12:10-11

## Baasha

### Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [idol](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 15:16-17](#)
- [2 Kings 09:9-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 41:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1201

## barren

### Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 02:5](#)
- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 11:29-30](#)
- [Job 03:6-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7909, H7921, G692, G4723

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:5](#)

## beast

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), [power](#), [reveal](#), Beelzebul)

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:31-32](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:44-45](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)
- [Jeremiah 16:1-4](#)
- Leviticus 07:21
- [Psalms 049:12-13](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 17:44-45](#)

## Beersheba

### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abimelech, Abraham, Hagar, Ishmael, [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

===== Bible References:=====

- [1 Samuel 03:19-21](#)
- [2 Samuel 17:11-12](#)
- [Genesis 21:14-16](#)
- [Genesis 21:31-32](#)
- [Genesis 46:1-4](#)
- [Nehemiah 11:28-30](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H884

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 3:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:1-3](#)



## **believe, believes, believed, belief**

### **Definition:**

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

### **1. believe**

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

### **2. believe in**

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), believer)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 03:23-24](#)
- [Acts 09:40-43](#)
- [Acts 28:23-24](#)
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Genesis 45:24-26
- [Habakkuk 01:5-7](#)
- [Job 09:16-18](#)
- [John 01:12-13](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H540, G544, G569, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)

## Benjamin

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), Joseph (OT), Paul, [Rachel](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:1-2](#)
- [1 Kings 02:8-9](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:16-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:7-8](#)

## Beth Shemesh

### Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levite](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 04:7-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 06:7-9](#)
- [Joshua 19:20-22](#)
- [Judges 01:33](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:7-9](#)

## Bethel

### Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel,” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abraham, [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1-3
- [Hosea 10:14-15](#)
- Judges 01:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1008

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 7:15-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:1-2](#)

## Bethlehem, Ephrathah

### Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), Micah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16-20
- [John 07:40-42](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 02:16](#)
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:19-21

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**. **\*21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**. **\*23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**. **\*23:06** ”The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H376, H672, H1035, G965

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 16:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:14-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:57-58](#)

- [1 Samuel 20:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:28-29](#)

## **bless, blessed, blessing**

### **Definition:**

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To “bless” could also be translated as “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Corinthians 10:14-17](#)
- [Acts 13:32-34](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [Isaiah 44:3-4](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [Luke 06:20-21](#)
- [Matthew 26:26](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:5-6](#)
- [Romans 04:9-10](#)



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:20-21
- 1 Samuel 9:12-13
- 1 Samuel 15:12-13
- 1 Samuel 23:21-23
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 016:4](#)
- [Psalms 105:28-30](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:33-34](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:30-31](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:32-33](#)
- [1 Samuel 26:19-20](#)

## boast, boasts, boastful

### Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 20:11-12](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:1-4](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 04:15-17](#)
- [Psalms 044:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:3-4](#)

## body, bodies

### Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 10:11-12](#)
- [1 Corinthians 05:3-5](#)
- [Ephesians 04:4-6](#)
- [Judges 14:7-9](#)
- [Numbers 06:6-8](#)
- [Psalm 031:8-9](#)
- [Romans 12:4-5](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 31:9-10](#)

## bow and arrow

### Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:14-16
- [Habakkuk 03:9-10](#)
- [Job 29:20-22](#)
- [Lamentations 02:3-4](#)
- [Psalms 058:6-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:35-37](#)



## bow, bow down

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)
- [Genesis 24:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 44:14-15](#)
- [Isaiah 44:19](#)
- [Luke 24:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 02:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4781, G4794

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 1 Samuel 20:41-42
- 1 Samuel 24:8-9
- 1 Samuel 25:23-24
- 1 Samuel 25:41-42
- 1 Samuel 28:13-14

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 02:46-47](#)
- [Acts 27:33-35](#)
- Exodus 16:13-15
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)
- [Mark 06:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 04:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:5](#)

- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 1 Samuel 9:7-8
- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- 1 Samuel 16:20-21
- 1 Samuel 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:9-11
- 1 Samuel 30:11-12

## bribe

### Definition:

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as, “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 08:1-3](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07:7](#)
- [Isaiah 01:23](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Proverbs 15:27-28](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8641, G5260

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:1-3](#)

## bronze

### Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 07:15-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:37-38](#)
- [Daniel 02:44-45](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 17:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:37-38](#)

## **brother, brothers**

### **Definition:**

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Genesis 29:9-10](#)
- [Leviticus 19:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 03:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 17:17-18
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 22:1-2
- 1 Samuel 30:23-25



## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- [Mark 12:32-34](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:14](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:8-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:22-23](#)

## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Kings 09:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 35:4-5](#)
- [Jeremiah 25:32-33](#)
- [Luke 16:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 27:6-8](#)
- [Psalm 079:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 25:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 31:11-13](#)

## Caleb

### Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hebron](#), Joshua)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 04:13-16](#)
- Joshua 14:6-7
- Judges 01:11-13
- Numbers 32:10-12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like. **\*14:06** Immediately **Caleb** and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!" **\*14:08** "Except for Joshua and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."

so that they could live at peace in that land.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3612, H3614

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 25:2-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:13-14](#)

## call, calls, calling, called

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:11
- 1 Samuel 3:1-4
- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Samuel 19:6-7
- 1 Samuel 20:35-37
- 1 Samuel 23:28-29
- 1 Samuel 24:8-9
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7

## camel

### Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, unclean)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 05:20-22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09:1-2](#)
- Exodus 09:1-4
- [Mark 10:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 19:23-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H1581, G2574

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 15:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:16-17](#)

## **captive, captivity**

### **Definition:**

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Corinthians 10:5-6](#)
- [Isaiah 20:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 43:1-3](#)
- [Luke 04:18-19](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 30:3-4
- 1 Samuel 30:5-6



## Carmel, Mount Carmel

### Facts:

“Mount Carmel” refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called “Carmel” located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal’s sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn’t just a single mountain, “Mount Carmel” could be translated as, “mountain on the Carmel mountain range” or “Carmel mountain range.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 18:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:12-13](#)
- [Jeremiah 46:18-19](#)
- [Micah 07:14-15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3760, H3761, H3762

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 15:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:2-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:39-40](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:2-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:5-6](#)

## chariot

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 09:22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)
- [Acts 08:29-31](#)
- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Daniel 11:40-41](#)
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 41:42-43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

\***12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H668, H2021, H4817, H4818, H5699, H7393, H7395, H7396, H7398, G716, G4480

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:10-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:5](#)

## cherubim, cherub

### Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 13:5-6](#)
- [1 Kings 06:23-26](#)
- Exodus 25:15-18
- [Ezekiel 09:3-4](#)
- Genesis 03:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G5502

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#)

## chief

### Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 01:11-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:15-16](#)
- [Luke 19:1-2](#)
- [Psalm 004:1](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 21:7](#)

## children, child

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believer](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 04:19-20](#)
- [Genesis 45:9-11](#)
- [Joshua 08:34-35](#)
- [Nehemiah 05:4-5](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 22:18-19](#)

## **chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect**

### **Definition:**

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [2 John 01:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 03:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 65:22-23](#)
- [Luke 18:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 24:19-22](#)

- Romans 08:33-34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1254, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:27-28
- 1 Samuel 12:12-13
- 1 Samuel 13:1-2
- 1 Samuel 24 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 24:1-2
- 1 Samuel 26 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 26:1-2



## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, [David](#), Jesus, [anoint](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 05:40-42](#)
- [John 01:40-42](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [John 04:25-26](#)
- [Luke 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 01:15-17](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

**Uses:**

- [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#)

## clan

### Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), Jethro, [tribe](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 06:33-35](#)
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40-43
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 9:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:17-18](#)

## **clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes**

### **Definition:**

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- [Ezekiel 24:13](#)
- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 07:8-10
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Proverbs 20:29-30](#)
- [Psalms 051:7-9](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H3001, H3722, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6565, H6663, H8552, H8562, G2511, G2512, G2513, G3689

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 20:26-27](#)

## clothe, clothed

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- [Luke 24:48-49](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H1545, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4346, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2439, G2440, G3608, G4016, G4470, G4616, G4683, G4749, G5509, G6005

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 28:13-14](#)

## **command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments**

### **Definition:**

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

### **Bible References:**

- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 01:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)
- Numbers 01:17-19
- [Romans 07:7-8](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:6-7
- 1 Samuel 15:10-11
- 1 Samuel 15:12-13
- 1 Samuel 15:24-25
- 1 Samuel 16:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:19-21
- 1 Samuel 18:22
- 1 Samuel 21:1-2



## commander

### Definition:

The term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), centurion)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 11:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:11-12](#)
- [Daniel 02:14-16](#)
- [Mark 06:21-22](#)
- [Proverbs 06:6-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 18:13-14](#)

## compassion, compassionate

### Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 01:8-10](#)
- [Hosea 13:14](#)
- [James 05:9-11](#)
- [Jonah 04:1-3](#)
- [Mark 01:40-42](#)
- [Romans 09:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 23:21-23](#)

## confirm, confirmation

### Definition:

The terms “confirm” and “confirmation” refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 16:15-18](#)
- [2 Corinthians 01:21-22](#)
- [2 Kings 23:3](#)
- [Hebrews 06:16-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H553, H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G1991, G2964, G3315, G4300, G4972

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:21-23](#)

## **covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Ezra 03:10-11](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2617

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 20:14-16](#)

## covenant, covenants

### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: new covenant, [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Kings 18:11-12](#)
- [2 Samuel 23:5](#)
- [Acts 07:6-8](#)
- Exodus 34:10-11
- [Galatians 03:17-18](#)
- Genesis 09:11-13
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 31:43-44
- Joshua 24:24-26
- [Luke 01:72-75](#)
- [Mark 14:22-25](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1285, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 18:3-4
- 1 Samuel 20:8-9
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 23:17-18

## cow, calf, bull, cattle

### Definition:

The term “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [yoke](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:9-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 01:24-25](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:13-15](#)
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 22:4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:24-25](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:7-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:24-25](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:18-20](#)

## **cry, cry out**

### **Definition:**

The terms “cry” or “cry out” often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase “cry out” also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Job 27:8-10](#)
- [Mark 05:5-6](#)
- [Mark 06:48-50](#)
- [Psalm 022:1-2](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H603, H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7769, H7771, H7773, H7775, H8173, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 7:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:16-18](#)



## curse, cursed, curses, cursing

### Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 14:24-26](#)
- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 03:10-12](#)
- [Galatians 03:13-14](#)
- [Genesis 03:14-15](#)
- [Genesis 03:17-19](#)
- [James 03:9-10](#)
- [Numbers 22:5-6](#)
- [Psalms 109:28-29](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 03 General Notes**
- **1 Samuel 3:12-14**
- **1 Samuel 14:24-26**
- **1 Samuel 17:41-43**
- **1 Samuel 26:19-20**

## cut off

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:12-14
- Judges 21:6-7
- **Proverbs 23:17-18**

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G609, G851, G1581, G2407, G5257, H1214, H1219, H1438, H1468, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H1824, H1826, H2498, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6202, H6789, H6990, H7082, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113

### Uses:

- **1 Samuel 2:31-33**
- **1 Samuel 20:14-16**
- **1 Samuel 24:3-4**

## Dan

### Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [Jerusalem](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 12:34-35](#)
- [1 Kings 04:24-25](#)
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 30:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 3:19-21](#)

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, [kingdom](#), [light](#), redeem, [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:4-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:10-12](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [Isaiah 05:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:15-17](#)
- [Joshua 24:7](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:9](#)

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 17:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:1-2](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 02:25-26](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. **\*17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath. **\*17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul. **\*17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.

**\*17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. **\*17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God. **\*17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was.

**David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 16:13
- 1 Samuel 16:17-19
- 1 Samuel 16:20-21
- 1 Samuel 16:22-23
- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:17-18
- 1 Samuel 17:19-21
- 1 Samuel 17:22-24
- 1 Samuel 17:26-27
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 17:34-35
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- 1 Samuel 17:39-40
- 1 Samuel 17:41-43
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 1 Samuel 17:50
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 1 Samuel 17:57-58
- 1 Samuel 18:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:6-7
- 1 Samuel 18:13-14
- 1 Samuel 18:19
- 1 Samuel 18:23-24
- 1 Samuel 18:30
- 1 Samuel 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 19:8-9
- 1 Samuel 19:14-15
- 1 Samuel 19:21-22
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:6-7
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13



- 1 Samuel 20:24-25
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 1 Samuel 20:41-42
- 1 Samuel 21:1-2
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 21:10-11
- 1 Samuel 21:12-13
- 1 Samuel 22:1-2
- 1 Samuel 22:3-5
- 1 Samuel 22:6
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:20-21
- 1 Samuel 23:1-2
- 1 Samuel 23:5-6
- 1 Samuel 23:7-9
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:12
- 1 Samuel 23:13-14
- 1 Samuel 23:15-16
- 1 Samuel 23:19-20
- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 1 Samuel 23:26-27
- 1 Samuel 23:28-29
- 1 Samuel 24:1-2
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 24:8-9
- 1 Samuel 24:16
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- 1 Samuel 24:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- 1 Samuel 25:4-6
- 1 Samuel 25:9-11
- 1 Samuel 25:12-13
- 1 Samuel 25:14-15
- 1 Samuel 25:20
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:23-24
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44

- 1 Samuel 26:1-2
- 1 Samuel 26:3-4
- 1 Samuel 26:5
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 1 Samuel 26:9-10
- 1 Samuel 26:11-12
- 1 Samuel 26:13-14
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:21
- 1 Samuel 26:22-23
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 27:1
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9
- 1 Samuel 27:10
- 1 Samuel 27:11-12
- 1 Samuel 28:1-2
- 1 Samuel 28:16-17
- 1 Samuel 29:1-2
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 29:5
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7
- 1 Samuel 29:8-9
- 1 Samuel 30:1-2
- 1 Samuel 30:3-4
- 1 Samuel 30:5-6
- 1 Samuel 30:7-8
- 1 Samuel 30:9-10
- 1 Samuel 30:11-12
- 1 Samuel 30:13-14
- 1 Samuel 30:15
- 1 Samuel 30:16-17
- 1 Samuel 30:18-20
- 1 Samuel 30:21-22
- 1 Samuel 30:23-25
- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 1 Samuel 30:29-31

## day

### Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 20:4-6](#)
- [Daniel 10:4-6](#)
- [Ezra 06:13-15](#)
- [Ezra 06:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 09:14-15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:5-7](#)

## death, die, dead

### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: [nominal adjective](#))

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:20-21](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Colossians 02:20-23](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 34:27-29](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Romans 05:10-11](#)
- [Romans 05:12-13](#)
- [Romans 06:10-11](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. \*

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1478, H4191, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8546, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G599, G615, G684, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G5053, G5054

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:31-33](#)

- 1 Samuel 4:10-11
- 1 Samuel 5:11-12
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 14:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:38-39
- 1 Samuel 15:32-33
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 19:6-7
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- 1 Samuel 25:37-38
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 26:9-10
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 28 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 28:3-4
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 1 Samuel 31:7-8

## deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- [Matthew 27:62-64](#)
- [Micah 06:11-12](#)

{{tag>publish review}}

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 19:16-17](#)



## declare, declaration

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: proclaim)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 16:23-24](#)
- [1 Corinthians 15:31-32](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:17-18](#)
- [Amos 02:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 05:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 07:21-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H560, H816, H874, H952, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6575, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G394, G518, G669, G1107, G1213, G1229, G1335, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1732, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3853, G3870, G3955, G5319, G5419

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 24:17-18](#)

## decree

### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), law, proclaim)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 15:13-15](#)
- [1 Kings 08:57-58](#)
- [Acts 17:5-7](#)
- [Daniel 02:12-13](#)
- [Esther 01:21-22](#)
- [Luke 02:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 30:23-25](#)

## descendant, descended from

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, **ancestor**, **Jacob**, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- **1 Kings 09:4-5**
- **Acts 13:23-25**
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*02:09** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.” **\*04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.” **\*05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.” **\*17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**” **\*18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. **\*21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**. **\*48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

### Uses:

- **1 Samuel 20:41-42**
- **1 Samuel 24:21-22**
- **1 Samuel 25:2-3**

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### Bible References:

- [Acts 13:16-18](#)
- [Acts 21:37-38](#)
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- [John 03:14-15](#)
- [Luke 01:80](#)
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)
- [Mark 01:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 04:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:7-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:28-30](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:13-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:24-25](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:4-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:14-15](#)

- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 1 Samuel 26:1-2
- 1 Samuel 26:3-4

## dishonor, dishonorable

### Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: disgrace, [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [2 Corinthians 06:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)
- [John 08:48-49](#)
- [Leviticus 18:6-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: 03639 05034 06173 07036 07043 818 819 2617 pizza

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)

## disobey, disobedient, disobedience

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 13:20-22](#)
- [Acts 26:19-21](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- [Luke 01:16-17](#)
- [Luke 06:49](#)
- [Psalms 089:30-32](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:22-24



## divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

### Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, [false god](#), magic, sorcery)

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 06:1-2](#)
- [Acts 16:16-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:24-25](#)
- [Genesis 44:3-5](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:22-23](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:8-10](#)

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:32-34](#)
- [1 Samuel 09:3-4](#)
- [2 Kings 04:21-22](#)
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 21:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, H7409, G3678, G3688, G5268

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:16-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:14-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:3](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:20](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:23-24](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:41-42](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:8-9](#)

## **dream**

### **Definition:**

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 02:16-17](#)
- [Daniel 01:17-18](#)
- [Daniel 02:1-2](#)
- Genesis 37:5-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- [Matthew 02:13-15](#)
- [Matthew 02:19-21](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler. **\*08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**. **\*08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine." **\*16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!" **\*23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 28:5-7](#)

## **drunk, drunkard**

### **Facts:**

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Corinthians 05:11-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:36](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:12-14](#)
- [Luke 07:33-35](#)
- [Luke 21:34-35](#)
- [Proverbs 23:19-21](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7302, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 1:12-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:36](#)

## earth, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:38-40](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02:11-12](#)
- [Daniel 04:35](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Matthew 06:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Zechariah 06:5-6](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:8](#)

- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 4:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 28:13-14

## Edom, Edomite, Idumea

### Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), birthright, Esau, Obadiah, [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Genesis 36:1-3
- [Isaiah 11:14-15](#)
- Joshua 11:16-17
- [Obadiah 01:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:47-48](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:7](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:9-10](#)



## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 04:7-9](#)
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- [Matthew 02:13-15](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:27-28
- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- 1 Samuel 6:5-6
- 1 Samuel 8:8-9
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 12:6-7
- 1 Samuel 12:8-9
- 1 Samuel 15:6-7
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9
- 1 Samuel 30:11-12
- 1 Samuel 30:13-14
- 1 Samuel 30:15
- 1 Samuel 30:16-17

## Ekron

### Facts:

Ekron was a major city of the Philistines, located nine miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea.

- A temple of the false god Baal-zebub was located at Ekron.
- When the Philistines captured the ark of the covenant, they took it to Ashdod and then moved it to Gath and Ekron because God kept causing people to get sick and die in whatever city the ark was taken to. Finally the Philistines sent the ark back to Israel.
- When King Ahaziah fell through the roof of his house and injured himself, he sinned by trying to find out from the false god Baal-zebub of Ekron as to whether or not he would die from his injuries. Because of this sin, Yahweh said that he would die.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [Ashdod](#), [Beelzebul](#), [false god](#), [Gath](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 05:10](#)
- [Joshua 13:2-3](#)
- [Judges 01:18-19](#)
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6138, H6139

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 5:10](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:16](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:13-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:52-54](#)

## elder

### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 11:1-3](#)
- [1 Timothy 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:14-16](#)
- [Acts 05:19-21](#)
- [Acts 14:23-26](#)
- [Mark 11:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 21:23-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:3](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:30-31](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:26-28](#)

## enslave, in bondage

### Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: free, [righteous](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- [Genesis 15:12-13](#)
- [Jeremiah 30:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)

## ephod

### Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 02:18-19](#)
- Exodus 28:4-5
- [Hosea 03:4-5](#)
- Judges 08:27-28
- Leviticus 08:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:2-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:7-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:7-8](#)

## Ephraim

### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 06:66-69](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 37:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 41:50-52](#)
- [Genesis 48:1-2](#)
- [John 11:54-55](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:22-23](#)

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 24:10-11](#)
- [1 Timothy 06:9-10](#)
- [3 John 01:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 06:5-6](#)
- [Job 01:1-3](#)
- [Job 08:19-20](#)
- [Judges 09:55-57](#)
- [Luke 06:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:11-12](#)
- [Proverbs 03:7-8](#)
- [Psalms 022:16-17](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”



- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

#### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 2:9
- 1 Samuel 2:22-24
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 20:6-7
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:16-17
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 30:21-22

## exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), glorify, [boast](#), [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:5-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:47-49](#)
- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)
- [Psalms 018:46-47](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:1](#)

## exult, exultant

### Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 02:1](#)
- [Isaiah 13:1-3](#)
- [Job 06:10-11](#)
- [Psalm 068:1-3](#)
- [Zephaniah 02:15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:1](#)

## face

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 5:1-3
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 06:7](#)
- [Galatians 02:20-21](#)
- [James 02:18-20](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)

## faithful, faithfulness

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 02:9](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:23-24](#)
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- [Colossians 01:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 24:49](#)
- [Isaiah 01:26](#)
- [Joshua 02:14](#)
- [Luke 16:10-12](#)
- [Numbers 12:6-8](#)
- [Proverbs 11:12-13](#)
- [Psalm 012:1](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.



- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, G4103

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:34-35](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 26:22-23](#)

## family

### Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 08:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:17-18](#)
- Exodus 01:20-22
- Joshua 02:12-13
- [Luke 02:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 20:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:28-29](#)

## fast

### Definition:

The term “to fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb “to fast” can also be translated as “to refrain from eating” or “to not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 21:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:3-4](#)
- [Acts 13:1-3](#)
- [Jonah 03:4-5](#)
- [Luke 05:33-35](#)
- [Mark 02:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 06:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 09:14-15](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** ”For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G777, G3521, G3522, G3523

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 31:11-13

## **favor, favors, favorable, favoritism**

### **Definition:**

To “favor” is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term “favoritism” means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Samuel 02:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:6-7](#)
- [2 Corinthians 01:11](#)
- [Acts 24:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 41:14-16](#)
- [Genesis 47:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 50:4-6](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1293, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5375, H5414, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965  
pizza

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 1 Samuel 13:11-12
- 1 Samuel 16:22-23
- 1 Samuel 20:3
- 1 Samuel 20:28-29
- 1 Samuel 25:7-8
- 1 Samuel 27:5-7
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7

## fear, fears, afraid

### Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [awe](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 50:18-21](#)
- [Isaiah 11:3-5](#)
- [Job 06:14-17](#)
- [Jonah 01:8-10](#)
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 10:28-31](#)
- [Proverbs 10:24-25](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 3:15-16
- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- 1 Samuel 7:7-8
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 1 Samuel 15:24-25
- 1 Samuel 17:10-11
- 1 Samuel 17:22-24
- 1 Samuel 18:10-12
- 1 Samuel 18:27-29
- 1 Samuel 21:12-13
- 1 Samuel 23:3-4
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28:13-14
- 1 Samuel 28:20-21
- 1 Samuel 31:4-6



## feast

### Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Genesis 26:30-31](#)
- [Genesis 29:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 40:20-23](#)
- [Jude 01:12-13](#)
- [Luke 02:41-44](#)
- [Luke 14:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 22:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H2287, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4580, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G755, G1062, G1173, G1403, G1456, G1858, G1859, G2165, G3521, G4910

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 25:36](#)

## **festival**

### **Definition:**

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Chronicles 23:30-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 05:1-2](#)
- [John 04:43-45](#)
- [Luke 22:1-2](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

**fig****Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

- [Habakkuk 03:17](#)
- [James 03:11-12](#)
- [Luke 13:6-7](#)
- [Mark 11:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 21:18-19](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 25:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:11-12](#)

## fire

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 16:18-20](#)
- [2 Kings 01:9-10](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [John 15:5-7](#)
- [Luke 03:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Nehemiah 01:3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 29:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 43:32-34](#)
- [Luke 02:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 1 Samuel 14:49-51
- 1 Samuel 17:12-13

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [2 John 01:7-8](#)
- [Ephesians 06:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 02:24-25](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 16:17-18](#)
- [Romans 08:6-8](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 17:44-45](#)



## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [ox](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#), )

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 10:28-29](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 08:30-32](#)
- [Matthew 26:30-32](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:16-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:34-35](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:18-20](#)

## flute, pipe

### Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 14:7-9](#)
- [1 Kings 01:38-40](#)
- [Daniel 03:3-5](#)
- [Luke 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 09:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 11:16-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G832, G834, G836

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 10:5-6](#)

## **fool, fools, foolish, folly**

### **Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Ecclesiastes 01:16-18](#)
- [Ephesians 05:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 03:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 31:26-28](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 25:7-9](#)
- [Proverbs 13:15-16](#)
- [Psalms 049:12-13](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 26:21

## forever

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), everlasting, [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 02:32-33](#)
- [2 Samuel 03:28-30](#)
- [Daniel 07:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 15:17-18](#)
- [Hebrews 06:19-20](#)
- [Hebrews 10:11-14](#)
- [Job 04:20-21](#)
- [Psalms 021:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5705, H5331, H5703, H5769, H5865, H5957, G165, G166, G1336

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:21-23
- 1 Samuel 2:29-30
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 20:22-23
- 1 Samuel 20:41-42
- 1 Samuel 27:11-12

## **forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Colossians 03:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 04:31-32](#)
- [Genesis 50:15-17](#)
- [Isaiah 55:6-7](#)
- [Joshua 24:19-20](#)
- [Luke 05:20-21](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)
- [Psalms 025:17-19](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3722, H5375, H5545, H5546, H5547, G859, G863, G5483

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 25:27-28**



**forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook****Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

**Bible References:**

- [1 Kings 06:11-13](#)
- [Daniel 11:29-30](#)
- [Genesis 24:26-27](#)
- [Joshua 24:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 27:45-47](#)
- [Proverbs 27:9-10](#)
- [Psalms 071:17-18](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 8:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:10-11](#)

## fulfill, fulfilled

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), minister, [call](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 02:26-27](#)
- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- [Leviticus 22:17-19](#)
- [Luke 04:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Psalms 116:12-15](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 15:12-13**

## Gad

### Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: census, [prophet](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 05:18-19](#)
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:9-11
- Joshua 01:12-13
- Joshua 21:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 13:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:3-5](#)

## gate, gate bar

### Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- [Acts 09:23-25](#)
- [Acts 10:17-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:18](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:52-54](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:7-9](#)

## Gath

### Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there awhile with his two wives and with six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Ashkelon](#), [Ekron](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 02:39-40](#)
- [1 Samuel 05:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:6-8](#)
- [Joshua 11:21-22](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 5:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:13-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:22-24](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:52-54](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:2-4](#)

## Gaza

### Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Philip](#), [Philistines](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Gath](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 04:24-25](#)
- [Acts 08:26-28](#)
- [Genesis 10:19-20](#)
- [Joshua 10:40-41](#)
- [Judges 06:3-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:17-18](#)

## Geshur

### Definition:

During the time of King David, Geshur was a small kingdom located on the east side of the Sea of Galilee between the countries of Israel and Aram.

- King David married Maacah, the daughter of Geshur's king, and she bore him a son, Absalom.
- After murdering his half-brother Amnon, Absalom fled northeast from Jerusalem to Geshur, a distance of about 140 kilometers. He stayed there three years.

(See also: [Absalom](#), Amnon, [Aram](#), Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:23-24](#)
- [2 Samuel 03:2-3](#)
- Deuteronomy 03:14
- Joshua 12:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 27:8-9](#)



## Gibeah

### Facts:

Gibeah was a city located north of Jerusalem and south of Bethel.

- Gibeah was in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.
- It was the site of a huge battle between the Benjamites and Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), [Bethel](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 10:26-27](#)
- [2 Samuel 21:5-6](#)
- [Hosea 09:8-9](#)
- [Judges 19:12-13](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 10:26-27](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:16-17](#)

## gift, gifts

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:1-3](#)
- [2 Samuel 11:6-8](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 11:17-18](#)
- [Acts 24:17-19](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:26-27](#)

## Gilead

### Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:21-22](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:1-2](#)
- [Amos 01:3-4](#)
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Genesis 37:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 11:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 31:11-13](#)

## Gilgal

### Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Elisha](#), [Jericho](#), [Jordan River](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 07:15-17](#)
- [2 Kings 02:1-2](#)
- [Hosea 04:15-16](#)
- [Judges 02:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 7:15-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:32-33](#)

## glory, glorious

### Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: glorify)

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:5-6](#)
- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 03:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 24:16-18](#)
- [Isaiah 35:1-2](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- [Numbers 14:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 02:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 04:18-20](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's glory if you believe in me?"

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3519, H3520, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 4:21-22](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:5-6](#)

## goat, kid

### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
- Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
- The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
- Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), unrighteous, [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:31-32
- Genesis 31:10-11
- Genesis 37:31-33
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 10:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:2-3](#)



## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, [Holy Spirit](#), [idol](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- [Ezra 03:1-2](#)

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 2:2
- 1 Samuel 3:1-4
- 1 Samuel 3:17-18
- 1 Samuel 4:3-4
- 1 Samuel 6:3-4
- 1 Samuel 6:19-20
- 1 Samuel 7:7-8
- 1 Samuel 9:5-6
- 1 Samuel 9:27
- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 12:8-9
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:18-19
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- 1 Samuel 15:30-31
- 1 Samuel 16:22-23
- 1 Samuel 17:26-27
- 1 Samuel 17:36
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 18:10-12
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13
- 1 Samuel 22:3-5
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 23:7-9
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:13-14
- 1 Samuel 23:15-16
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 1 Samuel 29:8-9
- 1 Samuel 30:5-6
- 1 Samuel 30:15

## god, gods, goddess

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Baal](#), Molech, [idol](#), demon, image)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Acts 19:26-27](#)
- [Galatians 04:8-9](#)
- Genesis 35:1-3
- [Isaiah 44:20](#)
- [Psalms 081:8-10](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H5236, H8267, G2299

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 5:6-7
- 1 Samuel 6:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- 1 Samuel 8:8-9
- 1 Samuel 17:41-43
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 28:13-14

## godly, godliness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [nominaladj](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

(See also [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [ungodly](#), unrighteous)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:10-13](#)
- [Acts 03:11-12](#)
- [Hebrews 11:7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2623, G516, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#)

## gold

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01:14-15](#)
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Daniel 02:31-33](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)

## Goliath

### Facts:

Goliath was a very tall and very large soldier in the army of the Philistines who was killed by David.

- Goliath was between two and three meters tall. He is often referred to as a giant because of his great size.
- Although Goliath had better weapons and was much bigger than David, God gave David the strength and ability to defeat Goliath.
- The Israelites were declared victorious over the Philistines as a result of David's victory over Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 20:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:9-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 17:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:22-24](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:9-10](#)



## good, goodness

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 01:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 02:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** ”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** ”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22

## grain

### Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- [Luke 06:1-2](#)
- [Mark 02:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 13:7-9](#)
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:13-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:18-19](#)

## guilt offering

### Definition:

A guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required an Israelite to make if he had accidentally did something wrong such as disrespect God or damage another person's property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and the payment of a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), grain offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 06:3-4](#)
- [2 Kings 12:15-16](#)
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Numbers 06:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:17-18](#)

## guilt, guilty

### Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- [Isaiah 06:6-7](#)
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [John 19:4-6](#)
- [Jonah 01:14-16](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 25:23-24
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33

## Hades, Sheol

### Definition:

The terms “Hades” and “Sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “Sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “Hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “Hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

### Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “Sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “Hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the words “Sheol” and “Hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, “Sheol, place where dead people are” and “Hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [hell](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 02:29-31](#)
- [Genesis 44:27-29](#)
- [Jonah 02:1-2](#)
- [Luke 10:13-15](#)
- [Luke 16:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 16:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 01:17-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:6-7](#)



## **hand, right hand, to hand over**

### **Definition:**

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: [metonymy](#))
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
  - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
  - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
  - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
  - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

**Bible References:**

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Acts 11:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 09:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [John 03:34-36](#)
- [Mark 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 06:3-4](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 5:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 5:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:13-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:3](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:8-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:36-37](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:47-48](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:46-47](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:17-18](#)

- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 23:7-9
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:13-14
- 1 Samuel 24:3-4
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 24:19-20
- 1 Samuel 25:7-8
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 1 Samuel 26:11-12
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:22-23
- 1 Samuel 27:1
- 1 Samuel 28:16-17
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19
- 1 Samuel 28:20-21
- 1 Samuel 30:15

## Hannah

### Facts:

Hannah was the mother of the prophet Samuel. She was one of two wives of Elkanah.

- Hannah was not able to conceive a child, which was a great grief to her.
- At the temple, Hannah earnestly prayed for God to give her a son, promising to dedicate him to serving God.
- God granted her request and when the boy Samuel was old enough, she brought him to serve at the temple.
- God also gave Hannah other children after that.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: conceive, [Samuel](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 01:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 02:1](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:1](#)

## harp

### Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 15:16-18](#)
- [Amos 05:23-24](#)
- [Daniel 03:3-5](#)
- [Psalm 033:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 05:8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 10:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:14-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:22-23](#)

## harvest

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, [festival](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 09:9-11](#)
- [2 Samuel 21:7-9](#)
- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Isaiah 17:10-11](#)
- [James 05:7-8](#)
- [Leviticus 19:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:37-38](#)
- [Ruth 01:22](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H7105, G2326, G6013

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 6:13](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:10-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:16-18](#)

## head

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means” he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in “this gray head,” referring to an elderly person, or as in “the head of Joseph,” which refers to Joseph. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See also: [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 01:51-54](#)
- [1 Kings 08:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 09:22](#)



- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 9:22
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 19:18-20
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 29:4

## heal, cure

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:14-16](#)
- [Acts 08:6-8](#)
- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:17-19](#)
- [Luke 08:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 13:15](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him. **\*21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk. **\*26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” **\*26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them. **\*32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!” **\*44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. **\*44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.” **\*49:02** ] Jesus did many

miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)

## heart, hearts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

### Bible References:

- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 03:13-15](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 15:7-9](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Mark 02:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 05:5-8](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:7-8
- 1 Samuel 1:12-14
- 1 Samuel 2:1
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 4:12-13
- 1 Samuel 6:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Samuel 10:26-27
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 21:12-13
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- 1 Samuel 25:37-38
- 1 Samuel 27:1
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7

## heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 08:22-24](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- [Ephesians 06:9](#)
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- [John 03:12-13](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:46-48](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 2:10**
- **1 Samuel 5:11-12**
- **1 Samuel 17:44-45**

## Hebrew, Hebrews

### Facts:

The “Hebrews” were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a “Hebrew.”

- The term “Hebrew” also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Jewish people” or “Israelites.” It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), Jew, Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 26:12-14](#)
- [Genesis 39:13-15](#)
- [Genesis 40:14-15](#)
- [Genesis 41:12-13](#)
- [John 05:1-4](#)
- [John 19:12-13](#)
- [Jonah 01:8-10](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 29:3](#)



## Hebron

### Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 02:10-11](#)
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:26-27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 01:8-10
- Numbers 13:21-22

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 30:29-31](#)

## heifer

### Definition:

A heifer is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [cow](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- Genesis 15:9-11
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)
- Numbers 19:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)

## high places

### Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshipping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshipping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 09:12-13](#)
- [2 Kings 16:3-4](#)
- [Amos 04:12-13](#)
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- [Ezekiel 06:1-3](#)
- [Habakkuk 03:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 9:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:14](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:25-26](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:11-13](#)

## high priest

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas’ father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “chief priest.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, chief priests, [priest](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Acts 09:1-2](#)
- Exodus 30:10
- [Hebrews 06:19-20](#)
- Leviticus 16:32-33
- [Luke 03:1-2](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 26:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 26:51-54](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.

- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218 H1419 H3548 G748 G749

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)

## Hittite

### Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, foreigner, Ham, [mighty](#), Solomon, Uriah)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 09:20-21](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:10-11
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Joshua 01:4-5
- [Nehemiah 09:7-8](#)
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 26:6-8](#)

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), God the Father, Son of God, [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 10:9-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 01:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 63:10](#)
- [Job 33:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 12:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 28:18-19](#)
- [Psalms 051:10-11](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 10 General Notes**
- **1 Samuel 10:5-6**
- **1 Samuel 10:9-10**
- **1 Samuel 11:6-8**
- **1 Samuel 16 General Notes**
- **1 Samuel 16:13**
- **1 Samuel 16:14-16**
- **1 Samuel 19:18-20**
- **1 Samuel 28 General Notes**



## holy, holiness

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:11-13](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Colossians 01:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:18-20](#)
- [Lamentations 04:1-2](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Matthew 07:6](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2623, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G3741, G3742,

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:2](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:19-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:3-4](#)

## **honor, honors, to honor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Samuel 02:8](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- [John 04:43-45](#)
- [John 12:25-26](#)
- [Mark 06:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 15:4-6](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:8](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:29-30](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:30-31](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:14-15](#)

## **honor, honors, to honor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Samuel 02:8](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- [John 04:43-45](#)
- [John 12:25-26](#)
- [Mark 06:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 15:4-6](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

## horn, horns

### Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: [authority](#), [cow](#), [deer](#), [goat](#), [power royal](#), [sheep](#), [trumpet](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 15:27-28](#)
- [1 Kings 01:38-40](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 17:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 022:20-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:10](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:13](#)

## horsemen

### Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), horse)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:5-6](#)
- [Daniel 11:40-41](#)
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:10-12](#)

## house

### Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 07:47-50](#)
- [Genesis 39:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 41:39-41](#)
- [Luke 08:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 15:24-26](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:19-20
- 1 Samuel 2:27-28
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 3:12-14
- 1 Samuel 5:1-3
- 1 Samuel 7:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:20-21
- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 1 Samuel 17:25
- 1 Samuel 18:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 21:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:1-2
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 24:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:16-17
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35



## house of God, Yahweh's house

### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshipping God" or "a place for worshipping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 03:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:8-9](#)
- [Ezra 05:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 28:16-17](#)
- [Judges 18:30-31](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 12:3-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 1:9-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 3:1-4](#)

## household

### Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 07:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 34:18-19](#)
- [John 04:53-54](#)
- [Matthew 10:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 10:34-36](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 27:2-4](#)

## **humble, humbles, humbled, humility**

### **Definition:**

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [James 01:19-21](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 14:10-11](#)
- [Luke 18:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:11-12](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. **\*34:10** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:6-7](#)

## idol, idolatrous

### Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 15:19-21](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- Exodus 32:1-2
- [Galatians 05:19-21](#)
- [Psalm 031:5-7](#)
- [Romans 02:21-22](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*13:05** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.” **\*13:12** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it! **\*14:03** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.” **\*18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice. **\*19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 19:12-13
- 1 Samuel 31:9-10

## incense

### Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, [burnt offering](#), frankincense)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 03:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:10-11](#)
- [2 Kings 14:4-5](#)
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Luke 01:8-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)

## **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir**

### **Definition:**

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- 1 Samuel 10:1-2
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20



## iniquity, iniquities

### Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), [trespass](#))

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 09:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 15:14-16](#)
- [Genesis 44:16-17](#)
- [Habakkuk 02:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 13:40-43](#)
- [Matthew 23:27-28](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 15:22-23](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:1-2](#)

## innocent

### Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression “innocent blood” could be translated as “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said “I have betrayed innocent blood,” he was saying “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:4-5](#)
- [Acts 20:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:17-19](#)
- [Job 09:21-24](#)
- [Romans 16:17-18](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God." \*

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 19:4-5**

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 10:1-3](#)
- [1 Kings 08:1-2](#)
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 24:21](#)
- [Mark 12:28-31](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 27:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. **\*09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. **\*09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. **\*10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” **\*14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. **\*15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. **\*15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. **\*16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. **\*43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- Introduction to 1 Samuel
- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 2:12-14
- 1 Samuel 2:22-24
- 1 Samuel 2:27-28
- 1 Samuel 3:10-11
- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 4:1-2
- 1 Samuel 5:6-7
- 1 Samuel 6:3-4
- 1 Samuel 7:1-2
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:13-14
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 1 Samuel 8:4-5
- 1 Samuel 9:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:9
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- 1 Samuel 11:6-8
- 1 Samuel 12:1-2
- 1 Samuel 13:1-2
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:11-12
- 1 Samuel 14:18-19
- 1 Samuel 14:36-37
- 1 Samuel 14:45-46
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 15:26-27
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- 1 Samuel 17:2-3
- 1 Samuel 17:8-9
- 1 Samuel 17:10-11
- 1 Samuel 17:19-21
- 1 Samuel 17:22-24
- 1 Samuel 17:25

- 1 Samuel 17:26-27
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 17:52-54
- 1 Samuel 18:6-7
- 1 Samuel 18:15-16
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:17-18
- 1 Samuel 24:1-2
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- 1 Samuel 25:30-31
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 26:1-2
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 27:1
- 1 Samuel 27:11-12
- 1 Samuel 28:1-2
- 1 Samuel 28:3-4
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19
- 1 Samuel 29:1-2
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 30:23-25
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 1 Samuel 31:7-8

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 22:31-33](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 12:8-9](#)



## **jealous, jealousy**

### **Definition:**

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Corinthians 12:20-21](#)
- Deuteronomy 05:9-10
- Exodus 20:4-6
- [Ezekiel 36:4-6](#)
- Joshua 24:19-20
- [Nahum 01:2-3](#)
- [Romans 13:13-14](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)

## Jehoshaphat

### Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 03:10-12](#)
- [1 Kings 04:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:1-2](#)
- [2 Kings 01:17-18](#)
- [2 Samuel 08:15-18](#)
- [Matthew 01:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

## Jehu

### Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 04:34-38](#)
- [1 Kings 16:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:1-3](#)
- [2 Kings 10:8-9](#)
- [Hosea 01:3-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, [temple](#), Zion)

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 04:9-11](#)
- [Luke 13:4-5](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Mark 03:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 17:52-54**

## Jesse

### Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), Boaz, [descendant](#), fruit, Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:9-12](#)
- [1 Kings 12:16-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:1](#)
- [Luke 03:30-32](#)
- [Matthew 01:4-6](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 16:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:8-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:22-23](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:57-58](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:26-27](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:11-13](#)

- 1 Samuel 25:9-11



## Jezreel

### Definition:

Jezreel was an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the “Valley of Jezreel.”
- Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
- Naboth’s vineyard was located near King Ahab’s palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
- Ahab’s evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
- Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](#), Elijah, Issachar, Jezebel, palace, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 04:11-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:43-44](#)
- [2 Kings 08:28-29](#)
- [2 Samuel 02:1-3](#)
- [Judges 06:33](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 25:43-44](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:2-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 29:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 29:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:5-6](#)

## Joab

### Definition:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout David's entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander of King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew, since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [David](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:16-17](#)
- [1 Kings 01:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 26:6-8](#)
- [2 Samuel 02:18-19](#)
- [Nehemiah 07:11-14](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 26:6-8](#)

## Joash

### Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer Gideon.
- Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
- The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
- When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
- King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places, and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
- King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two distinct kings.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [altar](#), [Benjamin](#), [false god](#), [Gideon](#), [high places](#), [idol](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 03:10-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:25-27](#)
- [2 Kings 11:1-3](#)
- [Amos 01:1-2](#)
- [Judges 06:11-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

## Joel

### Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

- The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
- The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
- In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.
- 

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joash](#), [Judah](#), [Pentecost](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 06:33-35](#)
- [1 Samuel 08:1-3](#)
- [Acts 02:16-17](#)
- [Ezra 10:41-44](#)
- [Joel 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:1-3](#)

## Jonathan

### Facts:

Jonathan was the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means “Yahweh has given.”

- David’s best friend, Jonathan, is the most well-known Jonathan in the Bible with this name. This Jonathan was King Saul’s oldest son.
- Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abiathar](#), [David](#), [Moses](#), [Jeremiah](#), [priest](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), scribe)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:41-42](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:1-2](#)
- [2 Samuel 01:3-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 13:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:8-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:16-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:27-28](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:38-39](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:24-25](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:30-31](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:38-40](#)

- 1 Samuel 23:15-16
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3

## Joram

### Facts:

Joram son of Ahab was a king of Israel. He was also sometimes referred to as “Jehoram.”

- King Joram of Israel reigned at the same time as King Jehoram of Judah.
- Joram was an evil king who worshiped false gods and caused Israel to sin.
- King Joram of Israel also reigned during the time of the prophets Elijah and Obadiah.
- Another man named Joram was the son of King Tou of Hamath when David was king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [David](#), [Elijah](#), [Hamath](#), [Jehoram](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 03:10-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:4-5](#)
- [2 Kings 01:17-18](#)
- [2 Kings 08:16-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- [John 01:26-28](#)
- [John 03:25-26](#)
- [Luke 03:3](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 03:13-15](#)
- [Matthew 04:14-16](#)
- [Matthew 19:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land. **\*15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho. **\*19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 13:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 31:7-8](#)



## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

(See also: [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:6-7](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [James 01:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 15:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- [Nehemiah 08:9-10](#)
- [Philemon 01:4-7](#)
- [Psalm 048:1-3](#)
- [Romans 15:30-32](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [33:07](#) “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”

- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2304, H2305, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5970, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2167, G2744, G3685, G4640, G5463, G5479

## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

(See also: [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:6-7](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [James 01:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 15:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- [Nehemiah 08:9-10](#)
- [Philemon 01:4-7](#)
- [Psalm 048:1-3](#)
- [Romans 15:30-32](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [33:07](#) “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”

- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2304, H2305, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5970, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2167, G2744, G3685, G4640, G5463, G5479

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 18:6-7**

## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, [Judah](#), Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:1-2](#)
- [1 Kings 01:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 29:35](#)
- [Genesis 38:1-2](#)
- [Luke 03:33-35](#)
- [Ruth 01:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 11:6-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:52-54](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:3-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:21-23](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:13-14](#)

- 1 Samuel 30:16-17

## Judah, kingdom of Judah

### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 30:26-28](#)
- [2 Samuel 12:7-8](#)
- [Hosea 05:14-15](#)
- [Jeremiah 07:33-34](#)
- [Judges 01:16-17](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*18:07** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.\ **\*18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.\ **\*18:13** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.\ **\*20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.\ **\*20:05** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.\ **\*20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.\ **\*20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.\

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 30:26-28



## judge

### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: governor, [judge](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Luke 11:18-20](#)
- [Luke 12:13-15](#)
- [Luke 18:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 05:25-26](#)
- [Ruth 01:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:18](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:1-3](#)

## judge, judges, judgment, judgments

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [1 Kings 03:7-9](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Isaiah 03:13-15](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 06:37](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 054:1-3](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:10](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:25-26](#)
- [1 Samuel 3:12-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:15-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:14-15](#)

## just, justice, justly

### Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [righteous](#), upright)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 18:14-17](#)
- [Acts 28:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 04:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:1-3](#)
- [Luke 18:3-5](#)
- [Luke 21:20-22](#)
- [Luke 23:39-41](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)
- [Micah 03:8](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3477, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 8:1-3**

## king

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 06:15-16](#)
- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:3-5](#)
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Luke 22:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 14:8-9](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. **\*16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. **\*16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. **\*17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. **\*21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. **\*48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 8:4-5
- 1 Samuel 8:8-9
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 11:14-15
- 1 Samuel 12:1-2
- 1 Samuel 12:8-9
- 1 Samuel 12:12-13
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 15:26-27
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- 1 Samuel 17:25
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 1 Samuel 18:6-7
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- 1 Samuel 18:22
- 1 Samuel 18:27-29
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:24-25
- 1 Samuel 21:1-2
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 21:12-13
- 1 Samuel 22:3-5
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 23:17-18
- 1 Samuel 24:8-9
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 24:19-20
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- 1 Samuel 26:13-14
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16

- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 26:22-23
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 27:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28:13-14
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 29:8-9



## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [2 Timothy 04:17-18](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [John 18:36-37](#)
- [Mark 03:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 04:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 10:14-16
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 15:28-29
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 28:16-17

## kingdom of Israel

### Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: Assyria, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), Samaria)

### Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 35:18-19](#)
- [Jeremiah 05:10-13](#)
- [Jeremiah 09:25-26](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**. **\*18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other. **\*18:11** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil. **\*20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God. **\*20:02** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country. **\*20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 24:19-20](#)

## kiss

### Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression "to kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:25-28](#)
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11-12
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Genesis 45:14-15
- Genesis 48:8-10
- [Luke 22:47-48](#)
- [Mark 14:43-46](#)
- [Matthew 26:47-48](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 10:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:41-42](#)

## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), understand, [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 02:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:46-47](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:14-15](#)
- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:4-5

- [Luke 01:76-77](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:12-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:16-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:46-47](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:3](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:38-40](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:3-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:1-2](#)

## labor pains, in labor

### Definition:

A woman who is “in labor” is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called “labor pains.”

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: labor, last day)

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 04:19-20](#)
- [Galatians 04:19-20](#)
- [Isaiah 13:6-8](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:20-21](#)
- [Psalms 048:4-6](#)
- [Romans 08:20-22](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:19-20](#)



## **lamb, Lamb of God**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Samuel 12:1-3](#)
- [Ezra 08:35-36](#)
- [Isaiah 66:3](#)
- [Jeremiah 11:18-20](#)
- [John 01:29-31](#)
- [John 01:35-36](#)
- [Leviticus 14:21-23](#)
- [Leviticus 17:1-4](#)
- [Luke 10:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

\***05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?" \***11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it. \***24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world." \***45:08** He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word." \***48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place. \***48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 7:9
- 1 Samuel 15:8-9
- 1 Samuel 17:34-35

## **lament, laments, lamentation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “to lament” could be translated as “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

### **Bible References:**

- [Amos 08:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:17-19](#)
- [Job 27:15-17](#)
- [Lamentations 02:5-6](#)
- [Lamentations 02:8-9](#)
- [Micah 02:3-5](#)
- [Psalm 102:1-2](#)
- [Zechariah 11:1-3](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H56, H421, H578, H592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G2354, G2355, G2870, G2875

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 7:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:3-4](#)

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
- all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 15:5-6](#)
- [Daniel 09:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 28:42-43](#)
- [Ezra 07:25-26](#)
- [Galatians 02:15-16](#)
- [Luke 24:44](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)

- [Romans 03:19-20](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\<

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 28 General Notes](#)

## Levite, Levi

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:1-2](#)
- [1 Kings 08:3-5](#)
- [Acts 04:36-37](#)
- [Genesis 29:33-34](#)
- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [Luke 10:31-32](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:14](#)

## **life, live, lived, lives, living, alive**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### **1. Physical life**

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### **2. Spiritual life**

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: **death**, everlasting)

**Bible References:**

- **2 Peter 01:3-4**
- **Acts 10:42-43**
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- **Hebrews 10:19-22**
- **Jeremiah 44:1-3**
- **John 01:4-5**
- Judges 02:18-19
- **Luke 12:22-23**
- **Matthew 07:13-14**

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 1:11**
- **1 Samuel 1:21-23**
- **1 Samuel 2:6-7**
- **1 Samuel 7:15-17**
- **1 Samuel 12:10-11**
- **1 Samuel 14:36-37**
- **1 Samuel 15:8-9**
- **1 Samuel 17:36**



- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 19:10-11
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 23:15-16
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 25:4-6
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:29
- 1 Samuel 26:9-10
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:21
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 28:8-10
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7
- 1 Samuel 31:7-8

## light

### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [2 Corinthians 04:5-6](#)
- [Acts 26:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 29:10-11](#)

## lion

### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 11:22-23](#)
- [1 Kings 07:27-29](#)
- [Proverbs 19:11-12](#)
- [Psalms 017:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 05:3-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 17:34-35](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:36](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:37-38](#)

## Lord

### Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. It is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [Daniel 09:9-11](#)
- [Daniel 09:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:29-30](#)
- [Hebrews 12:14-17](#)
- [Joshua 03:9-11](#)
- [Jude 01:5-6](#)
- [Lamentations 02:1-2](#)

- Luke 01:30-33
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Romans 06:22-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H113, H136, H4756, G1203, G2962

## Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” should not be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [2 Samuel 07:21-23](#)
- Deuteronomy 03:23-25
- [Ezekiel 39:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Jeremiah 44:26-28](#)
- Judges 06:22-24
- [Micah 01:2-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H136, H430 H3068, G2316, G2962

## lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs

### Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 03:22-25](#)
- [Ephesians 06:9](#)
- [Genesis 39:1-2](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [Luke 16:13](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.



- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
  - **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
  - **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
  - **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
  - **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."
- \*

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962

#### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 1:15-16
- 1 Samuel 1:26-28
- 1 Samuel 16:14-16
- 1 Samuel 20:38-40
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 24:8-9
- 1 Samuel 25:9-11
- 1 Samuel 25:14-15
- 1 Samuel 25:16-17
- 1 Samuel 25:23-24
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:29
- 1 Samuel 25:30-31
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 29:4
- 1 Samuel 29:8-9
- 1 Samuel 29:10-11
- 1 Samuel 30:13-14
- 1 Samuel 30:15

## lots, casting lots

### Definition:

A “lot” is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. “Casting lots” referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus’ robe.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “drawing lots” or “rolling lots.” Make sure the translation of “cast” does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term “lot” could also be translated as “marked stone” or “pottery piece” or “stick” or “piece of straw.”
- If a decision is made “by lot” this could be translated as, “by drawing (or throwing) lots.”

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- [Jonah 01:6-7](#)
- [Luke 01:8-10](#)
- [Luke 23:33-34](#)
- [Mark 15:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 27:35-37](#)
- [Psalms 022:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:40-42](#)

## love, loves, loving, loved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 13:4-7](#)
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:9-12](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 29:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:1-3](#)
- [John 03:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 10:37-39](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:32-34](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01:1-4](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 1:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:27-29](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:17-19](#)

## **lute, lyre**

### **Definition:**

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Kings 10:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05:11-12](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 10:5-6](#)

## man of God

### Facts:

The expression “man of God” is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh.

- When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as “man who belongs to God” or “man whom God has chosen” or “man who serves God.”
- When referring to an angel this could also be translated as “messenger of God” or “your angel” or “heavenly being from God who looks like a man.”

(See also: [angel](#), [honor](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 23:12-14](#)
- [1 Kings 12:22-24](#)
- [1 Samuel 09:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 9:9](#)

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:12-14](#)
- [Daniel 09:17-19](#)
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 19:16-17
- [Hebrews 10:28-29](#)
- [James 02:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 09:27-28](#)
- [Philippians 02:25-27](#)
- [Psalms 041:4-6](#)
- [Romans 12:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.



- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 24:17-18**

## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 19:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 06:21](#)
- [2 Kings 01:1-2](#)
- [Luke 07:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 11:9-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:21](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:3](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:16-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:21-22](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:26-27](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:41-42](#)
- [1 Samuel 31:9-10](#)

## mighty, might

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Genesis 06:4](#)
- [Mark 09:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:3-4
- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- 1 Samuel 14:52

## mind

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

- [Luke 10:25-28](#)
- [Mark 06:51-52](#)
- [Matthew 21:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:11](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:28-29](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:30-31](#)

## miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 04:15-18](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Daniel 04:1-3](#)
- [Deuteronomy 13:1-3](#)

- Exodus 03:19-22
- [John 02:11](#)
- [Matthew 13:57-58](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059, H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 10:9-10](#)

## Mizpah

### Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Moab](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 15:20-22](#)
- [1 Samuel 07:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 07:10-11](#)
- [Jeremiah 40:5-6](#)
- [Judges 10:17-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 7:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:15-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)



## Moab, Moabite, Moabites

### Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 12:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:47-48](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:3-5](#)

## month

### Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [Acts 18:9-11](#)
- [Hebrews 11:23-26](#)
- Numbers 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:5-7](#)

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:20-21](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- Exodus 02:9-10
- Exodus 09:1-4
- [Matthew 17:3-4](#)
- [Romans 05:14-15](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire. **\*12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." **\*12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters. **\*12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God. **\*13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 12:6-7](#)

## mourn, mourning

### Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 15:34-35](#)
- [2 Samuel 01:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 23:1-2](#)
- [Luke 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 11:16-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:19-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:34-35](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:1](#)

## name, names, named

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:19-21](#)
- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 09:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 12:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 35:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:19-20
- 1 Samuel 4:21-22
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1-2
- 1 Samuel 12:22-23
- 1 Samuel 14:49-51
- 1 Samuel 17:22-24
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 1 Samuel 18:30
- 1 Samuel 20:41-42
- 1 Samuel 24:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 28:8-10

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 14:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:6-7](#)
- [2 Kings 17:11-12](#)
- [Acts 02:5-7](#)
- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Acts 17:26-27](#)
- [Acts 26:4-5](#)
- [Daniel 03:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 10:2-5](#)
- [Genesis 27:29](#)



- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 8:4-5
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9

## Negev

### Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abraham, [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:61-62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 30:1-2](#)

## neighbor

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Galatians 05:13-15](#)
- [James 02:8-9](#)
- [John 09:8-9](#)
- [Luke 01:56-58](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 19:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 22:39-40](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 15:28-29](#)

**new moon****Definition:**

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: [month](#), [earth](#), [festival](#), [horn](#), [sheep](#))

**Bible References:**

- [1 Chronicles 23:30-31](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:4-5](#)
- [2 Kings 04:23-24](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Isaiah 01:12-13](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 20:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:24-25](#)

## **oak**

### **Definition:**

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Many translations will find it important to use the term “oak tree” rather than just the word “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, “an oak” could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)

(See also: [holy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Samuel 10:3-4](#)
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 06:11-12

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 10:3-4](#)

## **oath, swear, swear by**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word “swear” means is “use foul language.” This is not its meaning in the Bible.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated as “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31
- [Luke 01:72-75](#)
- [Mark 06:26-29](#)

- [Matthew 05:36-37](#)
- [Matthew 14:6-7](#)
- [Matthew 26:71-72](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 3:12-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:24-26](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:41-42](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:21-22](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:8-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:15](#)

## obey, obedient, obedience

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), law)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Acts 06:7](#)
- [Genesis 28:6-7](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [Luke 06:46-48](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 19:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** ”Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.



**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 8:6-7
- 1 Samuel 8:21-22
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:6-7
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19

## oil

### Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 01:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 29:1-2](#)
- [Leviticus 05:11](#)
- [Leviticus 08:1-3](#)
- [Mark 06:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 25:7-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 10:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:1](#)

## olive

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 27:28-29](#)
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:10-12
- [James 03:11-12](#)
- [Luke 16:5-7](#)
- [Psalms 052:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:13-15](#)

## oppress, oppression, oppressor

### Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, [enslave](#), persecute)

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- [Ecclesiastes 04:1](#)
- [Job 10:1-3](#)
- Judges 02:18-19
- [Nehemiah 05:14-15](#)
- [Psalms 119:133-134](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H4939, H5065, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:3](#)

**ox, oxen****Definition:**

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [yoke](#))

**Bible References:**

- [1 Samuel 15:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:10-11](#)
- Exodus 24:5-6
- [Luke 14:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 22:4](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 11:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:6-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:3](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:14-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:8-9](#)

## Paran

### Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [desert](#), [Egypt](#), Kadesh, Sinai)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 11:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:1](#)
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 25:1](#)

## **pardon**

### **Definition:**

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated in the same way as “forgive” and “forgiveness.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [Deuteronomy 29:20-21](#)
- [Isaiah 40:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 025:10-11](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 15:24-25](#)



## peace offering

### Facts:

A “peace offering” was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the “thanksgiving offering” or “fellowship offering.”

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal’s blood on the altar, and burning the animal’s fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), fellowship, fellowship offering, grain offering, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [unleavened bread](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 13:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Joshua 08:30-32](#)
- [Leviticus 09:3-5](#)
- [Proverbs 07:13-15](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:8-10](#)

## peace, peaceful

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Luke 07:48-50](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Mark 04:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 05:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 10:11-13](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

**\*15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. **\*16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. **\*21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. **\*48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. \*50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 7:13-14
- 1 Samuel 16:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:6-7
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:41-42
- 1 Samuel 25:4-6
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 29:4
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7

## Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

### Facts:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as “Pentecost.”

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called “Pentecost” which has “fifty” as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [festival](#), [firstfruits](#), [harvest](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 08:12-13](#)
- [Acts 02:1-4](#)
- [Acts 20:15-16](#)
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Numbers 28:26-28

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

## **people group, peoples, the people, a people**

### **Definition:**

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Kings 08:51-53](#)
- [1 Samuel 08:6-7](#)
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 5:6-7
- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- 1 Samuel 8:6-7
- 1 Samuel 8:21-22
- 1 Samuel 9:1-2
- 1 Samuel 11:4-5
- 1 Samuel 12:6-7
- 1 Samuel 12:22-23
- 1 Samuel 13:6-7
- 1 Samuel 13:15-16
- 1 Samuel 14:2-3
- 1 Samuel 14:15
- 1 Samuel 14:27-28
- 1 Samuel 15:6-7

- 1 Samuel 17:52-54
- 1 Samuel 18:5
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 26:5
- 1 Samuel 27:11-12
- 1 Samuel 30:3-4

## people of God, my people

### Definition:

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 11:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 07:51-53](#)
- [Acts 10:36-38](#)
- [Daniel 09:24-25](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:20-22](#)
- [Joel 03:16-17](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

**Uses:**

- Introduction to 1 Samuel
- 1 Samuel 2:22-24
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 9:17-19
- 1 Samuel 12:22-23
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3

## **perish, perished, perishing, perishable**

### **Definition:**

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Peter 01:22-23](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:16-17](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:18-20](#)
- [Psalms 049:18-20](#)
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 13:8-9](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 26:9-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 27:1](#)

## **perverse, perversely, pervert**

### **Definition:**

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, [deceive](#), [disobey](#), [evil](#), [turn](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Kings 08:46-47](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:30-31](#)
- [Job 33:27-28](#)
- [Luke 23:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 101:4-6](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 20:30-31](#)

## Pharaoh, king of Egypt

### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:20-21](#)
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 40:6-8
- Genesis 41:25-26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** “I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:5-6](#)

## Philistines

### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 10:11-14](#)
- [Psalm 056:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 5:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 5:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 5:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:16](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:21](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:7-8](#)

- 1 Samuel 7:13-14
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 1 Samuel 12:8-9
- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- 1 Samuel 13:11-12
- 1 Samuel 13:15-16
- 1 Samuel 13:17-18
- 1 Samuel 14:1
- 1 Samuel 14:11-12
- 1 Samuel 14:18-19
- 1 Samuel 14:29-30
- 1 Samuel 14:36-37
- 1 Samuel 14:45-46
- 1 Samuel 17:2-3
- 1 Samuel 17:4-5
- 1 Samuel 17:8-9
- 1 Samuel 17:10-11
- 1 Samuel 17:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:19-21
- 1 Samuel 17:22-24
- 1 Samuel 17:26-27
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 17:36
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- 1 Samuel 17:39-40
- 1 Samuel 17:41-43
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 17:50
- 1 Samuel 17:52-54
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 1 Samuel 17:57-58
- 1 Samuel 18:6-7
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10
- 1 Samuel 23:1-2
- 1 Samuel 23:5-6
- 1 Samuel 23:26-27
- 1 Samuel 23:28-29

- 1 Samuel 24:1-2
- 1 Samuel 27:1
- 1 Samuel 28:1-2
- 1 Samuel 28:3-4
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19
- 1 Samuel 29:1-2
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 29:4
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7
- 1 Samuel 29:8-9
- 1 Samuel 29:10-11
- 1 Samuel 30:16-17
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 1 Samuel 31:7-8
- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 1 Samuel 31:11-13



## Phinehas

### Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Jordan River](#), Midian, [Philistines](#), [Samuel](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 04:3-4](#)
- [Ezra 08:1-3](#)
- [Joshua 22:13-14](#)
- [Numbers 25:6-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:2-3](#)

## pillar, column

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [idol](#), image)

### Bible References:

- [2 Kings 18:4-5](#)
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- [Proverbs 09:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:8](#)

**pit****Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, hell, prison)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:16-18
- Luke 06:39-40
- Proverbs 01:12-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 13:6-7

## plague

### Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: hail, [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 24:13-14](#)
- Exodus 09:13-14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- [Luke 21:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 09:18-19](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:7-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)

## **plead, pleading, plea**

### **Facts:**

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Corinthians 08:3-5](#)
- [Judges 06:31-32](#)
- [Luke 04:38-39](#)
- [Proverbs 18:17-18](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 24:14-15](#)

## plow

### Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: [bronze](#), [ox](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 08:10-12](#)
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- [Luke 09:61-62](#)
- [Luke 17:7-8](#)
- [Psalm 141:5-7](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:10-12](#)

## possess, possession

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 06:70](#)
- [1 Kings 09:17-19](#)
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37

- [Matthew 13:44-46](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 25:2-3](#)



## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), Jesus, [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 01:11-12](#)
- [Genesis 31:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:21-23](#)
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- [Judges 02:18-19](#)
- [Luke 01:16-17](#)
- [Luke 04:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 26:62-64](#)
- [Philippians 03:20-21](#)
- [Psalm 080:1-3](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 4:3-4**
- **1 Samuel 30:3-4**

## praise

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 01:3-4](#)
- [Acts 02:46-47](#)
- [Acts 13:48-49](#)
- [Daniel 03:28](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 49:8](#)
- [James 03:9-10](#)
- [John 05:41-42](#)
- [Luke 01:46-47](#)
- [Luke 01:64-66](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Matthew 15:29-31](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army. **\*17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings. **\*22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people! **\*43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other. **\*47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

## pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:8-10](#)
- [Acts 08:24](#)
- [Acts 14:23-26](#)
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [John 17:9-11](#)
- [Luke 11:1](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 14:22-24](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. **\*13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. **\*19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!” **\*21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. **\*38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. **\*43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. **\*49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:12-14
- 1 Samuel 1:26-28
- 1 Samuel 2:1
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10
- 1 Samuel 23:1-2
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7
- 1 Samuel 30:7-8

## precious

### Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- [Acts 20:22-24](#)
- [Daniel 11:38-39](#)
- [Lamentations 01:7](#)
- [Luke 07:2-5](#)
- [Psalms 036:7-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 26:24-25](#)

## priest, priests, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), chief priests, [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)
- [Genesis 14:17-18](#)
- [Genesis 47:20-22](#)



- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:4-6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" **\*13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. **\*19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. **\*21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 1:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- 1 Samuel 2:12-14
- 1 Samuel 2:27-28
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 5:4-5
- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- 1 Samuel 14:2-3
- 1 Samuel 14:18-19
- 1 Samuel 14:36-37
- 1 Samuel 21:1-2
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 22 General Notes

- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 22:20-21
- 1 Samuel 23:7-9
- 1 Samuel 30:7-8

## prince, princess

### Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [demon](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [ruler](#), [Satan](#),  [Savior](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Genesis 12:14-16](#)
- [Genesis 49:26](#)
- [Luke 01:52-53](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:8](#)

- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 18:30
- 1 Samuel 29:1-2
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 29:4
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7
- 1 Samuel 29:8-9

## profit, profitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:12-13](#)
- [John 06:62-63](#)
- [Mark 08:35-37](#)
- [Matthew 16:24-26](#)
- [Proverbs 10:16-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 12:19-21](#)

## promise, promises, promised

### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 03:15-16](#)
- [Genesis 25:31-34](#)
- [Hebrews 11:8-10](#)
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- [Numbers 30:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”<sup>1</sup>
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son” he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:29-30](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:30-31](#)

## prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [Acts 03:24-26](#)
- [John 01:43-45](#)
- [Malachi 04:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)



- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Psalm 051:1-2](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. \*

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 3:1-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 3:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:9-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:18-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:21-22](#)
- [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#)

- 1 Samuel 22:3-5
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7

## **proud, pride, prideful**

### **Definition:**

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Timothy 03:6-7](#)
- [2 Corinthians 01:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 06:3-5](#)
- [Isaiah 13:19-20](#)
- [Luke 01:50-51](#)

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said. **\*34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:3-4
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30

## proverb

### Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: Solomon, [true](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 04:32-34](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:12-13](#)
- [2 Peter 02:20-22](#)
- [Luke 04:23-24](#)
- [Proverbs 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 24:12-13](#)

## **punish, punishment**

### **Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:9-10](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Genesis 04:13-15](#)
- [Luke 23:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 25:44-46](#)

their

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. **\*16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. **\*19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. **\*48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. **\*48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. **\*49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that

he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. \*49:11 Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 28:8-10

## Rachel

### Facts:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.

- Rachel was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became two of the tribes of Israel.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, as she gave birth to Benjamin, Rachel died, and Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Jacob](#), Laban, Leah, Joseph (OT), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 29:4-6
- Genesis 29:19-20
- Genesis 29:28-30
- Genesis 31:4-6
- Genesis 33:1-3
- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 10:1-2](#)



## **raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose**

### **Definition:**

#### **raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### **rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- 1 Samuel 2:6-7
- 1 Samuel 2:8
- 1 Samuel 9:3-4
- 1 Samuel 17:34-35
- 1 Samuel 21:10-11

- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 23:3-4
- 1 Samuel 24:3-4
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- 1 Samuel 25:29
- 1 Samuel 25:41-42
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 29:10-11
- 1 Samuel 30:3-4

## Ramah

### Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 27:25-27](#)
- [1 Samuel 02:11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:1](#)
- [Jeremiah 31:15](#)
- [Joshua 18:25-28](#)
- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:19-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:15-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:34-35](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:13](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:18-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:6](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:3-4](#)

## Ramoth

### Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

- Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
- King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
- Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
- Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Aram](#), [Gad](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Joram](#), [Jordan River](#), [Judah](#), [refuge](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 06:71-73](#)
- [1 Kings 22:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:1-3](#)
- [2 Kings 08:28-29](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 30:26-28](#)

## reap, reaper

### Definition:

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Other ways to translate “to reap” and “reaper” could include “to harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”).

(See also: good news, [harvest](#))

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 06:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 13:29-30](#)
- [Matthew 13:36-39](#)
- [Matthew 25:24-25](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:10-12](#)

## rebel, rebellious, rebellion

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), governor)

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 12:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:14-15](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:17-19](#)
- [Acts 21:37-38](#)
- [Luke 23:18-19](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead. **\*18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam. **\*18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin. **\*18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods. **\*20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon. **\*45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Samuel 15:22-23
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31



## rebuke

### Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, [disobey](#))

### Bible References:

- [Mark 01:23-26](#)
- [Mark 16:14-16](#)
- [Matthew 08:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 17:17-18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 24:5-7](#)

## receive

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 05:9-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:1-2](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Jeremiah 32:33-35](#)
- [Luke 09:5-6](#)
- [Malachi 03:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 049:14-15](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 25:34-35**

## refuge, shelter

### Definition:

The term “refuge” refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A “shelter” refers to a physical structure that protects from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term “city of refuge” in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities which a person who accidentally killed someone could run for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A “shelter” is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes “shelter” means “protection,” as when Lot said that his guests were “under the shelter” of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because they were in his house.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “refuge” could be translated as “safe place” or “place of protection.”
- Depending on the context, the term “shelter” could be translated as “something that protects” or “protection” or “protected place.”
- If it refers to a physical structure, “shelter” could also be translated as “protective building” or “ ”
- The phrase “into safe shelter” could be translated as “into a safe place” or “into a place that will protect.”
- To “find shelter” or to “take shelter” or to “take refuge” could be translated as to “find a place of safety” or to “put oneself in a protected place.”

### Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 22:3-4](#)
- Deuteronomy 32:37-38
- [Isaiah 23:13-14](#)
- [Jeremiah 16:19-21](#)
- Numbers 35:24-25
- [Psalm 046:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 028:6-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4268, H4498, H4585, H4733, H4869

## reign

### Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 36:34-36](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Luke 19:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 02:22-23](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:10-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:1-2](#)

## reject

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:12-14](#)
- [Hosea 04:6-7](#)
- [Isaiah 41:8-9](#)
- [John 12:48-50](#)
- [Mark 07:8-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:22-23](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:22-23](#)

- 1 Samuel 16:1
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7

## rejoice

### Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:15-18](#)
- [Acts 16:32-34](#)
- [John 03:29-30](#)
- [Luke 15:6-7](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 04:10-13](#)
- [Romans 05:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:1](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:13](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:4-5](#)



## repent, repents, repented, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 03:19-20](#)
- [Luke 03:3](#)
- [Luke 03:8](#)
- [Luke 05:29-32](#)
- [Luke 24:45-47](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 03:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 04:17](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”

- **42:08** “”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- **44:05** ”So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)

## report

### Definition:

The term “to report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- [Acts 05:22-23](#)
- [John 12:37-38](#)
- [Luke 05:15-16](#)
- [Luke 08:34-35](#)
- [Matthew 28:14-15](#)

shows the interruption of thought and

shows the interruption of thought and

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:22-24](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:23-24](#)

**restore, restores, restored, restoration****Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

**Bible References:**

- [2 Kings 05:8-10](#)
- [Acts 03:21-23](#)
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 49:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 15:19-21](#)
- [Lamentations 05:19-22](#)
- [Leviticus 06:5-7](#)
- [Luke 19:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 12:13-14](#)
- [Psalm 080:1-3](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 7:13-14](#)

- [1 Samuel 12:3](#)

## reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, [dream](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- [Daniel 11:1-2](#)
- [Ephesians 03:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 01:11-12](#)
- [Lamentations 02:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 10:26-27](#)
- [Philippians 03:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 3:7-8
- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 14:11-12
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17

## reward

### Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- [Isaiah 40:9-10](#)
- [Luke 06:35-36](#)
- [Mark 09:40-41](#)
- [Matthew 05:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 06:3-4](#)
- [Psalms 127:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 11:18](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4864, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8011, H8021, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 24:19-20](#)



## **righteous, righteousness**

### **Definition:**

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [holy](#), [evil](#), [just](#), [faithful](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 03:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- [Isaiah 48:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 037:28-30](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3072, H3477, H4334, H4339, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 12:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 26:22-23](#)

## robe

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), tunic)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- [Luke 15:22-24](#)
- [Luke 20:45-47](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 15:26-27](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:13-14](#)

## rod

### Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:43-44](#)
- [Acts 16:22-24](#)
- Exodus 27:9-10
- [Revelation 11:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:43-44](#)

## royal

### Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 10:13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)
- [Amos 07:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 49:19-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 27:5-7](#)

## ruler, rule

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- [Acts 07:35-37](#)
- [Luke 12:11-12](#)
- [Luke 23:35](#)
- [Mark 10:41-42](#)
- [Matthew 09:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 20:25-28](#)
- [Titus 03:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 5:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:1-2](#)

- 1 Samuel 10:25
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14

## sacrifice, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action “to sacrifice” could be translated as “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 21:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 04:3-5](#)
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Mark 14:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:21-23
- 1 Samuel 2:12-14
- 1 Samuel 2:27-28
- 1 Samuel 3:12-14
- 1 Samuel 6:14
- 1 Samuel 9:12-13
- 1 Samuel 9:23-24
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Samuel 11:14-15
- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- 1 Samuel 15:14-16
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Samuel 16:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:6-7
- 1 Samuel 20:28-29
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20

## salvation

### Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 28:28](#)
- [Ephesians 06:17-18](#)
- [Genesis 49:16-18](#)
- [Luke 02:30-32](#)
- [Philippians 01:28-30](#)
- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)
- [Romans 01:16-17](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H8668, G4991, G4992

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:1](#)

## Samuel

### Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hannah](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 01:19-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 09:23-24](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:16-18](#)
- [Acts 03:24-26](#)
- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Hebrews 11:32-34](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:19-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 3:1-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:13-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:14](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:17-19](#)

- 1 Samuel 9:23-24
- 1 Samuel 9:25-26
- 1 Samuel 9:27
- 1 Samuel 10:1-2
- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Samuel 11:6-8
- 1 Samuel 12:1-2
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- 1 Samuel 13:11-12
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Samuel 16:4-5
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:8-10
- 1 Samuel 16:11-12
- 1 Samuel 16:13
- 1 Samuel 19:18-20
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- 1 Samuel 28:3-4
- 1 Samuel 28:13-14
- 1 Samuel 28:16-17
- 1 Samuel 28:20-21

## Saul (OT)

### Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 10:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 09:1-2](#)
- [2 Samuel 01:1-2](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Psalm 018:1](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*17:01 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place. **\*17:04 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**. **\*17:05** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 9:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:17-19](#)

- 1 Samuel 9:23-24
- 1 Samuel 9:25-26
- 1 Samuel 9:27
- 1 Samuel 10:1-2
- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Samuel 10:11-13
- 1 Samuel 11:4-5
- 1 Samuel 13:1-2
- 1 Samuel 13:11-12
- 1 Samuel 13:22-23
- 1 Samuel 14:1
- 1 Samuel 14:16-17
- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 1 Samuel 14:33-34
- 1 Samuel 14:35
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- 1 Samuel 14:52
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Samuel 16:14-16
- 1 Samuel 16:17-19
- 1 Samuel 16:20-21
- 1 Samuel 16:22-23
- 1 Samuel 17:2-3
- 1 Samuel 17:8-9
- 1 Samuel 17:10-11
- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:19-21
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 17:34-35
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- 1 Samuel 17:39-40
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 1 Samuel 17:57-58
- 1 Samuel 18:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:6-7
- 1 Samuel 18:13-14
- 1 Samuel 18:19
- 1 Samuel 18:23-24
- 1 Samuel 18:30
- 1 Samuel 19:1-3

- 1 Samuel 19:8-9
- 1 Samuel 19:14-15
- 1 Samuel 19:21-22
- 1 Samuel 20:26-27
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 1 Samuel 21:7
- 1 Samuel 21:10-11
- 1 Samuel 22:6
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 22:20-21
- 1 Samuel 23:7-9
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:12
- 1 Samuel 23:13-14
- 1 Samuel 23:15-16
- 1 Samuel 23:17-18
- 1 Samuel 23:19-20
- 1 Samuel 23:21-23
- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 1 Samuel 23:26-27
- 1 Samuel 23:28-29
- 1 Samuel 24:1-2
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 24:8-9
- 1 Samuel 24:16
- 1 Samuel 24:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 1 Samuel 26:1-2
- 1 Samuel 26:3-4
- 1 Samuel 26:5
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 1 Samuel 26:11-12
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:21
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 27:1
- 1 Samuel 28:3-4
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28:8-10
- 1 Samuel 28:13-14
- 1 Samuel 28:20-21

- 1 Samuel 28:22-23
- 1 Samuel 28:24-25
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 29:5
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 1 Samuel 31:4-6
- 1 Samuel 31:7-8
- 1 Samuel 31:11-13



## save, saves, saved, safe

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: cross, deliver, [punish](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 01:15-17](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Genesis 47:25-26](#)
- [Jeremiah 16:19-21](#)
- [Luke 08:36-37](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Psalm 080:1-3](#)
- [Romans 10:8-10](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.

- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G5198

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 7:7-8
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 10:26-27
- 1 Samuel 11 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 11:3
- 1 Samuel 14:6-7
- 1 Samuel 14:38-39
- 1 Samuel 19 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 19:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:1-2
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9

## seek, sought

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or “to do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 10:13-14](#)
- [Acts 17:26-27](#)
- [Hebrews 11:5-6](#)
- [Luke 11:9-10](#)
- [Psalms 027:7-8](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 19:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:1-2](#)

## send, send out, sent

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: [appoint](#), redeem)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [John 20:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 09:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 10:40-41](#)
- [Matthew 21:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:15-16](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:25-26](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:25](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:3](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:6-8](#)

- 1 Samuel 12:10-11
- 1 Samuel 13:1-2
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:11-12
- 1 Samuel 18:5
- 1 Samuel 19:10-11
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13
- 1 Samuel 21:1-2
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:4-6
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33
- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 1 Samuel 31:9-10

## **servant, slave, slavery**

### **Definition:**

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obey his master.

(See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [serve](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Acts 04:29-31](#)
- [Acts 10:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 01:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 03:22-25](#)
- [Genesis 21:10-11](#)
- [Luke 12:47-48](#)
- [Mark 09:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 10:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 13:27-28](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

**\*06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. **\*08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. **\*09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." **\*19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." **\*29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" **\*35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." **\*47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. **\*50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:11
- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 2:12-14
- 1 Samuel 3:9
- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- 1 Samuel 8:13-15
- 1 Samuel 8:16-18
- 1 Samuel 9:3-4
- 1 Samuel 9:9
- 1 Samuel 9:27
- 1 Samuel 10:14-16
- 1 Samuel 16:14-16
- 1 Samuel 16:17-19
- 1 Samuel 17:8-9
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 17:34-35
- 1 Samuel 17:36
- 1 Samuel 17:57-58
- 1 Samuel 18:5
- 1 Samuel 18:22
- 1 Samuel 18:30
- 1 Samuel 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 20:6-7
- 1 Samuel 21:7

- 1 Samuel 21:10-11
- 1 Samuel 21:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:6
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 25:7-8
- 1 Samuel 25:9-11
- 1 Samuel 25:23-24
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:30-31
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 25:41-42
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 27:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28:1-2
- 1 Samuel 28:20-21
- 1 Samuel 28:22-23
- 1 Samuel 28:24-25
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 29:8-9
- 1 Samuel 29:10-11
- 1 Samuel 30:13-14



## serve, service

### Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:3-5](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Genesis 25:23](#)
- [Luke 04:8](#)
- [Luke 12:37-38](#)
- [Luke 22:26-27](#)
- [Mark 08:7-10](#)
- [Matthew 04:10-11](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 3:1-4
- 1 Samuel 8:8-9
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- 1 Samuel 12:10-11
- 1 Samuel 17:8-9

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ephesians 03:17-19](#)
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12-13
- Numbers 03:11-13
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 7:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:4-5](#)

## shame, shameful, ashamed

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [humble](#), humiliate, Isaiah, [repent](#), [sin](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:15-17](#)
- [2 Kings 02:17-18](#)
- [2 Samuel 13:13-14](#)
- [Luke 20:11-12](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Mark 12:4-5](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 20:30-31](#)

## sheep, ram, ewe

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 08:32-33](#)
- [Genesis 30:31-32](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 15:3-5](#)
- [Mark 06:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 12:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 15:14-16
- 1 Samuel 15:20-21
- 1 Samuel 16:11-12
- 1 Samuel 16:17-19
- 1 Samuel 17:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 17:34-35
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 24:3-4
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:18-19
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9

## shepherd, to shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression “to shepherd” could be translated as “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 17:19-21
- 1 Samuel 17:39-40
- 1 Samuel 25:7-8



## shield

### Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [Satan](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 14:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:8-9](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:36-37](#)
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- [Psalms 018:35-36](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 17:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:41-43](#)

## Shiloh

### Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), [dedicate](#), [Hannah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jordan River](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [Samuel](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 02:26-27](#)
- [1 Samuel 01:9-10](#)
- [Joshua 18:1-2](#)
- [Judges 18:30-31](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 1:9-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 1:24-25](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:12-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 3:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:2-3](#)

## **siege, besiege, besieged, besieger**

### **Definition:**

A “siege” occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city or to put it “under siege” means to attack it by means of a siege.

- When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- To “besiege” a city can also be expressed as to “lay siege” to it or to “perform a siege” on it.
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Chronicles 20:1](#)
- [1 Kings 20:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 33:4-5](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 11:1-2](#)

## sign, signs, proof, reminder

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- “Reminders” are signs that “remind” people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 02:18-19](#)
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14-15
- Genesis 09:11-13
- [John 02:17-19](#)

- [Luke 02:10-12](#)
- [Mark 08:11-13](#)
- [Psalms 089:5-6](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:34-35](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:8-10](#)

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 02:36](#)
- [2 Kings 25:13-15](#)
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 26:14-16](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:36](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:7-8](#)

## **sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning**

### **Definition:**

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Chronicles 09:1-3](#)

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258



**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 01 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 02 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 2:15-17
- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 1 Samuel 3:12-14
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 08 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 12:10-11
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 14:33-34
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:8-9
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 26:21
- 1 Samuel 28 General Notes

## slaughter

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slay](#))

### Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 21:10-11](#)
- [Hebrews 07:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 34:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 25:34-36](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 4:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:29-30](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:5-6](#)

## **sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- The expression “sleep with” someone commonly refers to having sexual relations with that person. The past tense is “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book “Song of Solomon,” the ULB uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This term is related to the expression “make love to.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Some languages may use different expressions for these terms in different contexts, depending on whether whether those involved are a married couple or whether they have some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See also: sexual immorality)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Corinthians 05:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 01:19-20](#)
- Deuteronomy 21:13-14
- Genesis 19:4-5
- [Matthew 01:24-25](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:19-20
- 1 Samuel 2:22-24

## sleep, asleep, fall asleep

### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as “to suddenly become asleep” or “to start sleeping” or “to die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 18:27-29](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:13-15](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Daniel 12:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 044:23-24](#)
- [Romans 13:11-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 26:11-12](#)

**son, sons****Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- “Son” was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes “sons of God” was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning “person having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), Son of God, sons of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:22-24
- 1 Samuel 3:5-6
- 1 Samuel 4:16-17
- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- 1 Samuel 12:1-2
- 1 Samuel 14:1
- 1 Samuel 16:1

- 1 Samuel 24:16
- 1 Samuel 25:7-8
- 1 Samuel 25:9-11
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19



## soul, souls

### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:7-9](#)
- [Acts 02:27-28](#)
- [Acts 02:40-42](#)
- [Genesis 49:5-6](#)
- [Isaiah 53:10-11](#)
- [James 01:19-21](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:16-19](#)
- [Jonah 02:7-8](#)
- [Luke 01:46-47](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)
- [Psalms 019:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 20:4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:15-16
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 18:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:17-19

## spear

### Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, [sword](#), [warrior](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 13:19-21](#)
- [2 Samuel 21:18-19](#)
- [Nehemiah 04:12-14](#)
- [Psalm 035:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 13:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:44-45](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:46-47](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:10-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [1 Samuel 21:8-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:6](#)
- [1 Samuel 26:6-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 26:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 26:15-16](#)

## spirit, spirits, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:15-16
- 1 Samuel 19:8-9
- 1 Samuel 28:3-4
- 1 Samuel 30:5-6

## staff

### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:8-10
- [Luke 09:3-4](#)
- [Mark 06:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 10:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:27-28](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:39-40](#)

## statute, statutes

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), ordinance, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 11:11-13](#)
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- [Ezekiel 33:14-16](#)
- Numbers 19:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 30:23-25](#)

## stone, stones, stoning

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone isto throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, [death](#), Lystra, [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 07:57-58](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Acts 14:5-7](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [John 08:4-6](#)
- [Luke 13:34-35](#)
- [Luke 20:5-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:37-39](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 25:37-38](#)
- [1 Samuel 30:5-6](#)



## strength, strengthen

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
- “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
- “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
- “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
- “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
- “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
- “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
- “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
- “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
- “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
- “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
- “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [salvation](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Kings 18:19-21](#)
- [2 Peter 02:10-11](#)

- [Luke 10:25-28](#)
- [Psalm 021:1-2](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 28:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:22-23](#)

## strong drink

### Definition:

The term “strong drink” refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
- Kinds of “strong drink” include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the “Nazirite vow” were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as “fermented drink” or “alcoholic drink.”

(See also: grape, Nazirite, [vow](#), [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- [Isaiah 05:11-12](#)
- [Leviticus 10:8-11](#)
- [Luke 01:14-15](#)
- [Numbers 06:1-4](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:15-16](#)

## stronghold, fortress, fortified

### Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [idol](#), [refuge](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 10:3-4](#)
- [2 Kings 08:10-12](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:8-10](#)
- [Acts 21:34-36](#)
- [Habakkuk 01:10-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:3-5](#)

- [1 Samuel 23:13-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:19-20](#)
- [1 Samuel 23:28-29](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:21-22](#)

## sword

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 12:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Genesis 34:24-26](#)
- [Luke 02:33-35](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 10:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 26:55-56](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 1 Samuel 14:20-21
- 1 Samuel 15:8-9
- 1 Samuel 15:32-33
- 1 Samuel 17:39-40
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 17:50
- 1 Samuel 18:3-4
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10
- 1 Samuel 22:11-13
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 25:12-13
- 1 Samuel 31:4-6

**tax, taxes****Definition:**

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), census, citizen, Rome, tax collector)

**Bible References:**

- [Luke 20:21-22](#)
- [Mark 02:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 09:7-9](#)
- Numbers 31:28-29
- [Romans 13:6-7](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 17:25](#)



## temple

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), Solomon, Babylon, [Holy Spirit](#), tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, [house](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 03:1-3](#)
- [Acts 03:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Luke 19:45-46](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)
- [Psalm 079:1-3](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17:06](#) David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18:02](#) In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered

sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 05 General Notes](#)

## tent

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, [tent of meeting](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 05:10](#)
- [Daniel 11:44-45](#)
- Exodus 16:16-18
- Genesis 12:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 13:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:52-54](#)

## tent of meeting

### Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), tabernacle, [tent](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 02:28-29](#)
- [Joshua 19:51](#)
- [Leviticus 01:1-2](#)
- [Numbers 04:31-32](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*13:08** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain. **\*13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God. **\*14:08** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**. **\*18:02** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:22-24](#)

## tenth, tithe

### Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: believer, [Israel](#), [Levite](#), livestock, Melchizedek, minister, [sacrifice](#) tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- [Hebrews 07:4-6](#)
- [Isaiah 06:13](#)
- [Luke 11:42](#)
- [Luke 18:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:13-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:16-18](#)

## testimony, testify

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [prophet](#), [witness](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- [3 John 01:11-12](#)
- [Acts 04:32-33](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [John 03:31-33](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 26:59-61](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 12:11-12](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1263, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 12:3](#)

## thresh, threshing

### Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, [grain](#), winnow)

### Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 03:1-3](#)
- [2 Kings 13:6-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 24:15-16](#)
- [Daniel 02:34-35](#)
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Ruth 03:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 23:1-2](#)



## tomb, grave, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 02:29-31](#)
- [Genesis 23:5-6](#)
- [Genesis 50:4-6](#)
- [John 19:40-42](#)
- [Luke 23:52-53](#)
- [Mark 05:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 27:51-53](#)
- [Romans 03:13-14](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [32:04](#) The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- [37:06](#) Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- [37:07](#) The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- [40:09](#) Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- [41:04](#) He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- [41:05](#) When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.”

The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 10:1-2](#)

## **trespass, trespasses, trespassed**

### **Definition:**

To “trespass” means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person. A “trespass” is the action of “trespassing.”

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin,” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to trespass against” could be translated as “to sin against” or “to break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [transgress](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Samuel 25:27-28](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:16-18](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Ephesians 02:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 15:7-8](#)
- [Romans 05:16-17](#)
- [Romans 05:20-21](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 25:27-28](#)

## tribe

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- [2 Kings 17:16-18](#)
- [Genesis 25:13-16](#)
- [Genesis 49:16-18](#)
- [Luke 02:36-38](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)
- [1 Samuel 9:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:20-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:17-19](#)

## **trouble, troubles, troubled**

### **Definition:**

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Kings 18:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)
- [Luke 24:38-40](#)
- [Matthew 24:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 26:36-38](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s:

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 13:6-7
- 1 Samuel 14:29-30
- 1 Samuel 16:14-16
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 28:20-21

## true, truth, truths

### Definition:

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), understand)

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- [Acts 26:24-26](#)
- [Colossians 01:4-6](#)
- [Genesis 47:29-31](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 05:19-20](#)

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die." **\*14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" **\*16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. **\*31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." **\*39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 9:5-6
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35



## trumpet

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), [horn](#), [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 13:7-8](#)
- [2 Kings 09:11-13](#)
- [Exodus 19:12-13](#)
- [Hebrews 12:18-21](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 24:30-31](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 13:3-4](#)

## trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 09:22-24](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Hosea 10:12-13](#)
- [Isaiah 31:1-2](#)
- [Nehemiah 13:12-14](#)
- [Psalm 031:5-7](#)
- [Titus 03:8](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 27 General Notes](#)

## turn, turn away, turn back

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Kings 11:1-2](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)

- Acts 11:19-21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:16-17
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Revelation 11:6-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H4878, H5186, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5437, H5472, H5472, H5493, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, H8447, G344, G387, G387, G402, G576, G654, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1624, G1994, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3344, G3346, G3346, G4762, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 6:10-12
- 1 Samuel 7:1-2
- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 14:47-48
- 1 Samuel 15:10-11
- 1 Samuel 15:30-31
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 25:12-13

## uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: Abraham, circumcise)

### Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 01:17-20](#)
- [Acts 11:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Ephesians 02:11-12](#)
- [Exodus 12:47-48](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:24-25](#)
- [Jeremiah 09:25-26](#)
- [Judges 15:17-18](#)
- [Leviticus 26:40-42](#)
- [Romans 02:25-27](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 14 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 14:6-7
- 1 Samuel 17 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 17:26-27
- 1 Samuel 17:36
- 1 Samuel 31:4-6

## unfaithful, unfaithfulness

### Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, [disobey](#), [faithful](#), unbeliever)

### Bible References:

- [Hosea 05:5-7](#)
- [Jeremiah 09:7-9](#)
- [Judges 02:16-17](#)
- [Leviticus 26:40-42](#)
- [Luke 12:45-46](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H898

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:33-34](#)



## ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: [godly](#), [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Peter 04:17-19](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:9-11](#)
- [Hebrews 12:14-17](#)
- [Job 27:8-10](#)
- [Jude 01:14-16](#)
- [Proverbs 11:9-11](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G763, G764, G765

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [Acts 12:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 23:14-15](#)
- [Ezra 06:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 19:1-3](#)
- [Judges 06:21](#)
- [Leviticus 08:1-3](#)
- [Luke 22:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 28:24-25](#)

## vain, vanity

### Definition:

The term “vain” describes something that is useless or has no purpose. Vain things are empty and worthless.

- The term “vanity” refers to worthlessness or emptiness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done “in vain,” it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything.
- To “believe in vain” means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty” or “useless” or “hopeless” or “worthless” or “meaningless.”
- The phrase “in vain” could be translated as “without result” or “with no result” or “for no reason” or “with no purpose.”
- The term “vanity” could be translated as “pride” or “nothing worthwhile” or “hopelessness.”

(See also: [idol](#), [worthy](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:21-22](#)
- [2 Peter 02:17-19](#)
- [Isaiah 45:19](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 15:7-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 25:21-22](#)

## **vineyard**

### **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Genesis 09:20-21](#)
- [Luke 13:6-7](#)
- [Luke 20:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 20:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 21:40-41](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's:

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 8:13-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 22:7-8](#)

## vision

### Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 09:10-12](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 10:9-12](#)
- [Acts 12:9-10](#)
- [Luke 01:21-23](#)
- [Luke 24:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 17:9-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 3:1-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 3:15-16](#)

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), proclaim, splendor)

### Bible References:

- [John 05:36-38](#)
- [Luke 01:42-45](#)
- [Luke 09:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 03:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 12:19-21](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:12-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:25-26](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 8:21-22](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:14-15](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:17-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:16](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:34-35](#)
- [1 Samuel 26:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:18-19](#)
- [1 Samuel 28:20-21](#)

- 1 Samuel 28:22-23
- 1 Samuel 30:3-4

## **vow, vows, vowed**

### **Definition:**

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Corinthians 07:27-28](#)
- [Acts 21:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 28:20-22](#)
- [Genesis 31:12-13](#)
- [Jonah 01:14-16](#)
- [Jonah 02:9-10](#)
- [Proverbs 07:13-15](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1:11](#)
- [1 Samuel 1:21-23](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:3](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:17-19](#)



## walk, walks, walked, walking

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Kings 02:1-4](#)
- [Colossians 02:6-7](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 17:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:8-11](#)
- [Micah 04:2-3](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:29-30
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 1 Samuel 12:1-2

## warrior, soldier

### Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: courage, crucify, Rome, [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 21:4-5](#)
- [Acts 21:32-33](#)
- [Luke 03:14](#)
- [Luke 23:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 08:8-10](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 8:10-12](#)

## watch, watchman

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:4-7](#)
- [Hebrews 13:15-17](#)
- [Jeremiah 31:4-6](#)
- [Mark 08:14-15](#)
- [Mark 13:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 25:10-13](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:16-17](#)

## well, cistern

### Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah, prison, strife)

### Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 11:15-17](#)
- [2 Samuel 17:17-18](#)
- [Genesis 16:13-14](#)
- [Luke 14:4-6](#)
- [Numbers 20:17](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's:

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 19:21-22](#)

## wheat

### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, [grain](#), seed, [thresh](#), winnow)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 27:36-38](#)
- [Exodus 34:21-22](#)
- [John 12:23-24](#)
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:13](#)
- [1 Samuel 12:16-18](#)

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:3-6](#)
- [Colossians 04:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 01:1-2](#)
- [John 05:30-32](#)
- [Mark 03:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 06:8-10](#)
- [Psalms 103:20-22](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 9:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 31 General Notes](#)



## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, [vineyard](#), winepress)

### Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:23-25](#)
- Genesis 09:20-21
- Genesis 49:11-12
- [John 02:3-5](#)
- [John 02:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:17](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:12-14](#)

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- 1 Samuel 16:20-21
- 1 Samuel 25:18-19
- 1 Samuel 25:37-38

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Genesis 03:4-6
- [Isaiah 19:11-12](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:18-20](#)
- [Matthew 07:24-25](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 25:32-33](#)

**witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses****Definition:**

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [judge](#), [true](#), [testimony](#))

**Bible References:**

- [1 John 05:6-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [1 Timothy 05:19-20](#)
- [2 Peter 01:16-18](#)
- [Acts 13:30-31](#)
- [Deuteronomy 31:27-29](#)
- [John 01:6-8](#)
- [Romans 01:8-10](#)

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, G267, G1263, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 6:17-18**
- **1 Samuel 12:4-5**
- **1 Samuel 20:12-13**

**woe****Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

**Bible References:**

- [Ezekiel 13:17-18](#)
- [Habakkuk 02:12-14](#)
- [Isaiah 31:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 45:1-3](#)
- [Jude 01:9-11](#)
- [Luke 06:24-25](#)
- [Luke 17:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 4:7-9](#)

## womb

### Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- [Luke 02:21](#)
- [Luke 11:27-28](#)
- [Luke 23:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 19:10-12](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong’s:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:5-6](#)



## **word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [1 Kings 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Acts 12:24-25](#)

- Genesis 15:1-3
- James 02:8-9
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- John 05:39-40
- Luke 08:11-13
- Romans 01:1-3

#### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

#### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

#### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 3:1-4
- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3

## word, words

### Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:1-2](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [John 01:1-3](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:21-23
- 1 Samuel 3:17-18
- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 4:1-2
- 1 Samuel 8:21-22
- 1 Samuel 17:22-24
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 18:23-24
- 1 Samuel 21:12-13
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 25:23-24
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 28:20-21

## works, deeds, work, acts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: fruit, [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 03:11-12](#)
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- [Daniel 04:36-37](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 8:16-18
- 1 Samuel 12:6-7
- 1 Samuel 14:45-46
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, [heaven](#), Rome, [ungodly](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [1 John 04:4-6](#)
- [1 John 05:4-5](#)
- [John 01:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 13:36-39](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 2:8](#)



## worship

### Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:18-19](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- [Luke 04:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 02:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)

### Examples from the Bible stories:

**\*13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” **\*14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. **\*17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. **\*18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. **\*25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” **\*26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. **\*47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. **\*49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:19-20
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- 1 Samuel 15:24-25
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 22:3-4](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:11-12](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [Acts 25:25-27](#)
- [Acts 26:30-32](#)
- [Colossians 01:9-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 08:18-19](#)
- [Mark 01:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Philippians 01:25-27](#)

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7939, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 10:26-27
- 1 Samuel 15:8-9
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 30:21-22

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Luke 03:7](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Romans 01:18-19](#)
- [Romans 05:8-9](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2534, H2740, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 28:18-19](#)

## Yahweh

### Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:3-4

- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- 1 Samuel 1:11
- 1 Samuel 1:12-14
- 1 Samuel 2:1
- 1 Samuel 2:6-7
- 1 Samuel 2:27-28
- 1 Samuel 3:1-4
- 1 Samuel 3:17-18
- 1 Samuel 4:3-4
- 1 Samuel 5:1-3
- 1 Samuel 5:6-7
- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- 1 Samuel 6:7-9
- 1 Samuel 6:14
- 1 Samuel 7:1-2
- 1 Samuel 7:9
- 1 Samuel 7:12
- 1 Samuel 7:13-14
- 1 Samuel 8:6-7
- 1 Samuel 8:21-22
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 9:17-19
- 1 Samuel 10:1-2
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 10:22-23
- 1 Samuel 11:6-8
- 1 Samuel 11:14-15
- 1 Samuel 12:3
- 1 Samuel 12:4-5
- 1 Samuel 12:8-9
- 1 Samuel 12:10-11
- 1 Samuel 12:12-13
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 12:22-23
- 1 Samuel 13:11-12
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:2-3
- 1 Samuel 14:6-7
- 1 Samuel 14:22-23
- 1 Samuel 14:33-34



- 1 Samuel 14:38-39
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 15:26-27
- 1 Samuel 15:30-31
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Samuel 16:4-5
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:8-10
- 1 Samuel 16:11-12
- 1 Samuel 16:13
- 1 Samuel 16:14-16
- 1 Samuel 16:17-19
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 18:10-12
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- 1 Samuel 18:27-29
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 20:3
- 1 Samuel 20:8-9
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 20:22-23
- 1 Samuel 20:41-42
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 21:7
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:20-21
- 1 Samuel 23:1-2
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:21-23
- 1 Samuel 24:3-4
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- 1 Samuel 24:19-20
- 1 Samuel 24:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26

- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:29
- 1 Samuel 25:30-31
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 25:37-38
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 26:9-10
- 1 Samuel 26:11-12
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 26:22-23
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28:8-10
- 1 Samuel 28:16-17
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7
- 1 Samuel 30:5-6
- 1 Samuel 30:7-8
- 1 Samuel 30:23-25
- 1 Samuel 30:26-28

## **Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts**

### **Definition:**

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

- [Zechariah 13:1-2](#)

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H430, H3068, H6635

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 1:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 1:11](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 15:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:44-45](#)

## year

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

### Bible References:

- [2 Kings 23:31-33](#)
- [Acts 19:8-10](#)
- [Daniel 08:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 12:1-2](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 27:5-7](#)

## yoke

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, **oppress**, persecute, **servant**)

### Bible References:

- [Acts 15:10-11](#)
- [Galatians 05:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Isaiah 09:4-5](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:28-30](#)
- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)

### Word Data:

- Strong's:

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:7-9](#)
- [1 Samuel 11:6-8](#)

## translationAcademy

### Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

#### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

#### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

#### Examples from the Bible

*...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...* (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
  - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
    - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
  - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
    - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
    - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
    - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
  - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
    - Today the people in this house have been saved...
    - Today God has saved the people in this house...
  - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:11
- 1 Samuel 1:15-16
- 1 Samuel 1:26-28
- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- 1 Samuel 10:25
- 1 Samuel 14:15
- 1 Samuel 15:22-23
- 1 Samuel 15:22-23
- 1 Samuel 16:20-21
- 1 Samuel 17:26-27
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 23:21-23
- 1 Samuel 25:4-6
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 30:7-8
- 1 Samuel 30:23-25



## Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

### Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

### Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

### Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
    - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
    - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
    - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:26-28
- 1 Samuel 2:3-4
- 1 Samuel 2:3-4
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 2:29-30
- 1 Samuel 3:7-8
- 1 Samuel 3:12-14
- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 4:1-2
- 1 Samuel 4:10-11
- 1 Samuel 4:10-11
- 1 Samuel 4:16-17
- 1 Samuel 4:18
- 1 Samuel 4:19-20
- 1 Samuel 4:21-22
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- 1 Samuel 7:13-14
- 1 Samuel 7:13-14
- 1 Samuel 10:20-21
- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- 1 Samuel 13:19-21

- 1 Samuel 14:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:40-42
- 1 Samuel 14:40-42
- 1 Samuel 16:22-23
- 1 Samuel 17:4-5
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 18:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:19
- 1 Samuel 18:19
- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 18:30
- 1 Samuel 19:6-7
- 1 Samuel 19:10-11
- 1 Samuel 19:18-20
- 1 Samuel 19:21-22
- 1 Samuel 20:3
- 1 Samuel 20:17-19
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 21:7
- 1 Samuel 22:6
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 23:7-9
- 1 Samuel 23:13-14
- 1 Samuel 23:21-23
- 1 Samuel 23:21-23
- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 1 Samuel 24:1-2
- 1 Samuel 24:19-20
- 1 Samuel 25:12-13
- 1 Samuel 25:14-15
- 1 Samuel 25:16-17
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:29
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33

- 1 Samuel 25:32-33
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 30:3-4

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

### **Translation Strategies**

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

- **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
  - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
  - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
    - ◇ Or:
  - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
- **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
  - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

- **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
  - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
  - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you



- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- 1 Samuel 2:15-17
- 1 Samuel 4:3-4
- 1 Samuel 4:5-6
- 1 Samuel 5:1-3
- 1 Samuel 5:10
- 1 Samuel 5:11-12
- 1 Samuel 6:19-20
- 1 Samuel 6:19-20
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:7-8
- 1 Samuel 08 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 9:25-26
- 1 Samuel 10:11-13
- 1 Samuel 11 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 12:3
- 1 Samuel 12:10-11
- 1 Samuel 12:19-21
- 1 Samuel 12:22-23
- 1 Samuel 14:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:15
- 1 Samuel 14:22-23
- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- 1 Samuel 14:33-34
- 1 Samuel 14:33-34
- 1 Samuel 14:38-39
- 1 Samuel 14:40-42
- 1 Samuel 15:26-27
- 1 Samuel 15:26-27
- 1 Samuel 15:28-29
- 1 Samuel 16:4-5
- 1 Samuel 16:13
- 1 Samuel 17:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:25
- 1 Samuel 17:52-54

- 1 Samuel 18:13-14
- 1 Samuel 19:14-15
- 1 Samuel 19:23-24
- 1 Samuel 20 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 20:8-9
- 1 Samuel 21:7
- 1 Samuel 21:10-11
- 1 Samuel 21:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 25:14-15
- 1 Samuel 25:18-19
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:41-42
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20

## Background Information

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

**Example** - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter was the best hunter in the village" and "it was his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

### A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- Translators need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

### Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus’ age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus’ disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, “But some of the Pharisees said.”

### Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language’s way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB) English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
  - "When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
  - "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 5:4-5
- 1 Samuel 9:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:9
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:23-24
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 1 Samuel 28:3-4

## Biblical Distance

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half kubits; its width will be one kubit and a half; and its height will be one kubit and a half."
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be 3 3/4 feet; its width will be 2 1/4 feet; and its height will be 2 1/4 feet."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)."

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
  - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter<sup>1</sup>; its width will be two thirds of a meter<sup>2</sup>; and its height will be two thirds of a meter." The footnotes would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup> two and a half cubits
    - ◇ <sup>[2]</sup> one cubit and a half

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 17:4-5



## Biblical Money

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

### Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight		—		—		—		daric	gold coin	8.4 grams		shekel		various metals	11 grams		talent	various metals	33 kilograms
------------	-------	--------	--	---	--	---	--	---	--	-------	-----------	-----------	--	--------	--	----------------	----------	--	--------	----------------	--------------

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage		—		—		—		denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day		drachma	silver coin	1 day		mite	copper coin	1/64 day		shekel	silver coin	4 days		talent	silver	6,000 days
------------	-------	------------	--	---	--	---	--	---	--	------------------	-------------	-------	--	---------	-------------	-------	--	------	-------------	----------	--	--------	-------------	--------	--	--------	--------	------------

### Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
  - "The one owed five hundred denali, and the other owed fifty denali." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.
  - "The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
  - "The one owed five hundred days' wages, and the other owed fifty days' wages."
- Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
  - "The one owed five hundred denarii<sup>1</sup>, and the other owed fifty denarii.<sup>2</sup>" (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup> five hundred days's wages
    - ◇ <sup>[2]</sup> fifty day's wages
- Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.
  - "The one owed five hundred denarii<sup>1</sup>, and the other owed fifty denarii." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup> A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 9:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:19-21](#)

## Biblical Volume

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters	———	———	———	Dry	omer	2 liters	Dry	ephah	22 liters	Dry	homer	220 liters	Dry	cor	220 liters	Dry	seah	7.7 liters	Dry	letheh	114.8 liters	Liquid	metrete	40 liters	Liquid	bath	22 liters	Liquid	hin	3.7 liters	Liquid	kab	1.23 liters	Liquid	log	0.31 liters
------	------------------	--------	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	----------	-----	-------	-----------	-----	-------	------------	-----	-----	------------	-----	------	------------	-----	--------	--------------	--------	---------	-----------	--------	------	-----------	--------	-----	------------	--------	-----	-------------	--------	-----	-------------

### Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

### When the unit of measure is stated

#### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
  - "For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa."
- Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket."
    - ◇ "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts)."
- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters<sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters<sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only twenty-two liters<sup>3</sup>." The footnotes would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>one bath

- ◇ <sup>[2]</sup>one homer
- ◇ <sup>[3]</sup>one ephah

### When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)
- Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
  - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
  - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
  - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.
  - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 17:17-18
- 1 Samuel 25:18-19

## Biblical Weight

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
1 shekel	11 grams	-	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
  - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles."
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
  - "The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
  - "The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.
  - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)."
- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
  - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.<sup>1</sup>"
    - ◇ The footnote would look like:
      - <sup>[1]</sup> This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.### Uses:
- [1 Samuel 17:4-5](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:6-7](#)



## Connecting Words

This page answers the question: *What are connecting words for, and how do I translate them?*

### Description

**Connecting words** show how thoughts are related to other thoughts. They are also called **conjunctions**. This page is about connecting words that connect statements and groups of statements to others. Some examples of connecting words are: and, but, for, so, therefore, now, if, if only, since, then, when, while, whenever, because, yet, unless.

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context.

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to understand the meaning of a connecting word in the Bible and the relationship between the thoughts it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- Translators need to know how to help their readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in their language.

### Translation Principles

- Translators need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

### Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB)

The word “but” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do with what he did do. Here the word “then” introduces something Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULB)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, for we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. Instead, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULB)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).

### Translation Strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).

- **Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” Immediately they left the nets and went after him.** (Mark 1:17-18 ULB) - They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this with “so.”
  - Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” So immediately they left the nets and went after him.

2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

- **Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.** (Matthew 5:19 ULB) -

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

- Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.
- **I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.** (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB) -

Some languages might not need the words “but” or “then” here.

- I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

3) Use a different connecting word.

- **Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.** (Matthew 5:19 ULB) Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages.
  - Because of that, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.
- **Since the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.** (Acts 21:34 ULB) - Instead of starting the first part of the sentence with “since,” some translators might prefer to start the second part of the sentence with “so” to show the same relationship.
  - ”The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, so he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.”

Uses:

- **1 Samuel 28:1-2**

## Copy or Borrow Words

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns..](#))

### Examples from the Bible

He saw a fig tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULB)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the seraphim; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULB)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of Malachi. (Malachi 1:1 ULB)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
  - □□□□□□□□□□ - A man's name in Hebrew letters.
    - "Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
  - **Zephaniah** - This is a man's name.
    - "Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.
  - **Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".
    - "Sefania"
    - "Sefanaia"
    - "Sefanaya"

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 14:40-42](#)

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: ""

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would," to replace the future tense indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

### Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

### Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him to tell no one,
- Direct quote: but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest..."

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you."
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, 'Look here; or, 'Look there!'

### Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
  - **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
    - He instructed him to tell no one, but to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.
  - **He instructed him, to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
    - He instructed him, "Tell no one. Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations.##](http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.##) Uses:

- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)

## Double Negatives

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “unhappy,” “impossible,” and “useless.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that each express the meaning of “not.”

It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath, ... (Hebrews 7:20 ULB.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.



### Examples from the Bible

... so that they may not be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

### Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
  - **For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses.** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
    - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”
  - **... so that they may not be unfruitful.** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
    - “... so that they may be fruitful.”
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”
  - **Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished ...** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
    - “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished ...”
  - **All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)
    - “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 14:6-7

## Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

**Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Translate only one of the words.
  - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
    - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
  - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
    - "King David was very old."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
  - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
    - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:15-16
- 1 Samuel 17:10-11
- 1 Samuel 18:27-29
- 1 Samuel 23:21-23

## Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

### Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

### Examples from the Bible

... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

### Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
  - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
- **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Samuel 16:4-5
- 1 Samuel 16:8-10
- 1 Samuel 16:11-12
- 1 Samuel 18:6-7
- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 31:4-6

## Euphemism

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

### Definition

... they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself ... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?”  
(Luke 1:34 ULB)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself.** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
  - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- **Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?"** (Luke 1:34 ULB)
  - Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I do not know a man?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.** (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)
  - "they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa."

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 2:9
- 1 Samuel 2:29-30
- 1 Samuel 2:31-33
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 12:4-5
- 1 Samuel 15:32-33
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- 1 Samuel 18:20-21
- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 24:3-4
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19

## First, Second, or Third Person

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

### Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or to the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)



Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

### Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
  - **But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
    - But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.
  - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
    - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
  - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
    - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 1:15-16
- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:14-16
- 1 Samuel 16:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 17:34-35
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18

## Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)

## Fractions

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

### Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULB)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULB)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

### Examples From the Bible

Now to one half of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other half, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULB)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULB)

If all the people were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare a fourth of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULB)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

### Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UDB.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

### Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
  - **A third of the ocean became red like blood** (Revelation 8:8 ULB)
    - It was like they divided the ocean into three parts, and one part of the ocean became blood.
  - **then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
    - ... then you must divide an ephah of fine flour into ten parts and divide a hin of oil into two parts. Then mix three of those parts of the flour with one of the parts of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.
2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
  - **two thirds of a shekel** (1 Samuel 13:21 ULB)
    - eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UDB)
  - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
    - six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with two liters of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UDB)
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
  - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
    - six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil.

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 8:13-15
- 1 Samuel 8:13-15
- 1 Samuel 8:16-18
- 1 Samuel 9:7-8

## Go and Come

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word “go” or “come” is confusing in a certain sentence?*

### Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring” when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I’m coming,” while Spanish speakers say “I’m going.” You will need to translate the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”) in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, “Come, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away, from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to go to them, not come toward Abraham.

When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, “When you have gone into the land...”

Joseph and Mary brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary took or carried Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to come to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UDB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not come out in public.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.
  - **But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
    - But you will be free from my oath if you go to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
  - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
    - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not come out in public for five months.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.
  - **When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
    - "When you have arrived in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ..."
  - **Yahweh said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark ...** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
    - "Yahweh said to Noah, "Enter, you and all your household, into the ark ..."
  - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
    - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not appear in public for five months.

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 16:20-21



## Hendiadys

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

### Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called “hendiadys.” In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

... his own kingdom and glory. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or a **glorious kingdom**.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand how the two words work together; one word describing the other.

### Examples from the Bible

... for I will give you words and wisdom ... (Luke 21:15 ULB)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

... if you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

### Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
  - **for I will give you words and wisdom** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
    - for I will give you wise words
  - **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
    - that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own glorious kingdom.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
  - **for I will give you words and wisdom.** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
    - for I will give you words of wisdom.
  - **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
    - that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom of glory.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
  - **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
    - if you are willingly obedient
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.
  - **if you are, willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”
    - if you obey willingly

**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 23:26-27](#)

## How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

**Examples from the Bible**

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
    - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
  - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
    - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you."
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
    - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
    - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
- **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
    - ... a young man named Paul<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
      - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
  - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
    - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
- **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
    - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
  - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
  - It came about in Iconium that Paul<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

### Uses:

- Introduction to 1 Samuel
- 1 Samuel 1:1-2
- 1 Samuel 1:1-2
- 1 Samuel 1:1-2
- 1 Samuel 1:1-2
- 1 Samuel 1:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:5-6
- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- 1 Samuel 1:12-14
- 1 Samuel 4:1-2
- 1 Samuel 4:21-22
- 1 Samuel 6:17-18
- 1 Samuel 6:17-18
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 1 Samuel 7:1-2
- 1 Samuel 7:1-2
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- 1 Samuel 7:12
- 1 Samuel 9:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:3-4
- 1 Samuel 9:5-6
- 1 Samuel 10:1-2
- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- 1 Samuel 11:4-5
- 1 Samuel 11:6-8
- 1 Samuel 12:8-9
- 1 Samuel 12:8-9
- 1 Samuel 12:10-11
- 1 Samuel 13:1-2

- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- 1 Samuel 13:5
- 1 Samuel 13:5
- 1 Samuel 13:17-18
- 1 Samuel 14:2-3
- 1 Samuel 14:2-3
- 1 Samuel 14:2-3
- 1 Samuel 14:4-5
- 1 Samuel 14:4-5
- 1 Samuel 14:4-5
- 1 Samuel 14:4-5
- 1 Samuel 14:16-17
- 1 Samuel 14:22-23
- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- 1 Samuel 14:49-51
- 1 Samuel 14:49-51
- 1 Samuel 14:49-51
- 1 Samuel 14:49-51
- 1 Samuel 15:4-5
- 1 Samuel 15:6-7
- 1 Samuel 15:6-7
- 1 Samuel 15:20-21
- 1 Samuel 15:20-21
- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:8-10
- 1 Samuel 17:2-3
- 1 Samuel 17:19-21
- 1 Samuel 19:21-22
- 1 Samuel 20:17-19
- 1 Samuel 21:1-2
- 1 Samuel 21:1-2
- 1 Samuel 21:7
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 22:1-2
- 1 Samuel 22:3-5
- 1 Samuel 22:3-5
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 22:20-21
- 1 Samuel 23:1-2

- 1 Samuel 23:5-6
- 1 Samuel 23:13-14
- 1 Samuel 23:15-16
- 1 Samuel 23:19-20
- 1 Samuel 23:19-20
- 1 Samuel 23:19-20
- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 1 Samuel 26:1-2
- 1 Samuel 26:3-4
- 1 Samuel 26:5
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 27:5-7
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9
- 1 Samuel 27:10
- 1 Samuel 27:10
- 1 Samuel 27:10
- 1 Samuel 27:11-12
- 1 Samuel 28:3-4
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7
- 1 Samuel 30:5-6
- 1 Samuel 30:21-22
- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 1 Samuel 30:29-31
- 1 Samuel 30:29-31
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 1 Samuel 31:7-8
- 1 Samuel 31:9-10



- **1 Samuel 31:11-13**

## Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

### Examples from the Bible

#### Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

#### Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

#### Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

### Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
  - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
    - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
  - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
    - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
  - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
    - “And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
  - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

- Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
  - Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.
- **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
    - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:7-8
- 1 Samuel 13 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 13:5
- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 1 Samuel 14:33-34
- 1 Samuel 14:40-42
- 1 Samuel 14:45-46
- 1 Samuel 18:6-7
- 1 Samuel 21:10-11
- 1 Samuel 22:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:1

## Hypothetical Situations

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

“If the sun stopped shining...”, “What if the sun stopped shining...”, “Suppose the sun stopped shining...”, “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### 1. Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.” (John 11:21 ULB)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

### 1. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### 1. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### 1. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger."  
(Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

### **Translation Strategies**

Know how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](http://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

### **Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 14:29-30](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:38-39](#)



## Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

### Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

### Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

### Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
  - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** ( 1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
    - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
  - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
    - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
  - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
    - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
  - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
    - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
  - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
    - I am crying my eyes out

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 1:15-16](#)

- 1 Samuel 1:26-28
- 1 Samuel 1:26-28
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 2:29-30
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 2:34-35
- 1 Samuel 03 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 3:10-11
- 1 Samuel 3:17-18
- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- 1 Samuel 4:12-13
- 1 Samuel 05 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 5:6-7
- 1 Samuel 5:8-9
- 1 Samuel 5:11-12
- 1 Samuel 6:3-4
- 1 Samuel 6:5-6
- 1 Samuel 6:13
- 1 Samuel 07 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- 1 Samuel 8:4-5
- 1 Samuel 10 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Samuel 10:26-27
- 1 Samuel 11 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 12:1-2
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 13:15-16
- 1 Samuel 14:11-12
- 1 Samuel 14:18-19
- 1 Samuel 14:27-28
- 1 Samuel 14:29-30
- 1 Samuel 15 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 15:10-11
- 1 Samuel 15:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:28-29
- 1 Samuel 15:32-33
- 1 Samuel 16:17-19

- 1 Samuel 16:22-23
- 1 Samuel 17:34-35
- 1 Samuel 18:13-14
- 1 Samuel 18:15-16
- 1 Samuel 18:15-16
- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 19:10-11
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:3
- 1 Samuel 20:8-9
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:17-19
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 23:15-16
- 1 Samuel 23:15-16
- 1 Samuel 23:21-23
- 1 Samuel 24:3-4
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 25:9-11
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 26:1-2
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9
- 1 Samuel 28:20-21
- 1 Samuel 29:6-7
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3

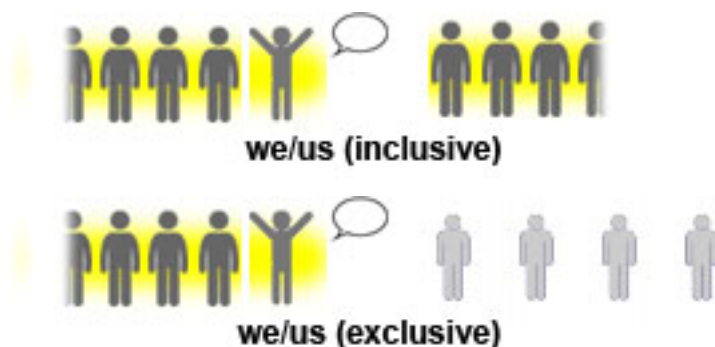
## Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive “we”?*

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 26:11-12](#)

## Irony

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

### Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

### Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULB)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
 Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
 "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULB)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

### Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)
  - You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
  - You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
- **I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
  - I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)

- You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)**
  - ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
- **Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

**Can you find the way back to their houses for them?**

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)**

- Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 2:29-30**



## Litotes

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are not the least among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.
  - **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless.** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
    - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good."
  - **Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
    - "Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
    - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter."

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:36-37
- 1 Samuel 14:45-46
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 15:28-29
- 1 Samuel 15:28-29
- 1 Samuel 20:35-37
- 1 Samuel 25:7-8
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:30-31
- 1 Samuel 26:9-10
- 1 Samuel 29:3

## Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
  - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
    - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
  - **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
    - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.
  - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
    - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
  - **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
    - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 2:6-7
- 1 Samuel 3:12-14
- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 5:8-9
- 1 Samuel 14:6-7
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2

## Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

### Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

### Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

#### Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’ where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

### Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

### Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

### **Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

### **Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

### Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has in mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.



## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
  - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
    - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
  - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
    - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
  - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
    - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
  - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
    - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
  - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
    - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
    - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
  - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
    - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
  - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
    - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
  - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
    - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
  - I will make you become people who gather men.
  - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

*To learn more about specific metaphors read:*

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 02 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 2:1
- 1 Samuel 2:2
- 1 Samuel 2:3-4
- 1 Samuel 2:8
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 3:5-6
- 1 Samuel 3:15-16
- 1 Samuel 3:19-21
- 1 Samuel 4:16-17
- 1 Samuel 8:1-3
- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- 1 Samuel 14:11-12
- 1 Samuel 14:27-28
- 1 Samuel 15:10-11
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:22-23
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 17:41-43
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 18:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:5
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- 1 Samuel 18:20-21
- 1 Samuel 20 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 20:3
- 1 Samuel 20:28-29
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11

- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 24:16
- 1 Samuel 24:16
- 1 Samuel 25:7-8
- 1 Samuel 25:16-17
- 1 Samuel 25:29
- 1 Samuel 25:29
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 26:21
- 1 Samuel 26:21
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 26:24-25
- 1 Samuel 27:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28:16-17
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19
- 1 Samuel 28:18-19

## Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
  - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
    - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
  - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
    - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
    - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
  - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
    - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#).### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 1:17-18](#)
- [1 Samuel 1:21-23](#)
- [1 Samuel 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:9](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:27-28](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:29-30](#)
- [1 Samuel 2:31-33](#)
- [1 Samuel 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Samuel 4:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 5:6-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 5:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 5:11-12](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 6:5-6](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:7-8](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:13-14](#)
- [1 Samuel 7:13-14](#)

- 1 Samuel 8:6-7
- 1 Samuel 8:21-22
- 1 Samuel 9:15-16
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 1 Samuel 12:10-11
- 1 Samuel 12:10-11
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Samuel 12:22-23
- 1 Samuel 13:13-14
- 1 Samuel 14:6-7
- 1 Samuel 14:8-10
- 1 Samuel 14:11-12
- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 1 Samuel 14:27-28
- 1 Samuel 14:29-30
- 1 Samuel 14:36-37
- 1 Samuel 14:36-37
- 1 Samuel 14:47-48
- 1 Samuel 14:47-48
- 1 Samuel 14:47-48
- 1 Samuel 14:47-48
- 1 Samuel 15:14-16
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 15:20-21
- 1 Samuel 15:22-23
- 1 Samuel 15:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:28-29
- 1 Samuel 15:28-29
- 1 Samuel 15:30-31
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- 1 Samuel 16:22-23
- 1 Samuel 17:25
- 1 Samuel 17:31-33
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 1 Samuel 18:15-16

- 1 Samuel 18:30
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 19:18-20
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 21:12-13
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 23:1-2
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:12
- 1 Samuel 23:13-14
- 1 Samuel 23:17-18
- 1 Samuel 23:19-20
- 1 Samuel 24:5-7
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 24:19-20
- 1 Samuel 24:21-22
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:12-13
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:32-33
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 25:41-42
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 1 Samuel 26:11-12
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:22-23
- 1 Samuel 27:5-7
- 1 Samuel 30:15
- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 1 Samuel 31:4-6



## Nominal Adjectives

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

... The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds ... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last ... (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less.  
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

- **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
  - The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.
- **Blessed are the meek ...** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
  - Blessed are people who are meek ...

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 1 Samuel 31:4-6

## Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5.” Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
  - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

### Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 4:1-2
- 1 Samuel 6:19-20
- 1 Samuel 7:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- 1 Samuel 11:3
- 1 Samuel 11:6-8
- 1 Samuel 13:1-2
- 1 Samuel 13:1-2
- 1 Samuel 13:5
- 1 Samuel 13:15-16
- 1 Samuel 14:2-3
- 1 Samuel 15:4-5
- 1 Samuel 17:14-16
- 1 Samuel 17:17-18
- 1 Samuel 18:13-14
- 1 Samuel 18:25-26
- 1 Samuel 18:27-29
- 1 Samuel 21:5-6
- 1 Samuel 22:1-2
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 23:13-14
- 1 Samuel 24:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:2-3

- 1 Samuel 25:2-3
- 1 Samuel 25:12-13
- 1 Samuel 25:12-13
- 1 Samuel 25:18-19
- 1 Samuel 26:1-2
- 1 Samuel 27:2-4
- 1 Samuel 29:1-2
- 1 Samuel 29:5
- 1 Samuel 30:9-10
- 1 Samuel 30:9-10
- 1 Samuel 30:9-10
- 1 Samuel 30:13-14
- 1 Samuel 30:16-17
- 1 Samuel 30:21-22

## Order of Events

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

### Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

### Examples from the Bible

But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULB)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

### Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See: the section on Aspect on Verbs)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.
  - <sup>20</sup> **But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison.** <sup>21</sup> **Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized.** (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)
    - <sup>20</sup> But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. <sup>21</sup> Before John was put in prison, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
  - **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
    - Who is worthy to open the scroll after breaking its seals?
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.
  - <sup>8</sup> **Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...**<sup>10</sup> **But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
    - <sup>8</sup> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...<sup>10</sup> But Joshua had commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).
  - <sup>8</sup> **Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...**<sup>10</sup> **But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
    - <sup>8-10</sup> Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets ...
  - **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
    - Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_events.##](http://ufw.io/figs_events.##) Uses:

- [1 Samuel 17:55-56](#)



## Ordinal Numbers

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | —— | —— | —— | | 4 | four | fourth | | 10 | ten | tenth | | 100 | one hundred | one hundredth | | 1,000 | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | —— | —— | —— | | 1 | one | first | | 2 | two | second | | 3 | three | third | | 5 | five | fifth | | 12 | twelve | twelfth |

### Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples from the Bible

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
  - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
    - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim,... another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
    - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim,... the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
  - **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.** (Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)
    - A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.
  - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
    - They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

## Uses:

- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)

## Original Manuscripts

This page answers the question: *Is there more information about the Original Language text?*

### The Writing of the Original Manuscripts

The Bible was written many hundreds of years ago by God's prophets and apostles as God directed them to write it. The people of Israel spoke Hebrew, so most of the Old Testament books were written in Hebrew. When they lived as strangers in Assyria and Babylon, they learned to speak Aramaic, so some later parts of the Old Testament were written in Aramaic.

About three hundred years before Christ came, Greek became the language of wider communication. Many people in Europe and the Middle East spoke Greek as a second language. So the Old Testament was translated into Greek. When Christ came, many people in those areas of the world still spoke Greek as a second language, and the New Testament books were all written in Greek.

Back then there were no printers, so the authors wrote these books by hand. These were the original manuscripts. Those who copied these manuscripts also did so by hand. These were also manuscripts. These books are extremely important, so the copiers got special training and were very careful to try to copy them accurately.

Over hundreds of years, people made thousands of copies of the Bible books. The manuscripts that the authors originally wrote have all been lost or fallen apart, so we do not have them. But we do have many of the copies that were written by hand long ago. Some of these copies have survived for many hundreds and even thousands of years.### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 20:24-25](#)

## Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

### Examples from the Bible

#### The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

**The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.**

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

**The second completes what is said in the first.**

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
  - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
    - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
    - “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
  - **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
    - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
    - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
    - “All you have done is lie to me.”
  - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
    - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

#### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 1:11
- 1 Samuel 2:1
- 1 Samuel 2:2
- 1 Samuel 2:3-4
- 1 Samuel 2:5
- 1 Samuel 2:6-7
- 1 Samuel 2:8
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- 1 Samuel 2:10
- 1 Samuel 12:12-13
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- 1 Samuel 14:16-17
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 15:14-16
- 1 Samuel 15:32-33
- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2

- 1 Samuel 25:9-11
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7

## Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
  - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
  - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
  - He even controls the winds and the sea.

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 6:17-18
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Samuel 14:20-21

## Predictive Past

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

### Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;  
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULB)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

### Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

### Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULB)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;  
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULB)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying,  
"Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULB)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

### Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

- **For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;** (Isaiah 9:6a ULB)
  - "For to us a child will be born, to us a son will be given;

2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)
  - Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I am about to hand over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."

3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)
  - Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I am handing over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 25:25-26**

## Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

### Description

Pronouns are words that people use in place of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone. The most common type of pronoun is personal.

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

#### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - **Forms of You**
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

#### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

#### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

### Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself in the mirror.** - The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- **Who built the house?**

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. They tell more about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house that John built.** The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man who built the house.** The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen this here?**
- **Who is that over there?**

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to anyone.**
- **Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.**
- **They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.**

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 3:9
- 1 Samuel 3:10-11
- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5

- 1 Samuel 20:6-7
- 1 Samuel 20:8-9
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:28-29
- 1 Samuel 23:10-11
- 1 Samuel 23:19-20
- 1 Samuel 25:16-17
- 1 Samuel 25:23-24
- 1 Samuel 25:25-26
- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- 1 Samuel 25:29
- 1 Samuel 25:30-31
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 25:41-42
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 26:22-23
- 1 Samuel 27:5-7
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9
- 1 Samuel 27:8-9
- 1 Samuel 27:11-12
- 1 Samuel 28:1-2
- 1 Samuel 28:1-2
- 1 Samuel 28:22-23
- 1 Samuel 29:8-9

## Proverbs

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

### Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wisdom or teach a truth. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism.

Hatred stirs up conflicts,  
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULB)

Another example from Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.  
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,  
yet it prepares its food in the summer,  
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

### Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,  
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULB)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,  
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULB)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

## Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

- **A good name is to be chosen over great riches,**

**and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

- It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.
- Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.
- Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.
- Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

- **Like snow in summer or rain in harvest,**

**so a fool does not deserve honor.** (Proverbs 26:1 ULB)

- It is not natural for a cold wind to blow in the hot season or for it to rain in the harvest season; And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

- **Do not boast about tomorrow** (Proverbs 27:1 ULB)
  - Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

- **A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,**

**that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,**

**but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULB)

- People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.



**Uses:**

- [1 Samuel 10:11-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:23-24](#)

## Quotes Within Quotes

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we can talk about it having layers of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples from the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I was born a Roman citizen.” (Acts 22:28 ULB)

#### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.”  
Matthew 24:4-5 ULB

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37 ULB)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, "... I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother." ' ' " (Genesis 20:10-13 ULB)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

### A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.' ' ' ' " (2 Kings 1:6 ULB)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

### Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (see [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULB and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.
  - **Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. ...I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar."** (Acts 25:14-21 ULB)
    - Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. ...I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, 'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?' But when Paul said, 'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,' I told the guard, 'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'"

2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word “that” can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

- **Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, “I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, ‘At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’ ”** (Exodus 16:11-12 ULB)
  - Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, “I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them that at twilight they will eat meat, and in the morning they will be filled with bread. Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God.”
- **They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’ ” ’ ”** (2 Kings 1:6 ULB)
  - They told him that a man had come to meet them who said to them, “Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him that Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’ ”

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 16:2-3

## Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used their question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
  - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
    - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
  - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
    - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
  - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
    - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
  - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
    - You should not insult God's high priest!
  - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
    - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
  - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
    - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
  - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
    - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:7-8
- 1 Samuel 02 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 2:22-24
- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 1 Samuel 2:27-28
- 1 Samuel 2:29-30
- 1 Samuel 04 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- 1 Samuel 6:5-6
- 1 Samuel 6:5-6
- 1 Samuel 6:19-20
- 1 Samuel 09 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 9:20-21
- 1 Samuel 9:20-21
- 1 Samuel 10 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 10:1-2
- 1 Samuel 10:11-13
- 1 Samuel 10:11-13
- 1 Samuel 10:26-27
- 1 Samuel 12:3
- 1 Samuel 12:3
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- 1 Samuel 13:11-12
- 1 Samuel 14:29-30
- 1 Samuel 14:45-46
- 1 Samuel 15 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 15:17-19
- 1 Samuel 15:22-23
- 1 Samuel 16 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3



- 1 Samuel 17 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 17:8-9
- 1 Samuel 17:8-9
- 1 Samuel 17:25
- 1 Samuel 17:26-27
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 17:28-30
- 1 Samuel 17:41-43
- 1 Samuel 18:8-9
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- 1 Samuel 18:23-24
- 1 Samuel 19:4-5
- 1 Samuel 19:16-17
- 1 Samuel 19:16-17
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:1-2
- 1 Samuel 20:8-9
- 1 Samuel 20:8-9
- 1 Samuel 20:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 1 Samuel 20:35-37
- 1 Samuel 21 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 21:10-11
- 1 Samuel 21:10-11
- 1 Samuel 21:14-15
- 1 Samuel 21:14-15
- 1 Samuel 21:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 22:7-8
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 22:14-15
- 1 Samuel 23:3-4
- 1 Samuel 23:19-20
- 1 Samuel 24:8-9
- 1 Samuel 24:14-15
- 1 Samuel 24:19-20
- 1 Samuel 25:9-11
- 1 Samuel 26 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 26:1-2
- 1 Samuel 26:9-10

- 1 Samuel 26:13-14
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:15-16
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 26:17-18
- 1 Samuel 27:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 29:3
- 1 Samuel 29:4
- 1 Samuel 29:5
- 1 Samuel 30:23-25

## Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
  - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
    - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
  - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
    - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
  - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
  - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
  - **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
    - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
    - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
  - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
    - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

**Uses:**

- **1 Samuel 26:19-20**

## Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
  - **”My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
    - ”I exalt the Lord.”
  - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

**Uses:**

- 1 Samuel 1:17-18
- 1 Samuel 1:26-28
- 1 Samuel 02 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 1 Samuel 4:10-11
- 1 Samuel 8:21-22
- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- 1 Samuel 15:8-9
- 1 Samuel 15:8-9
- 1 Samuel 18:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:3-4
- 1 Samuel 20:14-16
- 1 Samuel 20:17-19
- 1 Samuel 21:12-13
- 1 Samuel 22:16-17
- 1 Samuel 22:18-19
- 1 Samuel 23 General Notes
- 1 Samuel 23:5-6
- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Samuel 25:34-35
- 1 Samuel 25:39-40
- 1 Samuel 27:1
- 1 Samuel 27:1
- 1 Samuel 28:5-7
- 1 Samuel 28:8-10
- 1 Samuel 28:22-23
- 1 Samuel 30:5-6

## Textual Variants

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup>See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup>[<sup>1</sup>

[<sup>1</sup>] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup>[Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup>She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]<sup>[2]</sup>

[<sup>2</sup>]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11



## Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup>[1]
  - <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
  - <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup>[1]
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.
  - <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup>If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." <sup>[1]</sup>
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

## Uses:

- 1 Samuel 14:18-19

## Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

### Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

- your sins ... will be white like milk
- your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
  - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - to him who made the sun and the moon

#### Uses:

- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 1 Samuel 22:6
- 1 Samuel 26:19-20
- 1 Samuel 31:11-13

## Verse Bridges

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined, such as “3-5” or “17-18”?*

### Description

In rare cases, you will see in the Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB) or the Unlocked Dynamic Bible (UDB) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

<sup>29</sup> These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, <sup>30</sup> Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 26:29-30 ULB)

<sup>29-30</sup> The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishpan. (Genesis 26:29-30 UDB)

In the ULB text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UDB text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

### Examples from the Bible

Sometimes the ULB has separate verses while the UDB has a verse bridge.

<sup>4</sup> However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), <sup>5</sup> if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULB)

<sup>4-5</sup> Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UDB)

There are also a few verse bridges in the ULB.

<sup>17-18</sup> Ezra's sons were Jether, Mered, Ephraim, and Jalon. Mered's Egyptian wife bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah, who became the father of Eshtemoa. These were the sons of Bithiah, daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. Mered's Jewish wife bore Jered, who became the father of Gedor; Heber, who became the father of Soco; and Jekuthiel, who became the father of Zanoah. (1 Chronicles 4:17-18 ULB)

The ULB moved the underlined sentence from verse 18 to verse 17 to more clearly show which were the sons of Bithiah. Here is the original order, which is confusing to many readers:

17 The sons of Ezra: Jether, Mered, Ephraim, and Jalon. She conceived and bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah father of Eshtemoa. 18 And his Judahite wife bore Jered father of Gedor, Heber father of Soco, and Jekuthiel father of Zanoah. These were the sons of Bithiah daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. (1 Chronicles 4:17-18 TNK)

### Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.
2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

See how to mark verses in the [translationStudio APP](#).

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.
  - <sup>2</sup> you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. <sup>3</sup> You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)
    - <sup>2-3</sup> you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UDB)
2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

### Uses:

- [1 Samuel 25:2-3](#)